

# BRONSTEIN

on the King's Indian



EVERYMAN CHESS

David Bronstein

# BRONSTEIN

## on the King's Indian

by David Bronstein  
with Ken Neat

**EVERYMAN CHESS**

Everyman Chess, formerly Cadogan Chess, is published by Everyman Publishers, London

First published in 1999 by Everyman Publishers plc, formerly Cadogan Books plc, Gloucester Mansions, 140A Shaftesbury Avenue, London WC2H 8HD.

Copyright © 1999 David Bronstein, Ken Neat

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means: electronic, electrostatic, magnetic tape, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without prior permission in writing from the publishers.

**British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data**

A CIP catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library.

ISBN 1 85744 265 2

Distributed in North America by The Globe Pequot Press, 6 Business Park Road, P.O. Box 833, Old Saybrook, Connecticut 06475-0833.  
Telephone 1-800 243 0495 (toll free)

All other sales enquiries should be directed to Everyman Chess, Gloucester Mansions, 140A Shaftesbury Avenue, London WC2H 8HD  
tel: 0171 539 7600 fax: 0171 379 4060 e-mail: [dan@everyman.uk.com](mailto:dan@everyman.uk.com)  
website: <http://www.everyman.uk.com>

**EVERYMAN CHESS SERIES** (formerly Cadogan Chess)

Chief Advisor: Garry Kasparov  
Russian Series Editor: Ken Neat

Typeset by Ken Neat, Durham

Printed in Great Britain by Cromwell Press Ltd, Trowbridge, Wilts.

# Contents

	Introduction	4
1	<b>A brief journey into the past</b>	6
2	<b>The basic functions of the two armies</b>	18
3	<b>Standard moves in the King's Indian</b>	22
	36 standard moves of the black pieces	22
	24 standard moves of the black pawns	32
	36 standard moves of the white pieces	39
	24 standard moves of the white pawns	49
4	<b>Test positions</b>	57
5	<b>The King's Indian in action</b>	64
	Restrained set-up by White	65
	White exchanges d4xe5	82
	Black captures ...e5xd4	91
	White closes the centre with d4-d5	112
	Black keeps his pawn at c7	112
	Black opens the c-file	128
	Black pawns at e5 and c5	138
	The central tension is maintained	147
	Benoni set-ups	152
	White castles queenside	164
6	<b>64 additional games</b>	174
	Solutions to the test positions	202
	Postscript	206
	Bibliography	206
	Index of other players	207

# Introduction

Chess is a friendly game, which is why it was invented. The main idea of each player is to capture the chief of the opposing chess army, which according to the rules of the game leads to the surrender of the opposing forces. This rule was introduced because it was thought more beautiful for a lesser army to be able to outplay and force the surrender of a superior force. If you can understand the spirit of chess in this way, then you will see that the fewer men that are captured, the more noble is the victory, and this reflects a peculiarly human way of thinking.

So, winning or losing is not the main idea of chess at all. A chess game is in fact a friendly exchange of intentions, hidden in individual moves. You always have the choice either of putting into action your planned move, or of first calmly preventing the intended move of the friend with whom you are playing chess in this brief, finite moment of your life.

When chess is considered in this way, there is no better opening than the King's Indian Defence, for both players – White and Black, of every age, from beginners to masters. The King's Indian gives you the maximum opportunity to test your ability to make reasonable decisions in situations on the chess board that are always complex and uncertain. Now let us begin to look at the moves which introduce this beautiful chess opening.

**1 d4 ♖f6**

Black brings out his knight to a good square, preventing the white pawn from immediately occupying the e4 square, and makes the first step in preparing a residence for his king.

**2 c4 ♗g6**

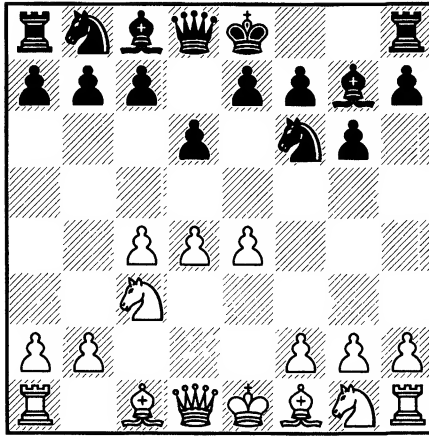
While the white pawns are occupying the centre, Black prepares a post for his bishop at g7.

**3 ♖c3 ♘g7**

The bishop occupies the prepared post, and the residence is now ready for occupation by the black king.

**4 e4 ♔d6**

Black is careful to forestall the advance of the white pawn to e5. He is now ready to take his king into safety by castling, and then to strike at the white centre by advancing his own pawn to e5.



This, basically, is what constitutes the King Indian's Defence! Of course, White is not obliged to choose this particular move order, but, as will be seen from the examples in the book, a King's Indian set-up can be adopted against a wide variety of opening moves.

At this point we consider it appropriate to make a brief journey into history, to see how this opening was played by some of the great players from the past.

### **How this book was compiled**

In the course of many meetings, telephone discussions and exchanges of correspondence, David Bronstein provided me with a wealth of analyses and ideas relating to the King's Indian Defence, which I have endeavoured to arrange in a coherent and instructive form. On his suggestion I have also included a few of my own games, and although it may seem incongruous to have these appearing alongside battles between world-class players, they do have the merit of highlighting certain basic errors which one would not encounter in grandmaster games. Considerable assistance in the compilation of the material was made in Moscow by Sergey Rosenberg, and the two authors are deeply grateful to him for his contribution to the book.

Ken Neat  
Durham, June 1999

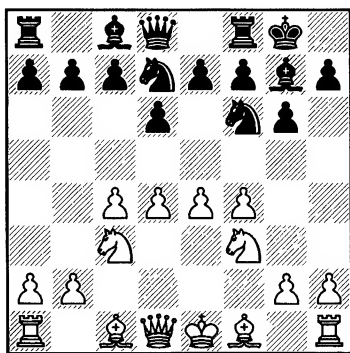
# 1 A brief journey into the past

White: **Berthold Englisch**  
Black: **Dr Siegbert Tarrasch**  
*Hamburg 1885*

To begin our invitation to the King's Indian Defence, we would like to show you not a recent game, but one that occurred more than 100 years ago.

It may come as a surprise to the reader to see this opening being played by Dr Tarrasch, who was soon to become one of the strongest players in the world, as the chess views he expressed in both his play and his writings were generally classical, straightforward, and at times dogmatic. His Austrian opponent in this game was also among the world's leading players at that time.

1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♗c3 ♕g7 4 e4 d6  
5 f4 0-0 6 ♗f3 ♗bd7



Dr Tarrasch could have struck at the centre with 6...c5, but he is not afraid of White's imposing array of pawns, and he even invites 7 e5 ♗e8, when he is ready for 8...c5, and the white centre collapses.

7 ♕e2 e5

This is why Black avoided 6...c5. With this move he attacks two pawns.

8 dxe5

If 8 d5 exf4 9 ♕xf4 ♗g4 followed by 10...♗ge5, and Black gains an excellent post for his knight at e5.

8...dxe5 9 fxe5

Or 9 ♗xe5 ♗xe5 10 fxe5 ♗d7 11 0-0 ♗xe5, and again the black knight occupies the weak square in front of White's isolated e-pawn.

9...♗g4 10 ♕g5

If 10 e6 fxe6 11 ♗g5 ♗f2, with a knight fork on the weak f2 square.

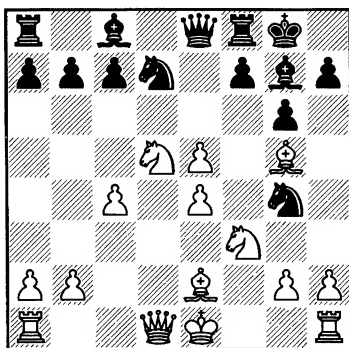
10...♞e8

This move, which is fully in the spirit of the King's Indian, offers a challenge to White, inviting him to go for a win of material, while Black gains time to organise an attack on the white king. (The white knight makes a fork, but in so doing it takes three moves to capture a rook that has not made a single move.) In the meantime the white king remains in the centre.

10...f6 is also fully possible (the white king has not castled), e.g. 11 exf6 ♕xf6 12 ♕xf6 ♞xf6, and because White has advanced his

pawns too early, he has left weaknesses in his position. A possible continuation is 13 0-0 ♖e3 14 ♘d5 ♘xd1 15 ♗xf6+ ♗xf6 16 ♖axd1 ♗xe4 with easy play for Black, but this would not have been very interesting for Dr Tarrasch – there is too much simplification!

### 11 ♘d5



Better than 11 ♘b5 (which only attacks c7), as it also threatens possible checks at e7 and f6, as well as preparing ♗e7. Now Black seems to be in trouble, as if 11...c6 12 ♘c7 winning the queen. But if you find yourself in such a situation, don't lose heart – such unexpected moves occur constantly in chess.

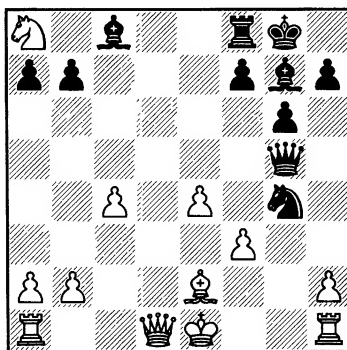
### 11...♗xe5

Here Dr Tarrasch was lazy: after 11...♗dx5 12 ♘xc7 ♗xf3+ 13 gxf3 he terminated his analysis, as it appears that Black has too many pieces (queen, rook and knight!) *en prise*. In fact the game has become very tense, and this was the time to bring up the reserves. The black

knight at g4 is strongly placed (it has crossed the chess equator), so why exchange it? Therefore 11...♗dx5 looks more natural, e.g. 12 ♘xc7 (a fork) 12...♗xf3+ 13 gxf3 (attacking the knight) 13...♖e5.

The position has been opened up, White has not yet castled, and his rooks are still on their original squares. Meanwhile, Black's bishops (especially the one at g7) are very strong, and his queen occupies the key square in the King's Indian Defence – e5. If White were to try to take his king to safety by castling, he would in fact be mated: 17 0-0? ♖xh2 mate. Rather as in cricket, where as a result of a single mistake a batsman can be out, so in chess the loss of the king signifies the end of the game.

After 14 ♘xa8 (this is not such a great achievement as it might seem to a beginner: it often happens when you take such a piece, that your own piece ends up on a bad square; Black's rook is in the nature of a 'bait') 14...♖xg5 we reach the following position:





This is an ideal King's Indian position for Black. His queen, bishops and rook are all very active, and his king is ideally covered. Meanwhile the white bishop is obstructed by its own pawns – compare it with the black bishop at g7. After 15 fxf4 White seems to be winning (he is now a rook up), but it is the second player (as they expressed it in the 19th century) to move, and he plays 15...♖h4+ 16 ♖d2.

More tenacious is 16 ♖f1, although after 16...♞d8 17 ♖b3 ♙xg4 (the bishop has been patiently awaiting such an opportunity to come into play) 18 ♙xg4 ♖xg4 White's king is still exposed to the cross-fire of the black pieces, and he has to defend precisely, e.g. 19 ♖e3 ♙d4 20 h3 ♖e6 21 ♖e2 ♖f6+ 22 ♖g2 ♖g5+ 23 ♖f1 ♖f4+ and it will be a relief to White that his opponent has no more than a perpetual check.

After 16 ♖d2 Black plays 16...♞d8+, and if White tries to avoid the loss of his queen by playing 17 ♙d3, he runs into 17...♖f2+ 18 ♖e2 (or 18 ♖c1 ♖xb2 mate) 18...♞xd3+! (a typical King's Indian stroke) 19 ♖xd3 ♖d4+ 20 ♖c2 ♖xb2+ (note the powerful coordination of Black's queen and bishop on the long dark-square diagonal) 21 ♖d1 (or 21 ♖d3 ♖c3 mate) 21...♖xa1+ 22 ♖d2, and after picking up the rook Black has a winning material advantage, although he can also play for a direct mate by 22...♖c3+.

**12 ♙e7?!**

Or 12 ♖xc7 ♖xf3+ 13 ♙xf3 ♖e5 (with a double attack) 14 ♖xa8 ♖xg5, and if White tries to rescue his errant knight by 15 ♖c7, then Black has the fork 15...♖a5+.

However, this would have been a convenient moment to safeguard the king: 12 0-0, and if 12...c6 13 ♖e7+ ♖h8 14 ♖d6, when 14...♖xf3+ 15 ♙xf3 ♙e5? loses to 16 ♖xe5+ ♖xe5 17 ♙f6 mate! This is another illustration of why it was wrong to block in the black bishop with 11...♖gxe5 – after 11...♖dxe5 in this position 14...♙e6 would be possible.

But instead of safeguarding his king, White goes to win a 'dead' rook with his strong bishop – an 'illiterate' move. On the scale of pieces a rook is stronger than a bishop, but in the given concrete position the bishop is more valuable. Tarrasch gives 12 ♙e7 an exclamation mark, which is strange, as he was a strong player and the move loses time. Incidentally, it is the kind of move that a modern computer would play...

**12...♖xf3+**

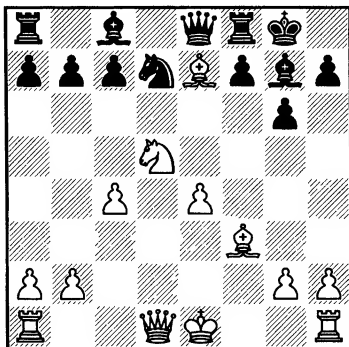
Dr Tarrasch wants to clear the board. There was also the possibility of 12...c6, for example:

(a) 13 ♖xe5 cxd5 14 ♙xf8 (or 14 ♖xd7 ♖xe7 15 ♖xf8 ♙xb2 16 ♞b1 ♙c3+ 17 ♖f1 dxe4) 14...♖xf8 15 ♖f3 dxe4 with more than sufficient compensation for the exchange;

(b) 13 ♙xf8 ♖xf8 14 ♖c3 ♖g4 and Black is certainly not losing – he has fine chances of penetrating on the dark squares, and he has one rook

remaining, which is sufficient for one open file, whereas White can never regain his dark-square bishop.

13 ♖xf3



13...c6

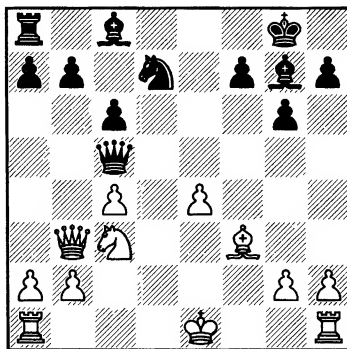
13...♖xb2! would have been strong, preventing the return of the white knight to c3 (but not in order to win the rook in the corner!), for example 14 0-0 c6 15 ♖xf8 ♜xf8 16 ♚b1 ♖g7 with a wealth of possibilities for Black (strong play on the dark squares, plus a wonderful knight outpost at e5). Dr Tarrasch was a genius – playing an opening that was not to become fashionable for more than another 60 years, he had achieved a winning position...

14 ♖xf8 ♜xf8 15 ♘c3 ♚c5

Black still has a strong position for his slight material deficit – for the moment he prevents 16 0-0.

16 ♚b3

Aiming to castle queenside. After 16 ♚e2 ♘e5 17 0-0-0 ♖e6 Black immediately regains a pawn with strong pressure.



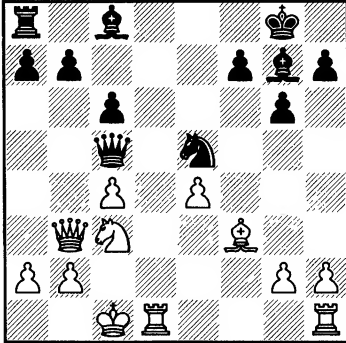
16...♘e5

The natural square for this knight, although Dr Tarrasch himself suggested 16...♘b6 (even though this moves the knight towards the edge of the board) and then ...♖e6. This could have led to similar continuations as in the game, except that Black's b7 pawn would be covered (see the note to Black's 17th move).

But why not 16...♖h6, preventing White from castling queenside? We would suggest that you can learn much by analysing this type of position, with your friends, if you like, but try to analyse without moving the pieces, and **don't** use a computer for assistance! A possible continuation would be 17 ♘a4 ♜a5+ 18 ♚e2 ♘e5 19 ♜c3 ♜xa4 (or 19...♜c7, when the slow-moving white king is in difficulties in the middle of the board) 20 b3 (to prevent ...♜c2+) 20...♜a3 21 ♜xe5 ♖e6 22 ♜c3 ♖g7, and Black regains the sacrificed material with the better position – he has the superior bishop,

as well as the possibility of attacking White's queenside pawn chain by ...a5-a4.

17 0-0-0



17...♖xc4

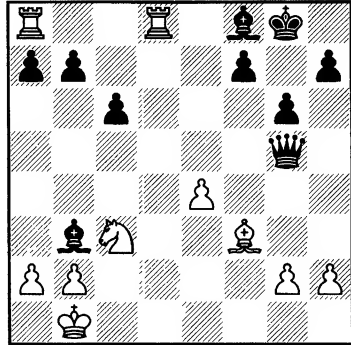
17...♙e6 looks more natural, but perhaps Dr Tarrasch was afraid of losing more material after 18 ♖xb7 (compare the comment regarding 16...♖b6). However, this opens a file for the black rook, and after 18...♙f8! (a hard move to find) the pawn at c6 guards the b5 and d5 squares, and it is very difficult for White, with his passive pieces, to parry the attack against b2. Alternatively, 17...♙e7 followed by 18...♙e6 was quite possible.

With the move played Black begins a combination aimed at winning the opponent's queen, but unfortunately he has overlooked something.

18 ♜d8+ ♙f8 19 ♜hd1 ♙e6?

Giving up the inactive rook, which was very much in the spirit of the times.

20 ♜xa8 ♙g5+ 21 ♖b1 ♖d2+ 22 ♜xd2 ♙xb3 23 ♜dd8

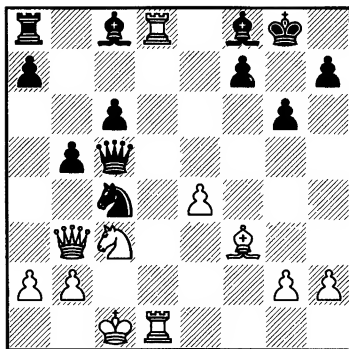


Dr Tarrasch had overlooked this move. It is not difficult to find this variation in the quiet of the study, but easy to overlook in the heat of battle. Perhaps Black had forgotten about the king's rook, which had so far not participated in the game.

The remainder of the game was not of any interest for our theme: after capturing the bishop at f8 White had a big material advantage (knight and two rooks against queen and pawn), and Black's queen, though active, was unable to achieve anything without support. White won some 20 moves later.

But let us return to the position after White's 19th move.

Instead of his faulty combination, Black could have unravelled his forces by 19...b5 (supporting the knight and intending ...♙g7, unpinning the bishop, followed by ...♙e7).



If White tries to forestall this by 20  $\text{R}e8$   $\text{O}g7$  21  $\text{R}dd8$  (doubling rooks on the 8th rank), then 21...  $\text{O}e7$  (also possible is 21...  $\text{W}g5+$  22  $\text{O}c2$   $\text{O}e6$  23  $\text{R}xa8$   $\text{O}e3+$  24  $\text{O}b1$   $\text{O}xb3$ , with a superior version of the combination in the game, as Black retains his knight) 22  $\text{R}g8+$   $\text{O}h6$  23  $\text{R}xc8$   $\text{W}e3+$  24  $\text{O}c2$   $\text{W}d2+$  25  $\text{O}b1$   $\text{R}xc8$  26  $\text{R}xc8$   $\text{W}d7!$ , and to parry the threat of 27...  $\text{O}d2+$  White has to part with his rook, leaving Black a sound pawn up.

What have we learned from this game?

1. In the first few moves Black creates a strong house for his king, in which it is normally very safe.

2. Black need not be afraid of White creating a strong pawn centre, provided that he attacks it at the right time, normally with ...e7-e5.

3. When the centre is opened up, the e5 square often becomes a vital transit point for the black pieces.

4. Black can sometimes afford to give up a little material in the

opening, if he is able to get rid of the opponent's dark-square bishop. His own King's Indian bishop may then become immensely strong, giving him domination of the dark squares.

Our second game is one of the finest ever won by an Englishman, against a legendary figure who was to become Champion of the World just four years later.

White: **Alexander Alekhine**

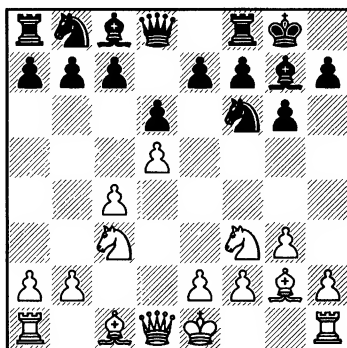
Black: **Frederick Yates**

*Carlsbad 1923*

1  $d4$   $\text{O}f6$  2  $c4$   $g6$  3  $g3$   $\text{O}g7$  4  $\text{O}g2$   
0-0 5  $\text{O}c3$   $d6$  6  $\text{O}f3$   $\text{O}c6$

6...  $\text{O}bd7$  followed by ...e7-e5 is the more 'classical' approach, although this was only established a couple of decades later!

7  $d5$   $\text{O}b8$



And here 7...  $\text{O}a5$  followed by ...c7-c5 and the preparation of ...b7-b5 is the usual plan adopted nowadays. Yates's provocative idea is rather

different: at the cost of a couple of tempi he entices the advance of the d-pawn, in order to open the diagonal for his King's Indian bishop and also to gain the c5 square for his knight.

**8 e4**

After this move Black's idea proves justified, as White blocks the diagonal of his own king's bishop and also weakens his control of d3 and f3.

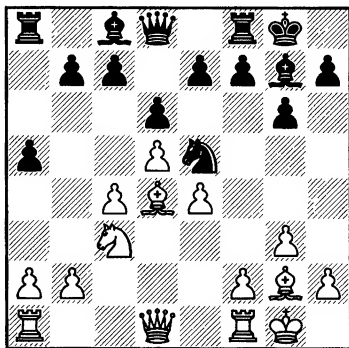
**8...♖bd7 9 0-0 a5**

As we will see in the chapter on standard moves, this advance has the aim of securing c5 as a possible post for the black knight.

**10 ♖e3**

A further inaccuracy, after which Black gains the opportunity to use e5 (a key point in the King's Indian!) as a transit square. 10 h3 would have prevented the next move.

**10...♗g4 11 ♖d4 ♗ge5 12 ♖xe5 ♗xe5**



**13 c5**

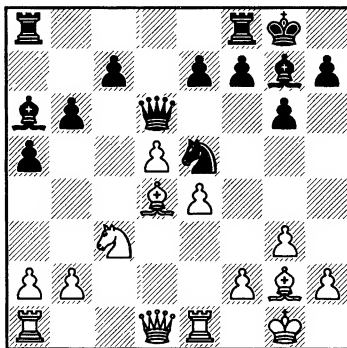
If 13 f4 ♖g4 (13...♗xc4? loses to 14 ♖xg7 ♗xg7 15 ♖d4+) 14 ♖b3

♗f3+ 15 ♖xf3 ♖xd4+ with a perfectly good position for Black.

**13...dxc5 14 ♖xc5 b6 15 ♖d4 ♖a6**

In the majority of cases in the King's Indian this bishop is employed on the c8-h3 diagonal. Here we have an exception: Black wants to exploit the weak d3 square in White's position.

**16 ♖e1 ♗d6**



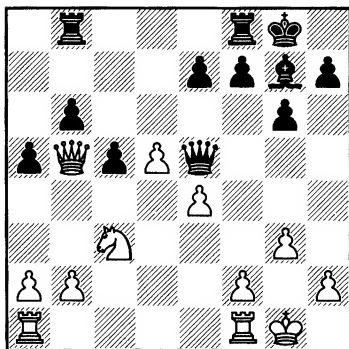
**17 ♖f1**

The last comment is demonstrated by the variation 17 f4 ♗d3 18 e5 (after 18 ♖xg7 ♖c5+ Black's queen and knight combine to give a 'smothered' mate) 18...♖b4 and the b-pawn cannot be defended. White therefore offers the exchange of bishops, but this weakens the light squares in the vicinity of his king.

**17...♖xf1 18 ♖xf1 c5 19 ♖xe5**

After 19 dxc6?? the weakness on f3 is immediately felt: 19...♖xd4! 20 ♖xd4 ♗f3+.

**19...♖xe5 20 ♖b3 ♖ab8 21 ♖b5**



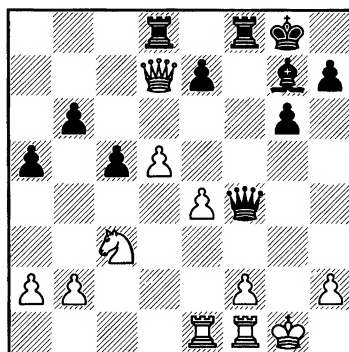
21...f5

White has taken his queen to the queenside in order to block the opponent's pawn majority there, and so Black quite logically begins play on the kingside.

22 ♖ae1

Or 22 exf5 ♜xf5 followed by 23...♙d4, with strong pressure on f2. The d5 pawn would also be vulnerable.

22...f4 23 ♜d7 ♜bd8 24 gxf4 ♜xf4



If now 25 ♜xe7 Black wins simply by driving away the queen – 25...♞fe8 26 ♜b7 – and then 25...♙e5. Therefore White has to defend his h2 pawn along the rank.

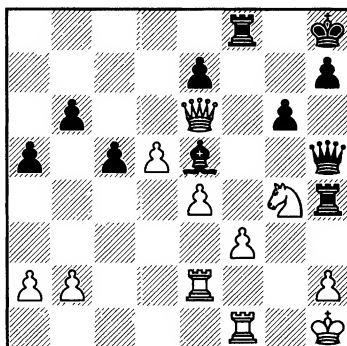
25 ♜e6+ ♔h8 26 f3 ♜g5+ 27 ♔h1

Now Black uses his control of the dark squares to move his pieces into attacking positions.

27...♞d6 28 ♜h3 ♙e5 29 ♞e2 ♞f6 30 ♘d1 ♞f4 31 ♘e3 ♞h4 32 ♜e6 ♜h5

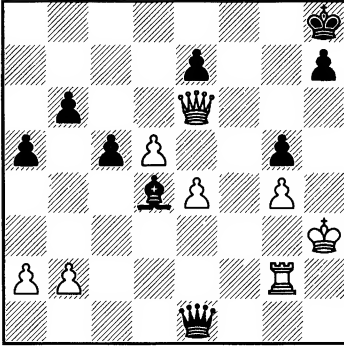
With threats against both the h2 and f3 pawns. White sets up a last line of defence.

33 ♘g4

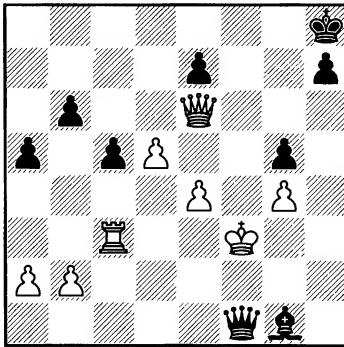


33...♞xg4! 34 fxg4 ♞xf1+ 35 ♔g2 ♜xh2+ 36 ♔xf1 ♜h1+ 37 ♔f2 ♙d4+ 38 ♔g3 ♜g1+ 39 ♔h3 ♜f1+ 40 ♞g2 ♜h1+ 41 ♔g3 ♜e1+ 42 ♔h3 g5!

A beautiful quiet move after the series of checks. The threat of mate at h4 forces the white rook to abandon its close defence of the king, and with some further precise checks Black sets up a mating net.



43 ♖c2 ♜f1+ 44 ♔h2 ♜g1+ 45  
 ♕h3 ♜h1+ 46 ♔g3 ♜d1 47 ♖c3  
 ♜g1+ 48 ♔h3 ♜f1+ 49 ♔g3 ♕f2+  
 50 ♕f3 ♕g1+



**White resigns**, as he is checkmated  
 in two more moves.

Some conclusions:

1. It is not essential for Black to set up a pawn centre. The occupation of the central squares by his pieces can be very effective.

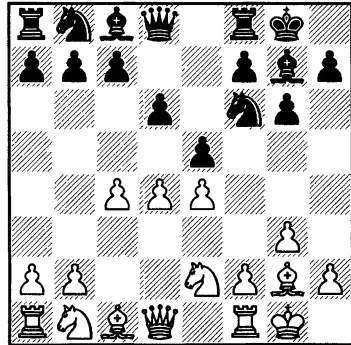
2. The advance of Black's f-pawn can be a very powerful attacking weapon.

3. Control over e5 and other neighbouring dark squares can allow Black to swing his forces over to attack the white king.

Our final game in this chapter is aimed at demonstrating how resilient Black's position can be in the King's Indian Defence, when all does not go to plan in the opening.

White: **Reuben Fine**  
 Black: **Isaac Boleslavsky**  
*USA v. USSR Radio Match 1945*

1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 d6 3 g3 g6 4 ♕g2 ♕g7  
 5 e4 0-0 6 ♖e2 e5 7 0-0



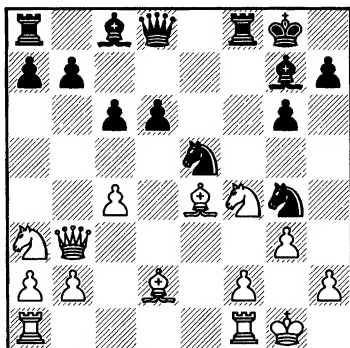
7...exd4

With this move Black gives up his strong-point in the centre, with the aim of gaining free play for his pieces.

8 ♖xd4 ♘c6 9 ♘c2 ♕e6 10 ♖e3  
 ♘e5 11 ♖a3 ♖fg4

The attack on the c4 pawn has forced the white knights to take up somewhat awkward positions, and now Black intends to attack the white centre by advancing his f-pawn.

12 ♖d5 c6 13 ♗f4 ♙c8 14 ♙d2 f5  
15 ♜b3 fxе4 16 ♙xe4

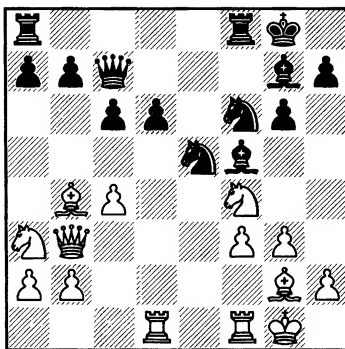


16...♗f6

A pity. After the game Boleslavsky showed that with 16...♗d7 (a typically King's Indian move), aiming for the fine post at c5, Black could have fully justified his opening strategy. The point is that 17 ♗e6, for example, can be answered by 17...♜e7 18 ♗xf8 ♗c5 19 ♜d1 ♜xe4 20 f3 ♜d4+ 21 ♙g2 ♗e5, when the white knight is lost, and Black's two minor pieces are much superior to White's rook and pawn.

17 ♙g2 ♜c7 18 ♞ad1 ♙g4 19 f3  
♙f5 20 ♙b4

Now White centralises his pieces, and with the attack on the weak d6 pawn he forces Black onto the defensive.

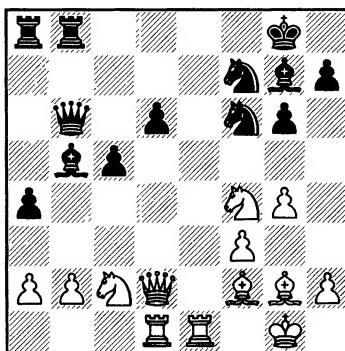


20...♗f7 21 g4 ♙d7 22 ♗c2

The tempting 22 ♙xd6 ♗xd6 23 ♞xd6 (so that if 23...♜xd6? 24 c5+) allows Black good counterplay with 23...♗e8.

Now Black makes a desperate attempt to gain some play on the queenside, but at the cost of weakening his position in the centre.

22...a5 23 ♙e1 a4 24 ♜b4 b5 25  
cxb5 ♜b6+ 26 ♙f2 c5 27 ♞fe1 ♞fb8  
28 ♜d2 ♙b5





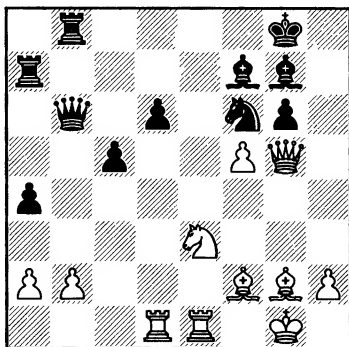
Black has play against the b2 pawn, but White is very strong on the central files.

29 g5

Impatiently played. White could have increased the positional pressure with 29 h4 followed by 30 g5 and 31 d5, or 29 e6 h8 30 g5 followed by 31 e3 and 32 d5, in each case occupying the weak d5 square.

29...xg5 30 xg6 hxg6 31 xg5 e8 32 f4 a7 33 e3 f7 34 f5

Black's position looks critical, but his king's defences, with the g7 bishop playing a major role, prove surprisingly resilient.



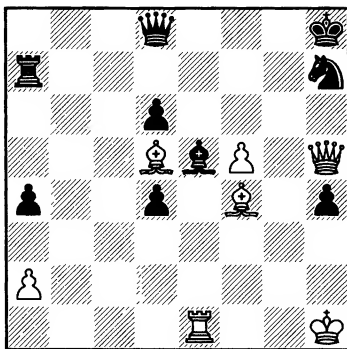
34...d7! 35 Wg4 g5 36 d5 Wd8 37 h4 Bxb2

Black's plan of counterplay has succeeded, and the worst for him is now over.

38 e3 gxh4 39 e6 h6 e5 40 xd5+ e8 41 e1

Black's defences also hold after 41 Wh5 (threatening 42 e8+) 41...Bb8, e.g. 42 e6 Wg8 43 e1 h1 exh6 44 Wh6 Wg4.

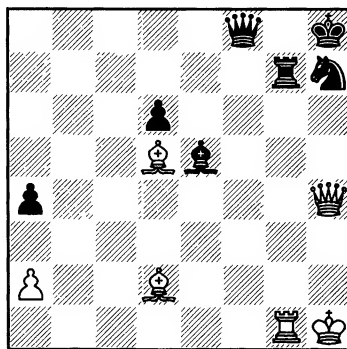
41...Bb4 42 Wh5 e5 43 e1 h1 d4 44 Bxd4 cxd4 45 e1 f4



45...d3!

This tactical resource saves the game. Black's defences hold after 46 ex5 dxe5 47 e5+ g7 48 Wf7 Wf8, while after 46 e5+ dxe5 47 ex5 e7 48 Wxh4 d2 he even wins.

46 f6 d2 47 exd2 Wxf6 48 c1 Wf8 49 Wxh4 c7 50 g1 g7



Here, in view of the elimination of virtually all the material, a draw was agreed.

From this game we have learned:

1. In the opening Black may have to look for non-routine manoeuvres (16...♗d7!) in order to activate his forces.

2. If he does not manage to activate his forces, an attack on his d6 pawn may force him onto the defensive.

3. In the event of threats to his king, Black's defences can prove surprisingly resilient, a key role being played by his dark-square bishop.

After these introductory games, which we hope have whetted the reader's appetite, we will move on to a description of the standard moves in the King's Indian Defence, of which there are one hundred and twenty in total – sixty for Black and sixty for White. Once the ideas behind these standard moves have been grasped, the reader may find it useful to return to these three games, in order to see these moves being applied.

## 2 The basic functions of the two armies

Before we move on to a description of the 120 standard moves, we consider it worthwhile explaining the basic roles of the members of the black and white armies.

In very general terms, as the reader may already know, rooks should aim for open lines, bishops for open diagonals, and knights for strong points. The queen likes space (which is why normally it is best not brought out too early in the game, when the board is crowded), pawns like to advance together, opening lines for the pieces, and the king seeks a shelter, from where it can command the battle from the rear.

In the King's Indian Defence these general aims take the following more concrete form:

### Functions of the black pieces

#### a8

- To wait at its post and support the advance of the a-pawn.
- To move to b8 to support the advance of the b-pawn.
- To move to d8 or e8 to be ready for action in the centre.

#### b8

- To move to d7 (or c6) to support the e5 pawn.
- To manoeuvre via b8-d7-c5 (or b8-a6-c5) to the c5 square, if there is no longer a white pawn at d4.

#### c8

- To wait at its post, controlling the c8-h3 diagonal.

#### d8

- To wait at its post until the pawn formation is determined.
- Then to move out on the d8-a5 diagonal, or onto the e-file.

#### e8

- To castle (as soon as the king's bishop and king's knight clear the way), helping the king's rook to move closer to the centre, and vacating the e8 square for possible manoeuvres of the queen, rook and knight.

**♔f8**

- To move to g7, where together with the pawns it protects the king's position after castling.

**♘g8**

- To move to f6, making way for the king to castle.

**♖h8**

- To move to f8 (when the king castles), from where it supports the advance of the f-pawn.
- To move on to e8, to attack the e4 pawn.

## Functions of the black pawns

**♟a7**

- To advance to a5, controlling the b4 square and hindering b2-b4.
- To attack the b3 pawn by ...a7-a5-a4.
- To move to a6, to support the advance of the b-pawn.

**♟b7**

- To stand at its post, defending the c6 pawn.
- To move to b6, defending c5.
- To advance to b5, attacking the c4 pawn.

**♟c7**

- To stand at its post, defending the d6 pawn.
- To move to c6, controlling the b5 and d5 squares.
- To advance to c5, attacking the d4 pawn.

**♟d7**

- To move to d6, to assist ...e7-e5 or ...c7-c5.

**♟e7**

- To attack the d4 pawn by ...e7-e5.

**♟f7**

- To attack the e4 pawn by ...f7-f5.

**♠g7**

- To move to g6, making way for the bishop to go to g7.

**♠h7**

- To wait at its post, defending the g6 pawn.
- To attack the g5 square by ...h7-h6.
- To attack a pawn at g4 by ...h7-h5, or a pawn at g3 by ...h7-h5-h4.

**Functions of the white pieces****♖a1**

- To move to d1, defending the d4 pawn.
- To move to b1, supporting the advance of the b-pawn to b4.

**♜b1**

- To move to c3, defending the e4 pawn.

**♙c1**

- To move to e3, defending the d4 pawn.
- To move to g5, pinning the black knight on f6.

**♖d1**

- To move to c2, d2 or e2, vacating its square for the rook.

**♚e1**

- To wait in the centre until the pawn chains are stabilised, and then to decide which side to castle.

**♙f1**

- To wait at its post, develop at e2, or move into a shelter at g2.

**♜g1**

- To defend the d4 pawn by moving to f3 (or e2).

**♖h1**

- To move to f1 in the event of kingside castling.
- To wait at its post and support the advance of the h-pawn.

## **Functions of the white pawns**

### **♠a2**

- To move to a3 to assist b2-b4.
- To move to a4, attacking the b5 square.

### **♠b2**

- To move to b3 to support the c4 pawn.
- To move to b4 to attack the c5 square.

### **♠c2**

- To move to c4 to attack the d5 square.

### **♠d2**

- To move to d4 to attack the squares e5 and c5.
- To advance to d5 to block the pawn at d6.

### **♠e2**

- To move to e4 to attack the d5 square.

### **♠f2**

- To wait at its post, defending the castled position.
- To move to f3 to defend the e4 pawn.
- To move to f4 to attack the e5 square.

### **♠g2**

- To wait at its post, defending the castled position.
- To move to g3 to allow the development of the bishop at g2.
- To move to g4 to attack the squares f5 and h5.

### **♠h2**

- To wait at its post, defending the castled position.
- To move to h3 to defend the g4 square.
- To advance h2-h4-h5 to attack the g6 pawn.

### 3 Standard moves in the King's Indian

In this chapter we have first selected the thirty-six moves of the black pieces that occur most often in the opening stage of the King's Indian Defence. It is useful to know the essential point of each of these moves. This is much easier than trying to learn by heart thousands of complicated variations, and besides, all these variations will inevitably include a selection of our '36 moves', only each time in a different order.

We then give the twenty-four most frequently occurring moves of the black pawns, making a total of 60 moves. The point behind a particular move is usually the same whatever the actual position on the board, although, of course, exceptions occur. Therefore careful consideration must be given to the other side's moves, and logical decisions taken. If in addition to this you try to remember the 60 standard moves of the white pawns and pieces, you will have information of in total the 120 most frequently-occurring moves in the King's Indian Defence.

In the following sections we have given examples of many of these standard moves, taken from the annotated games in Chapter 5 (Games 1-50), or from the additional games in Chapter 6 (Games A1-A64).

#### 36 standard moves of the black pieces

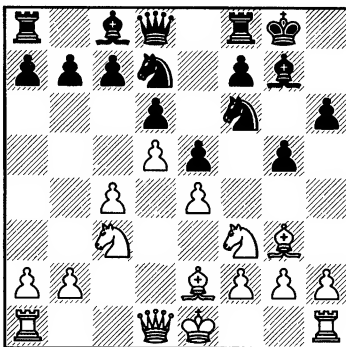
♖g8-f6	♖f6-h5	♖f6-d7	♖f6-h7	♖f6-e8	♖f6-g4
♗b8-d7	♗b8-c6	♗b8-a6	♗d7-f8	♗d7-c5	♗d7-e5
♘a6-c5	♘a6-c7	♙f8-g7	♙f8-e7	♙g7-f8	♙c8-d7
♙c8-e6	♙c8-f5	♙c8-h3	♙c8-g4	♚f8-e8	♚f8-g8
♚f8-f7	♚a8-b8	♚a8-d8	♚a8-e8	♛d8-a5	♛d8-b6
♛d8-c7	♛d8-e8	♛d8-e7	0-0	♜g8-h7	♜g8-h8

**♞g8-f6**

The knight attacks the e4 square, where there is often a white pawn, and vacates g8, allowing the black king to castle.

**♞f6-h5**

This move simultaneously clears three lines – for the queen, bishop, and f-pawn. At the same time the knight aims for the outpost at f4 and attacks the g3 square.



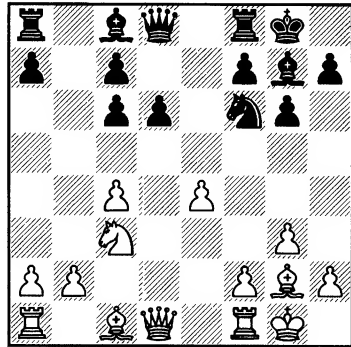
(position after 10 ♞h4-g3)

Black plays 10...♞f6-h5, with the intention of occupying the f4 outpost. He does not fear the discovered attack 11 ♞xe5 (or 11 ♞xg5) in view of 11...♞xg3 (Game A39).

**♞f6-d7**

From here the knight attacks the c5 and e5 squares, and can also move on to b6 or f8. At the same time lines are

opened for the queen, the dark-square bishop, and the f-pawn.



(position after 10 0-0)

In many King's Indian positions there is no need for Black to hurry with the development of his queen's bishop and rook. Here he played 10...♞f6-d7, with the specific idea of not allowing White to fianchetto his queen's bishop after b2-b3. Later the knight took up a good post at c5 (Game 19).

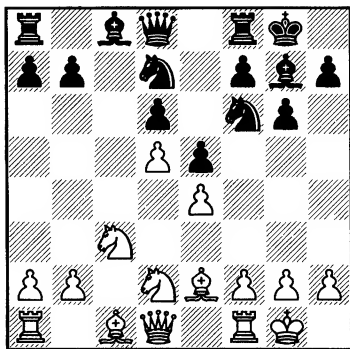
**♞f6-h7**

This prepares ...♞h7-g5 and clears the way for a possible ...f7-f5.

**♞f6-e8**

This move clears three lines, for the queen, king's bishop and f-pawn, and at the same time it defends the d6 and c7 squares.



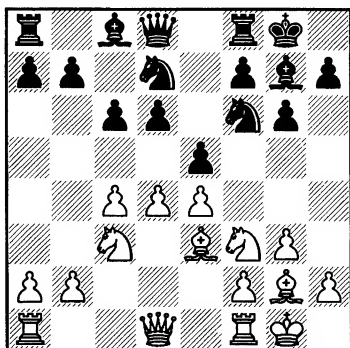


(position after 10  $\text{Nf3-d2}$ )

Black wants to advance his f-pawn. He prepares this with 10...  $\text{Nf6-e8}$ , at the same time protecting his d6 pawn in anticipation of White's  $\text{Nd2-c4}$  (Game A9).

$\text{Nf6-g4}$

This knight move attacks the squares e3, f2 and h2, and clears the way for the f-pawn to advance.

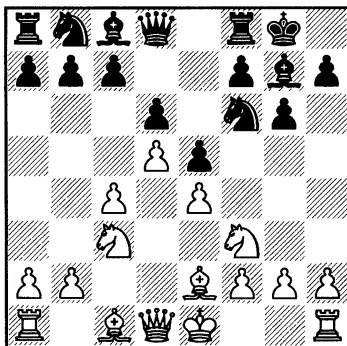


(position after 9  $\text{Qc1-e3}$ )

White's last move invited 9...  $\text{Nf6-g4}$ , attacking the bishop. After 10  $\text{Qg5 f6}$  11  $\text{Qc1}$  Black was able to make the thematic advance 11...f5 (Game 12).

$\text{Nb8-d7}$

From here the knight attacks the c5 and e5 squares; it may also move on to b6, f6 or f8.



(position after 7  $\text{d4-d5}$ )

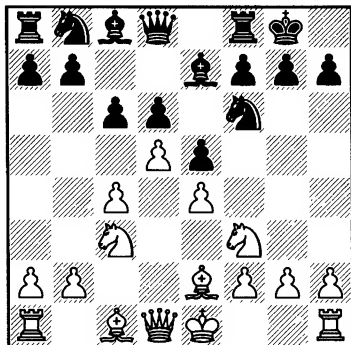
With 7...  $\text{Nb8-d7}$  followed by ...a7-a5 Black secures the c5 square for his knight (Game 34). A modern way of achieving the same aim is by 7...a5 and ... $\text{Na6}$  (Game 30).

$\text{Nb8-c6}$

This defends the e5 square and attacks the white pawn on d4.

**♞b8-a6**

This prepares ...♞a6-c5, or in some cases ...♞a6-c7.



(position after 7 ♞g1-f3)

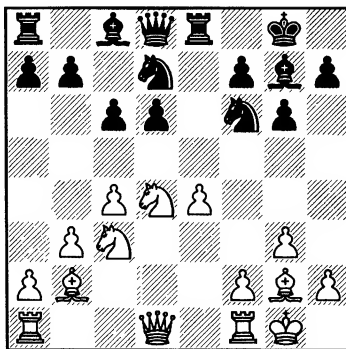
Black's position is cramped. With 7...♞b8-a6 he begins an original manoeuvre aimed at exchanging his passive dark-square bishop: ...♞d7, ...♞c8 and ...♞d8-b6 (Game A47).

**♞d7-f8**

This may be a good defensive post for the knight, from where it can also be brought into the action via h7 or e6.

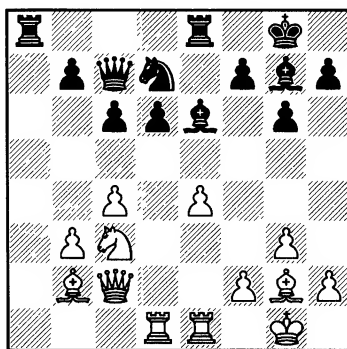
**♞d7-c5**

When the white d-pawn has advanced or been exchanged, c5 is often a good post for the knight, from where it attacks e4, d3, b3 and a4.



(position after 11 ♞c1-b2)

Black plays 11...♞d7-c5, attacking the e4 pawn, and also planning a queenside offensive with ...a7-a5-a4.

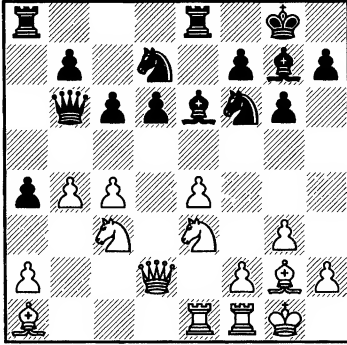


(position after 20 ♞d3-c2)

Several moves later in the same game, Black's second knight moves to the same square – 20...♞d7-c5. White drives away the knight by 21 b4, but this leaves his c4 pawn weakened (Game 17).

**♞d7-e5**

Normally played when Black has exchanged pawns ...e5xd4, this knight move attacks the squares g4, f3, d3 and c4 .



(position after 17 ♞c2-e3)

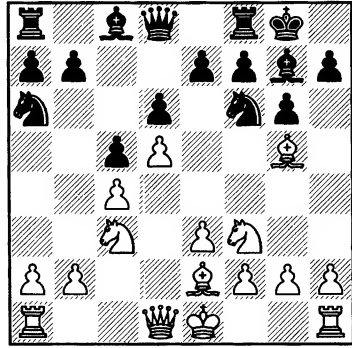
Earlier Black's queen's knight occupied c5, but was driven back by b3-b4. Now by 17...♞d7-e5 it attacks the weakened pawn at c4 (Game A5).

**♞a6-c5**

When the white pawn has moved from d4 this can be a good post for the knight, from where it attacks the squares e4, d3, b3 and a4.

**♞a6-c7**

From here the knight defends the e6 square and attacks d5 and b5.



(position after 8 ♟f1-e2)

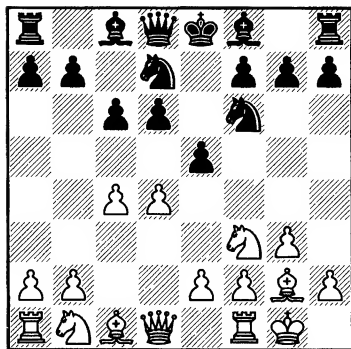
Black's standard plan in this type of position is to advance his pawn to b5. He prepares this with 8...♞a6-c7 followed by ...a7-a6 and ...♞b8 (Game 41).

**♟f8-g7**

The characteristic move of the King's Indian Defence. The bishop is developed on the long diagonal h8-a1. This is also one of the stages in building the 'house' for the king.

**♟f8-e7**

This less aggressive development of the bishop, which also prepares castling, characterises the Old Indian Defence.

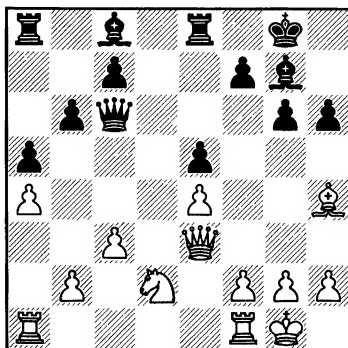


(position after 6 0-0)

Black opts for 6...♗f8-e7. Later, after castling and ...♖e8, the bishop retreats to f8, creating pressure on the e-file (Game A63).

♗g7-f8

With this move Black covers the squares on the f8-a3 diagonal, and in some cases allows his rook to come into action on the g- or h-file.



(position after 24 ♖b3-d2)

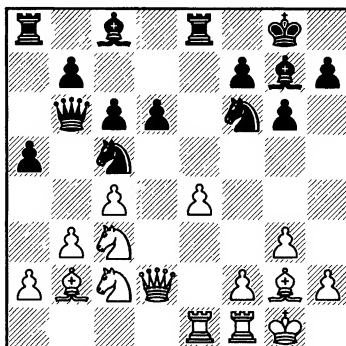
The King's Indian bishop's main diagonal is blocked, so with 24...♗g7-f8 Black switches it to the f8-a3 diagonal, where it later takes up a powerful post at c5 (Game 8).

♗c8-d7

This covers the squares on the e8-a4 diagonal and enables Black to connect his rooks.

♗c8-e6

This move attacks the opponent's queenside (often, in particular, a pawn at c4) and enables Black to connect his rooks.

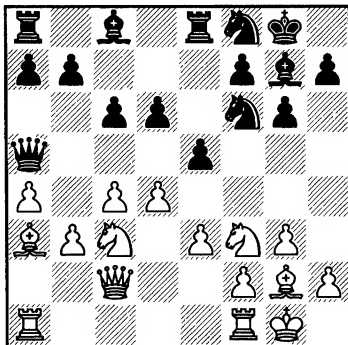


(position after 14 ♖d4-c2)

White's last move was aimed at countering the threat of ...a5-a4, but after 14...♗c8-e6 15 ♗a1 a4 16 b4 ♖cd7 he was unable to defend his c4 pawn (Game A5).

**♗c8-f5**

This covers the h7-b1 diagonal, in particular the important central e4 square.



(position after 12 ♗c1-a3)

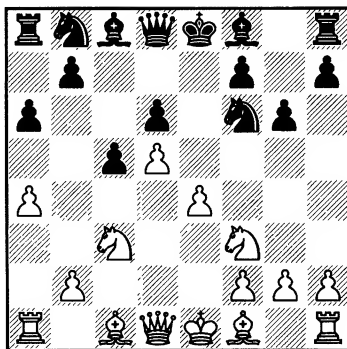
With 12...♗c8-f5 Black developed his bishop with gain of tempo (Game 1). White should have replied 13 ♖d2, temporarily preventing 13...e4 because of the tactical trick 14 ♘xe4.

**♗c8-h3**

This move, attacking the g2 square, can be the culmination of an attack by Black on the kingside.

**♗c8-g4**

The bishop attacks the squares on the h5-d1 diagonal, in particular f3, where it may pin the white knight against the queen.

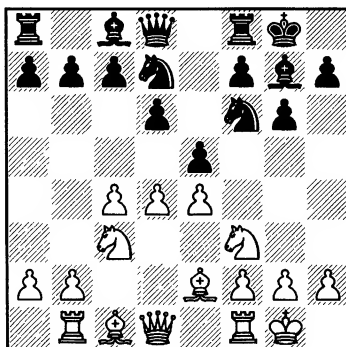


(position after 8 a2-a4)

In this type of Benoni position the c4 square is potentially a strong post for White's king's knight. Therefore Black plays 8...♗c8-g4, being ready to follow up with ...♗xf3 (Game 42).

**♖f8-e8**

The rook supports the e5 pawn, and makes a direct or potential attack on the white e4 pawn.



(position after 8 ♖a1-b1)

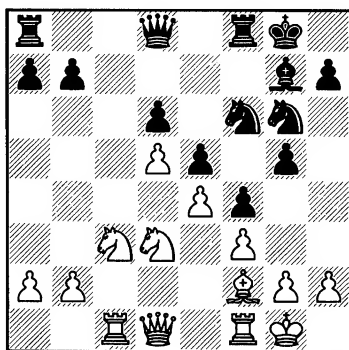
To force White to resolve the central pawn tension, Black plays **8...♖f8-e8**. The drawback is that after 9 d5 the rook may have to return to f8, to support ...f7-f5 (Game A44).

**♖f8-g8**

From here the rook aids Black's kingside pawn offensive by supporting the advance of the g-pawn.

**♖f8-f7**

From here the rook defends the 7th rank, and is ready to move to g7 to support the advance of the g-pawn.

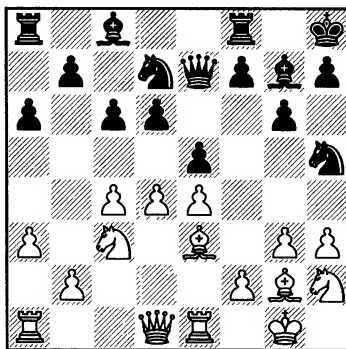


(position after 18 ♖a1-c1)

To guard against a possible invasion on c7, Black plays **18...♖f8-f7**. The rook might later have supported the kingside offensive, although in fact it found employment by doubling on the c-file (Game A57).

**♞a8-b8**

From here the rook supports the advance of the b-pawn.



(position after 13 a2-a3)

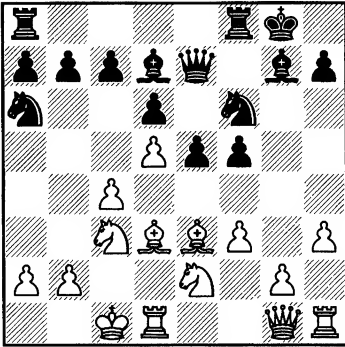
Black does not wish to exchange ...e5xd4, and ...f7-f5 is also ruled out. He therefore plays **13...♞a8-b8**, to initiate play on the queenside by ...b7-b5 (Game 40).

**♞a8-d8**

When the rook is no longer required on the a-file, Black makes it ready for possible action in the centre.

**♞a8-e8**

With this move Black completes his development and lends added support to his e-pawn.

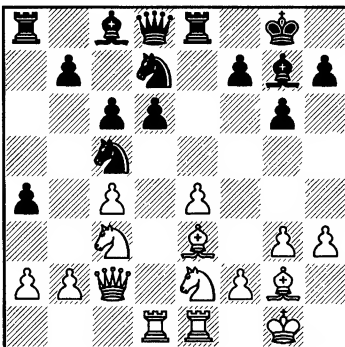


(position after 15 h2-h3)

After his last move White is ready to advance g2-g4. Black plays 15...♖a8-e8 to prepare the dynamic counter ...e5-e4 (Game A43).

♖d8-a5

From here the queen attacks White's queenside, and also in some cases can switch to the kingside along the 5th rank.

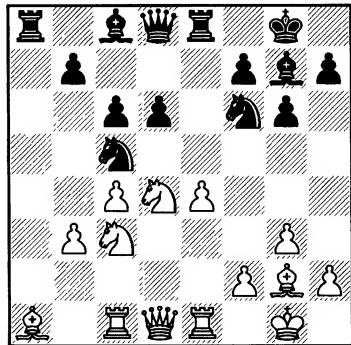


(position after 15 ♘d4-e2)

With 15...♗d8-a5 Black posts his queen actively, exploiting the fact that his d6 pawn is invulnerable: 16 ♖xd6 ♗e5 17 b3 allows the surprise combination 17...♗xh3 (Game 20).

♗d8-b6

Another active post for the queen, from where it puts pressure on the b-file and the a7-g1 diagonal.

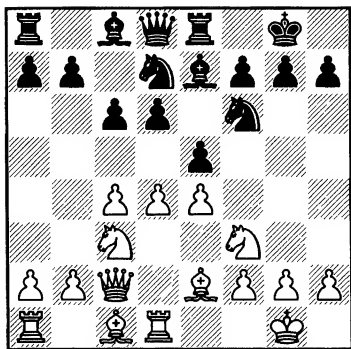


(position after 15 a2xb3)

After 15...♗d8-b6 the black queen's influence extended not only to the b3 pawn, but also along the diagonal to the white king (Game 15).

♗d8-c7

A modest post for the queen, from where it maintains protection of the d6 pawn.

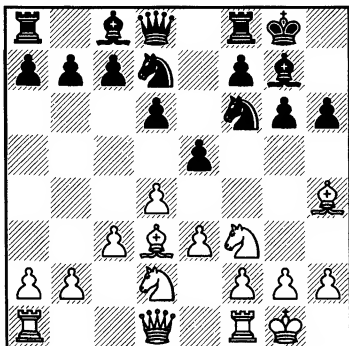


(position after 9 ♖f1-d1)

Black is cramped. With 9...♚d8-c7 he moves his queen out of the line of the white rook, and prepares the regrouping ...♜f8-g6 (Game A21).

♚d8-c7

Often played to avoid a pin or attack by the white bishop on the h4-d8 diagonal. The queen may later come into play on the kingside.

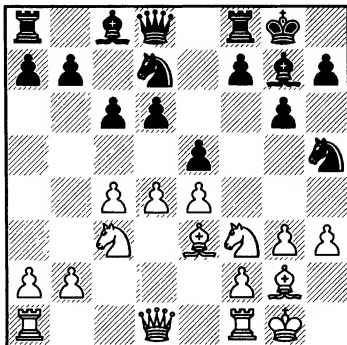


(position after 8 c2-c3)

Moving out of the pin by 8...♚d8-e8, Black creates the immediate threat of 9...e4 (Game 8).

♚d8-e7

From here the queen is ready for action on the e-file, as well as the two dark-square diagonals.



(position after 10 ♔c1-e3)

After the development of the white bishop at e3 there is no longer any threat of a pin on the a3-f8 diagonal, and the queen can be comfortably posted by 10...♚d8-e7 (Game 40).

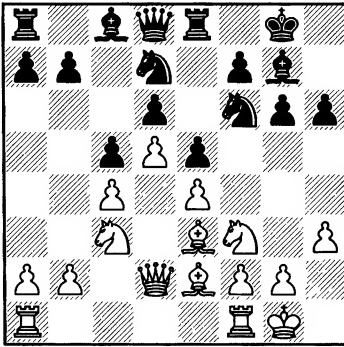
0-0

With this move the king takes up residence in its 'house', at the same time making the rook ready for action.



**♔g8-h7**

From here the king lends added support to the h6 square, moves off the g-file, and vacates g8 for possible manoeuvres of the black pieces.

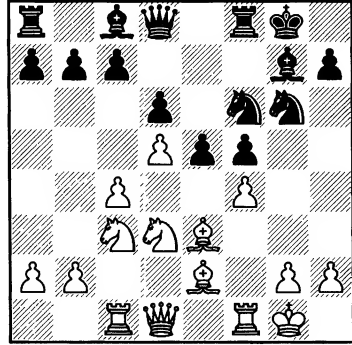


(position after 12 ♔d1-d2)

With 12...♔g8-h7 Black defends his h6 pawn and prepares a regrouping of his cramped forces by ...♗g8 and ...♘f8 (Game 36).

**♔g8-h8**

The king moves off the g-file and vacates the g8 square for possible manoeuvres of the black pieces.



(position after 14 ♔a1-c1)

14...♔g8-h8. Moving the king into the corner allows Black's other pieces more manoeuvring space. Later his rook was able to make use of the g-file (Game A41).

## 24 standard moves of the black pawns

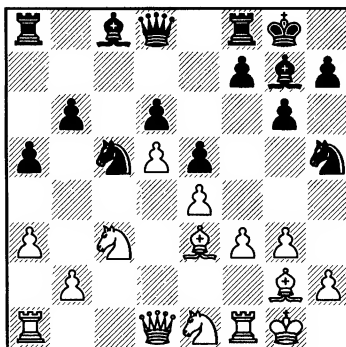
a7-a6	a7-a5	a5-a4	b7-b6	b7-b5	c7-c6
c7-c5	c6xd5	d7-d6	d6xe5	d6-d5	e7-e6
e7-e5	e5-e4	e5xd4	f7-f5	f5xe4	f5-f4
g7-g6	g6xf5	g6-g5	h7-h6	h7-h5	h5-h4

**a7-a6**

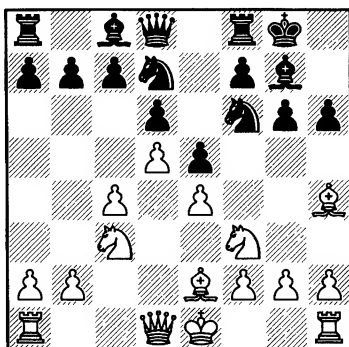
This prevents a white knight from going to b5 and prepares the possible advance of the b-pawn to b5.

**a7-a5**

This move attacks the b4 square. The pawn may move on to a4, to attack a pawn at b3.



(position after 14 a2-a3)



(position after 9 g5-h4)

Black plays 9...a7-a5, to safeguard his knight outpost at c5 (Game 34).

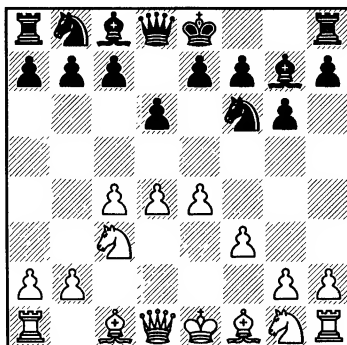
**a5-a4**

With this move Black either attacks the white b-pawn, or fixes the b3 square after the opponent has played a2-a3.

Black sets up a blockade on the queenside with 14...a5-a4 (Game 31). White can win a pawn by 15 e4xc5 bxc5 16 d4xa4, but then 16...g6h6 gives Black active play.

**b7-b6**

This defends c5. Against restrained set-ups it can prepare the development of the light-square bishop at b7 or a6.

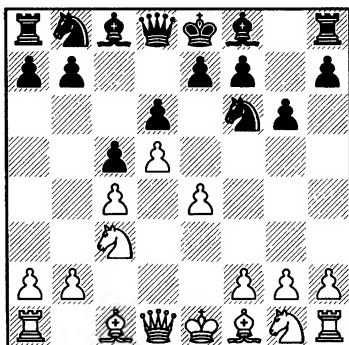


(position after 5 f2-f3)

Black plays **5...b7-b6**, to support the advance of his c-pawn (Game 43). But after **6 ♖d3** he must beware of **6...c5?**, which loses material to **7 e5**.

**b7-b5**

With this move Black attacks the c4 pawn.

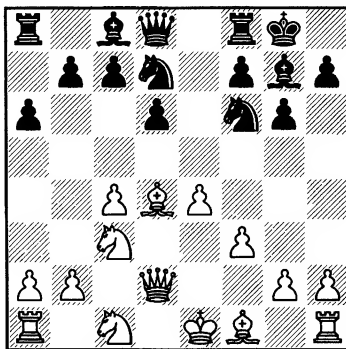


(position after 5 e2-e4)

Not wishing to defend passively, Black sacrifices a pawn by **5...b7-b5**. After **6 cxb5** and a subsequent pawn exchange on a6 he gains active play on the two open files against White's a- and b-pawns (Games A10 and A17). This idea was a forerunner of the Benko Gambit, in which the sacrifice is made even earlier (1 d4 ♜f6 2 c4 c5 3 d5 b5).

**c7-c6**

This move defends the d5 and b5 squares, and allows the development of the queen at a5, b6 or c7.

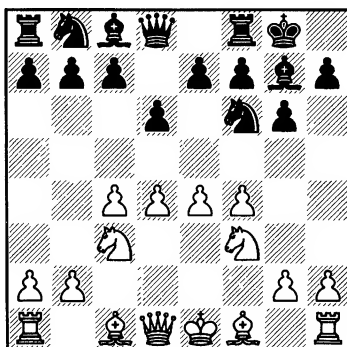


(position after 10 ♗e3xd4)

After White's time-consuming knight manoeuvre **♘g1-e2-c1** it makes sense for Black to break open the centre. He plays **10...c7-c6**, planning to follow up with **...d6-d5** (Game A34).

**c7-c5**

This move attacks the d4 pawn and allows the development of the black queen, usually at a5.

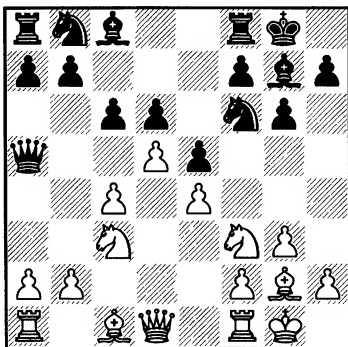


(position after 6 ♘g1-f3)

With **6...c7-c5** Black strikes at the white centre. He will answer **7 dxc5** with **7...♖a5** (Game 45).

**c6xd5**

After the normal recapture **c4xd5**, this leads to the opening of the c-file.



*(position after 9 d4-d5)*

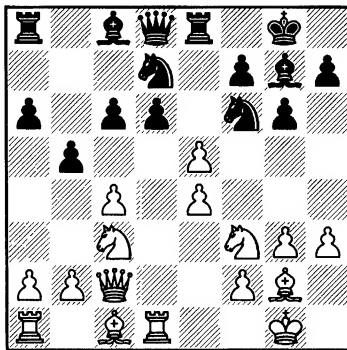
To justify his experimental queen development at a5, Black plays **9...c6xd5** **10 cxd5** in order to continue **10...b5** (Game 35).

**d7-d6**

With this move Black defends the e5 and c5 squares.

**d6xe5**

Normally played in reply to **d4xe5**, this leads to an open d-file, with Black maintaining his pawn at e5.

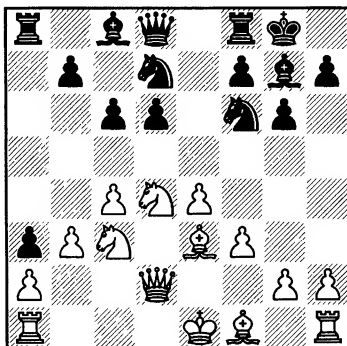


*(position after 12 d4xe5)*

Black recaptures **12...d6xe5**, maintaining his strongpoint in the centre. When White makes this pawn exchange there is always the long-term danger of him being left with a bad light-square bishop (Game A15).

**d6-d5**

The normal aim of this move is to attack the c4 and e4 pawns.

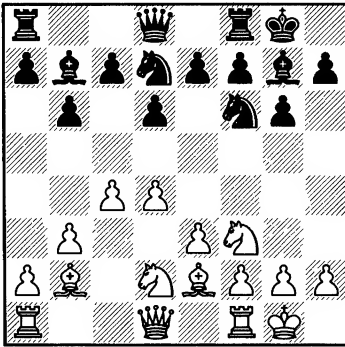


*(position after 14 b2-b3)*

With **14...d6-d5** Black breaks open the centre. White must aim to castle as quickly as possible (Game A34).

**e7-e6**

This move attacks the d5 square and allows the possible development of the queen on the d8-h4 diagonal.



(position after 9 c2-c4)

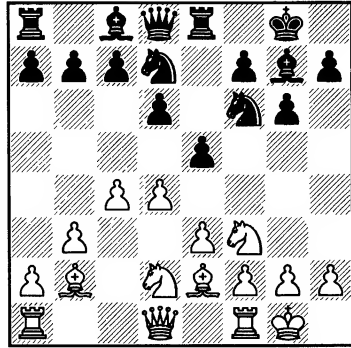
The modest-looking **9...e7-e6** is a flexible move that gives the queen a comfortable post at e7. After further preparation the pawn later advanced to e5 (Game A33).

**e7-e5**

This standard King's Indian move attacks the d4 pawn.

**e5-e4**

With this move Black gains space on the kingside, attacking the f3 and d3 squares.

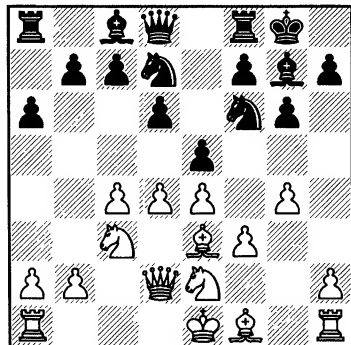


(position after 9 0-0)

With **9...e5-e4** Black sets up a central pawn wedge, gaining space for his pieces on the kingside (Game A6).

**e5xd4**

Black removes the white d-pawn, opening lines for his bishop on the long diagonal and his rook on the e-file, as well as creating posts for his knights at e5 and c5.

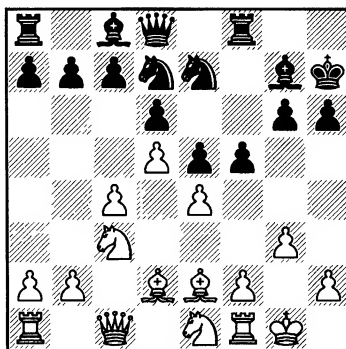


(position after 9 g2-g4)

White has embarked on a wing attack before first securing his centre. With **9...e5xd4** 10 ♖xd4 c5 Black obtains dynamic play for his pieces (Game 47).

**f7-f5**

This move attacks the e4 pawn and threatens in some cases to advance to f4. It can be said, without exaggeration, that the pawn break ...f7-f5 is Black's main threat in the King's Indian Defence.

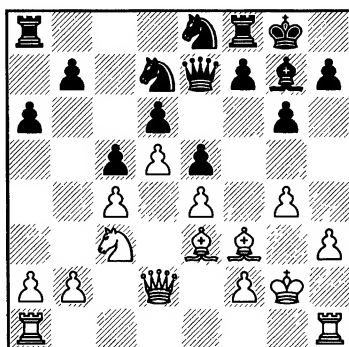


(position after 13 g2-g3)

**13...f5xe4** was an interesting decision, allowing White to occupy e4 with his knight. Black's plan was to eliminate the white d-pawn and finally advance ...d6-d5, gaining control of the centre (Game 27).

**f5-f4**

This move gains space on the kingside and attacks the squares e3 and g3.

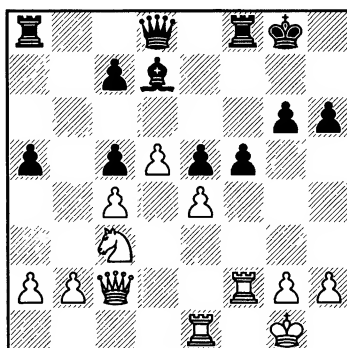


(position after 16 ♖f1-h1)

White is threatening to press on the kingside with ♖e2-g3 followed by the advance of his h-pawn. Black makes a bid for freedom by **16...f7-f5** 17 gxf5 gxf5 18 exf5 e4, sacrificing a pawn to activate his bishop (Game 38).

**f5xe4**

Black eliminates the white pawn on e4.



(position after 20 ♖f4-f2)

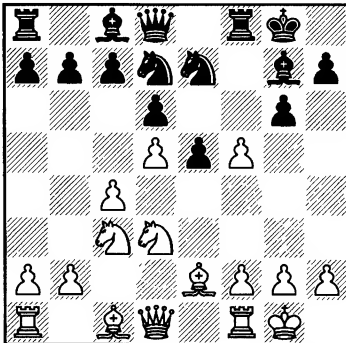
Fine play by the opponent has left Black with chronically weakened pawns. His only chance of counterplay is **20...f5-f4** followed by ...g5-g4-g3 (Game 24).

**g7-g6**

The standard King's Indian move, preparing the development of the bishop at g7.

**g6xf5**

Normally played in reply to a capture by White on f5, this move attacks the e4 and g4 squares.



(position after 11 e4xf5)

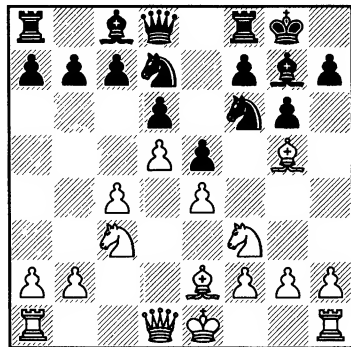
Black recaptures **16...g6xf5**, maintaining control of the e4 square. He later regrouped his knights to g6 and f6 and used the open g-file for his rook (Game A41).

**g6-g5**

With this move Black attacks the h4 and f4 squares and plans the possible follow-up ...g5-g4, attacking a pawn at f3.

**h7-h6**

With this move Black either defends the g5 square or attacks a white bishop there.

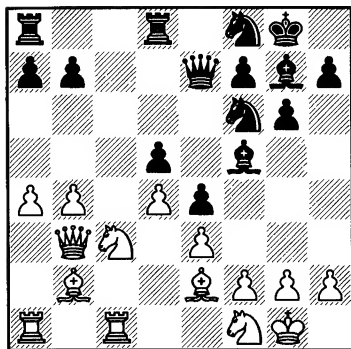


(position after 8 c1-g5)

With **8...h7-h6** Black drives the bishop back to h4, so that he always has the option of breaking the pin on his knight by a later ...g6-g5 (Game A34).

**h7-h5**

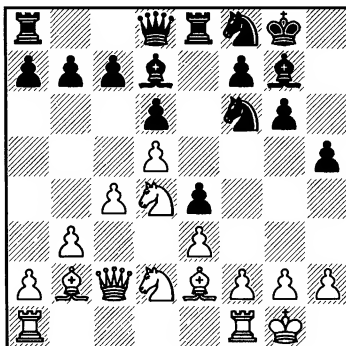
This move attacks the g4 square and in some cases threatens the further advance to h4 and h3.



(position after 19 a3-a4)

**h5-h4**

The pawn attacks the g3 square, and threatens in some cases to advance further to h3, attacking the g2 pawn.



(position after 14 ♖d1-c2)

With 19...h7-h5 Black began the advance of his pawn to h3, weakening the light squares in the vicinity of the white king. Later his knight from f8 came into play via h7 and g5 (Game 2).

Black advances 14...h5-h4 followed by 15...h3, weakening the white king's position (Game A6).

**36 standard moves of the white pieces**

- |        |        |        |        |        |        |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| ♖b1-c3 | ♖b1-d2 | ♖g1-f3 | ♖g1-e2 | ♖g1-h3 | ♖f3-d2 |
| ♖e2-g3 | ♖f3-e1 | ♖c3-e4 | ♖d2-b3 | ♖f1-e2 | ♖f1-g2 |
| ♖f1-d3 | ♖g2-f1 | ♖c1-d2 | ♖c1-e3 | ♖c1-f4 | ♖c1-g5 |
| ♖c1-b2 | ♖c1-a3 | ♖e3xc5 | ♖h1-g1 | ♖f1-e1 | ♖f1-d1 |
| ♖a1-b1 | ♖a1-c1 | ♖a1-d1 | ♖a1-e1 | ♖d1-c2 | ♖d1-d2 |
| ♖d1-e2 | 0-0    | 0-0-0  | ♖e1-f1 | ♖g1-h1 | ♖g1-h2 |

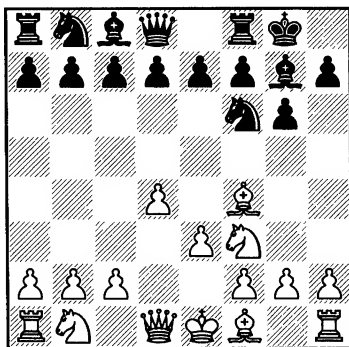


**♞b1-c3**

From here the knight defends the e4 pawn and attacks the d5 square.

**♞b1-d2**

From here the knight defends the e4 and c4 squares.



*(position after 4...0-0)*

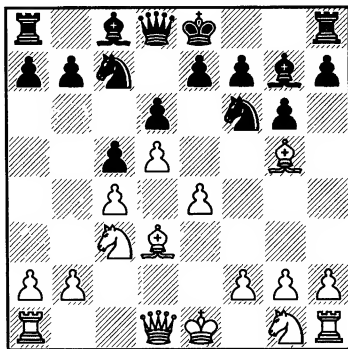
White plays 5 ♞b1-d2, as he plans to over-protect his d4 pawn by c2-c3 (Game 7).

**♞g1-f3**

This move defends the d4 pawn, attacks the e5 square, and clears the way for kingside castling.

**♞g1-e2**

This move defends the d4 pawn and clears the way for kingside castling.

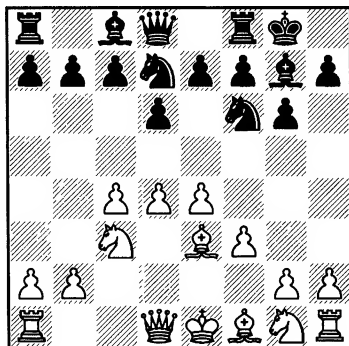


*(position after 7...♞a6-c7)*

Rather than develop his knight at f3, White plays 8 ♞g1-e2, leaving his f-pawn free to advance later to f4 (Game A18).

**♞g1-h3**

This clears the way for kingside castling, the knight normally aiming for the f2 square.

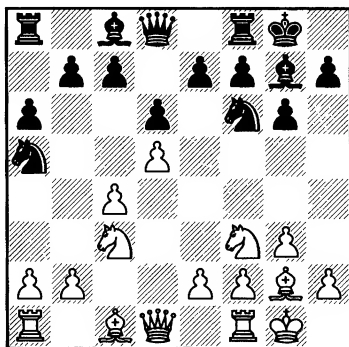


*(position after 6...♞b8-d7)*

White has to decide on how best to develop his kingside. Taking advantage of Black's last move, he plays 7 ♖g1-h3, planning to move the knight the good post f2, where it covers the e4 pawn and also g4 (Game A37).

♖f3-d2

This move defends e4 and c4 and may allow the f-pawn to advance.

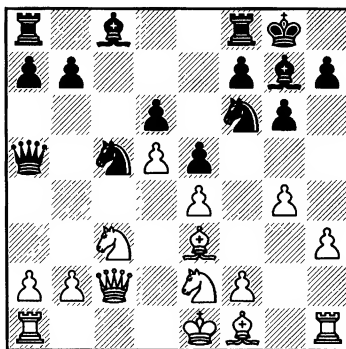


(position after 8...♘c6-a5)

White defends his attacked c-pawn by 9 ♘f3-d2. He will develop his queenside by ♖c2, b2-b3 and ♙b2 (Game A26).

♘e2-g3

From here the knight defends the e4 pawn and attacks the squares f5 and h5.

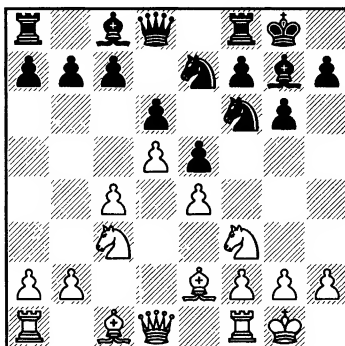


(position after 11...♙d8-a5)

White defends his attacked e4 pawn by 12 ♘e2-g3, at the same time preparing g4-g5 without allowing the black knight to go to h5 (Game A19).

♘f3-e1

This move is normally part of a regrouping manoeuvre that takes the knight to d3 (or c2). It also frees the f-pawn.



(position after 8...♘c6-e7)

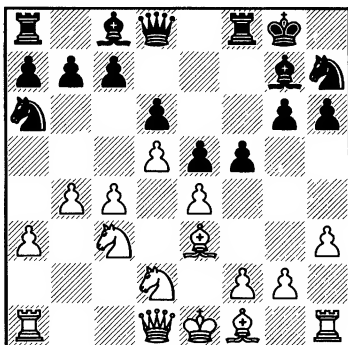
White plays 9  $\text{Nf3-e1}$ , switching his knight to the effective central square d3, and (in anticipation of Black's ...f7-f5) allowing his f-pawn to advance (Game A41).

$\text{Nc3-e4}$

From here the knight blocks the e5 pawn and attacks the d6 pawn and several of the dark squares in the opponent's position (the same applies to  $\text{Nd2-e4}$  and to the capture by the knight on e4).

$\text{Nd2-b3}$

From here the knight defends the squares d4 and c5.



(position after 12...f7-f5)

With 13  $\text{Nd2-b3}$  White supports the advance of his pawn to c5, while also incidentally allowing his bishop to retreat in the event of ...f5-f4 (Game 29).

$\text{Bf1-e2}$

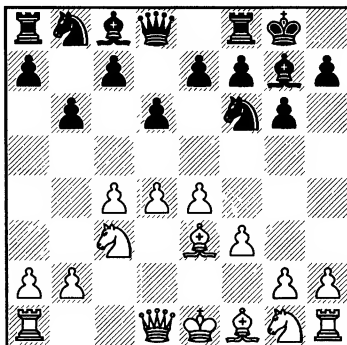
The bishop moves to a modest square, preparing kingside castling.

$\text{Bf1-g2}$

The bishop moves to a ready-made post on the long diagonal, preparing kingside castling.

$\text{Bf1-d3}$

This defends the e4 pawn and prepares kingside castling.

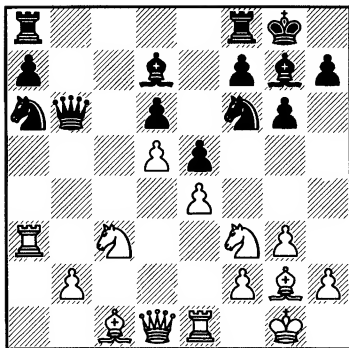


(position after 6...b7-b6)

White played 7  $\text{Bf1-d3}$ , when Black's planned 7...c5 encountered the unexpected 8 e5, winning material (Game A36).

$\text{Bg2-f1}$

Normally played to switch the bishop to a more promising post if the long diagonal is blocked.

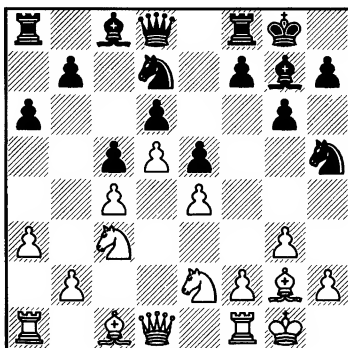


(position after 15... ♘b8-a6)

At g2 White's bishop is blocked by his own central pawns. He plays **16 ♗g2-f1** to bring it into action on the queenside, where the main battle is about to develop (Game 35).

**♗c1-d2**

A modest post for the bishop, but one from where it covers two diagonals.



(position after 10... ♘f6-h5)

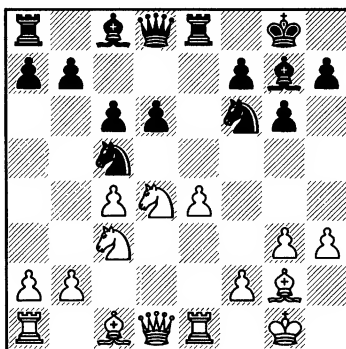
Developing the bishop at e3 would invite an attack on it by ...f7-f5-f4. White therefore plays **11 ♗c1-d2** (Game 37).

**♗c1-e3**

This defends the d4 pawn and in some cases prepares queenside castling.

**♗c1-f4**

From here the bishop attacks the e5 and d6 squares.

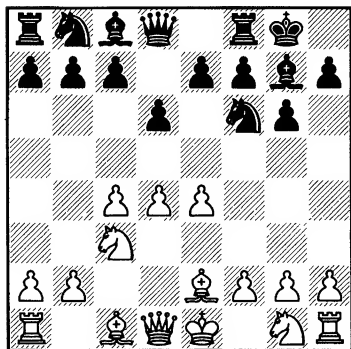


(position after 11... c7-c6)

White's strategy is aimed at removing the strong knight from c5. He plays **12 ♗c1-f4**, threatening 13 ♘b3 (Game 18).

**♗c1-g5**

This attacks (and often pins) the knight on f6 and in some cases prepares queenside castling.

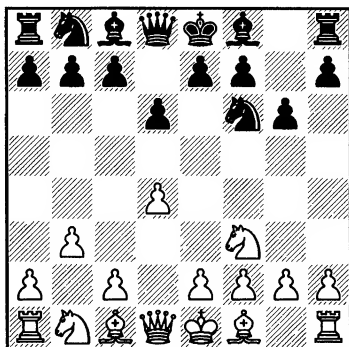


(position after 5...0-0)

6 ♖c1-g5 tries to inhibit Black's counterplay by the potential pin on his knight. Thus 6...e5? loses material after 7 dxe5 dxe5 8 ♔xd8 ♖xd8 9 ♘d5 (Game A23).

♖c1-b2

The bishop defends the d4 pawn and puts pressure on the long diagonal.

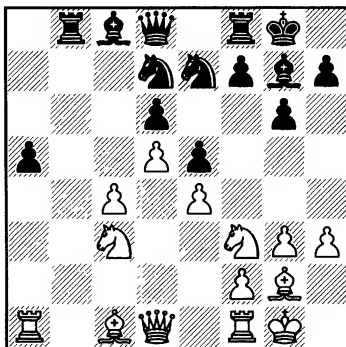


(position after 3...g7-g6)

With 4 ♖c1-b2 White makes an additional attack on the e5 square, although this did not prevent Black from later advancing his e-pawn (Game A6).

♖c1-a3

From here the bishop attacks the squares on the a3-f8 diagonal.

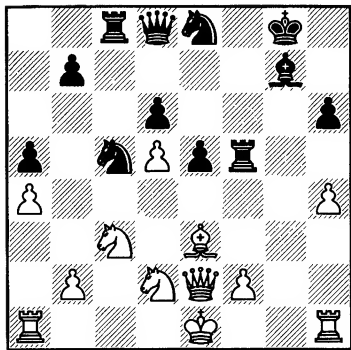


(position after 15...b6xa5)

A bishop is normally a slightly better piece than a knight, but sometimes one has to make the exchange. White plays 16 ♖c1-a3 ♘c5 17 ♖xc5 dxc5, when he obtains a strong pawn in the centre that is constantly threatening to advance (Game A28).

♖e3xc5

This exchange (normally of a black knight) is aimed at increasing White's control of the central light squares.

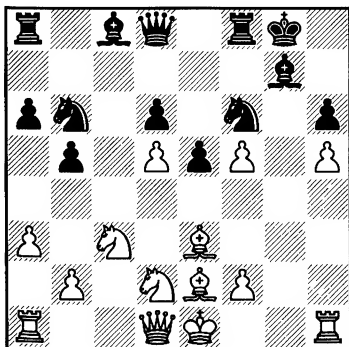


(position after 21... ♖f8xf5)

With 22 ♗e3xc5 ♖xc5 23 ♘de4 White takes control of the e4 square, leaving the black bishop boxed in (Game 49).

♖h1-g1

This move is normally made to occupy an open file.

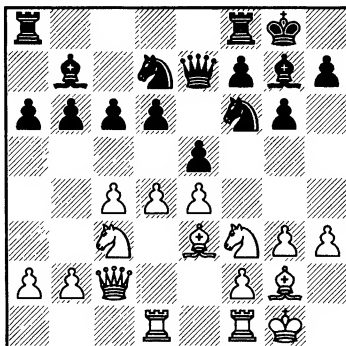


(position after 19... h7-h6)

With 20 ♖h1-g1 White occupies the open file directly opposite the black king (Game 46).

♖f1-e1

From here the rook defends the e4 pawn.



(position after 12... ♗c8-b7)

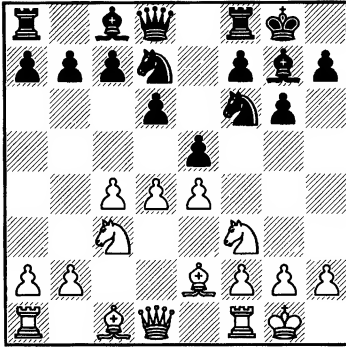
White completes his development with 13 ♖f1-e1 while maintaining the tension, leaving Black in an uncomfortable position (Game A49).

♖f1-d1

This defends the d4 pawn and exerts pressure on the d-file.

♖a1-b1

From here the rook supports the advance of the pawn to b4.

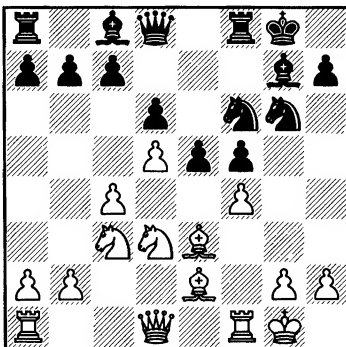


(position after 7...0-0)

With 8  $\text{R}a1-b1$  White moves his rook off the diagonal of the black bishop, planning to expand later on the queenside by b2-b4 (Game A44).

$\text{R}a1-c1$

From here the rook occupies an open file or supports the advance of the pawn to c5.

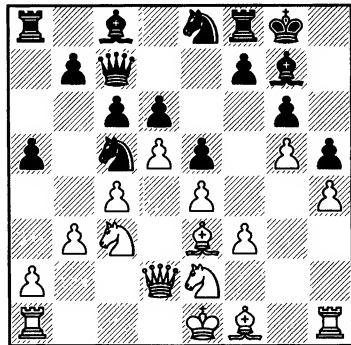


(position after 13... $\text{d}7-f6$ )

White plays 14  $\text{R}a1-c1$ , with the intention of later advancing his pawn to c5 and opening the c-file (Game A41).

$\text{R}a1-d1$

With this move White defends his d4 pawn and exerts pressure on the d-file.

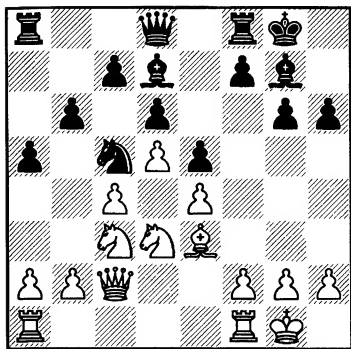


(position after 14... $\text{d}7-c5$ )

With 15  $\text{R}a1-d1$  (threatening 16  $\text{e}2xc5$  dxc5 17 d6) 15... $\text{Q}a6$  16  $\text{Q}a4$  White forces the opponent to block the queenside by 16...c5, after which his hands are freed for manoeuvres on the kingside (Game 39).

$\text{R}a1-e1$

From here the rook defends the e4 pawn and prepares for action in the centre.

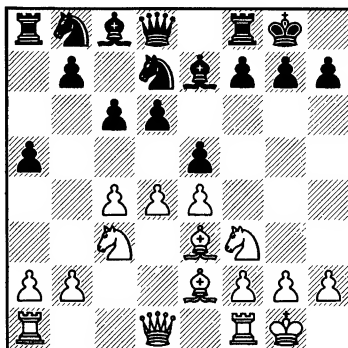


(position after 14...♙g4-d7)

In anticipation of the opening of lines on the kingside after his planned f2-f4, White brings his last piece into play – 15 ♖a1-e1 (Game 24).

♙d1-c2

The queen moves off the back rank, defending the e4 pawn.



(position after 8...0-0)

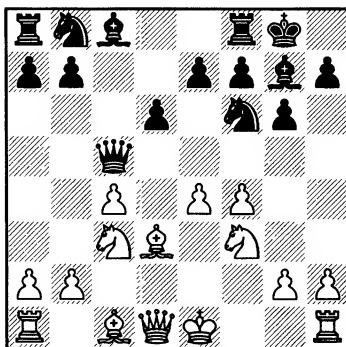
With 9 ♙d1-c2 White adds support to his e4 pawn and allows his queen's rook to come into play at d1 (Game A25).

♙d1-d2

The queen supports the dark-square bishop, allows the rooks to become connected, and prepares for possible queenside castling.

♙d1-e2

The queen moves off the back rank, allowing the rooks to become connected, and defends the c4 and e4 pawns.



(position after 8...0-0)

White needs to take his king into safety. He plays 9 ♙d1-e2, planning ♙e3, after which he can castle kingside (Game A20).

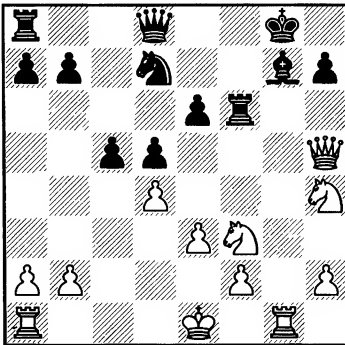


**0-0**

The king moves into a safer position and allows the king's rook comes into play.

**0-0-0**

The king moves to a safer position and brings the queen's rook into play on a central file.

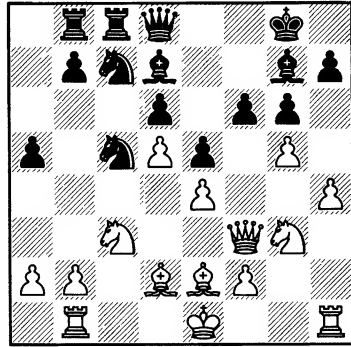


(position after 16...♘b8-d7)

To bring his queen's rook into the attack, White plays 17 **0-0-0**. The possible opening of the c-file does not concern him, as his king will be safe enough at b1 (Game A42).

**♔e1-f1**

The king moves away from possible threats on the a5-e1 diagonal or the e-file.

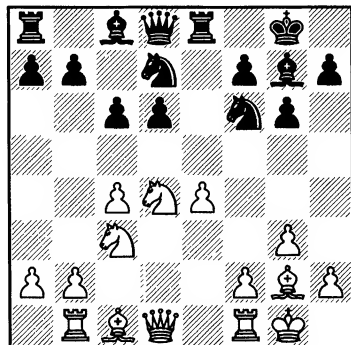


(position after 19...♘e8-c7)

White wants to connect his rooks, but without moving his rook off the h-file. He therefore plays 20 **♔e1-f1**, and later moves his king to g2 (Game A19).

**♔g1-h1**

The king moves off the g1-a7 diagonal.



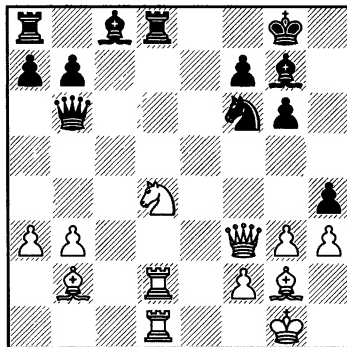
(position after 10...♗f8-e8)

White plans to advance his f-pawn. To avoid a possible pin on the dark-square diagonal, he first plays **11 ♔g1-h1** (Game 21).

**♔g1-h2**

The king moves off the g1-a7 diagonal, normally lending added protection to a pawn on h3.

White consolidates his king's position by **21 ♔g1-h2** (Game A3).



(position after 20... ♖d5-f6)

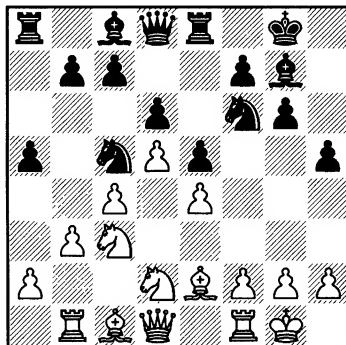
## 24 standard moves of the white pawns

a2-a3	a2-a4	b2-b3	b2-b4	c2-c4	c4-c5
c4xd5	d2-d4	d4-d5	d4xc5	d4xe5	e2-e4
e2-e3	e4-e5	e4xd5	e4xf5	f2-f3	f2-f4
g2-g3	g2-g4	g4xf5	h2-h3	h2-h4	h4-h5

**a2-a3**

This prepares the advance of the b-pawn to b4.

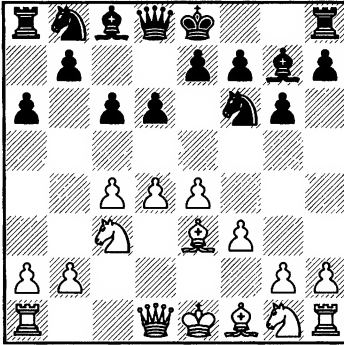
To make progress on the queenside White has to evict the black knight from c5. He does this with **12 a2-a3** followed by b3-b4 (Game A44).



(position after 11... h7-h5)

**a2-a4**

With this move White gains space on the queenside and attacks the b5 square.



(position after 6...a7-a6)

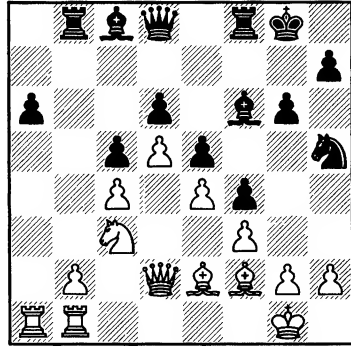
To prevent Black's queenside expansion by ...b7-b5 White plays 7 **a2-a4**, even though this concedes control of the b4 square after 7...a5 (Game A45).

**b2-b3**

This move protects the c4 pawn and allows the development of the bishop at b2 or a3.

**b2-b4**

This move attacks the c5 square and in some cases supports the advance of the pawn to c5.



(position after 18...g7-f6)

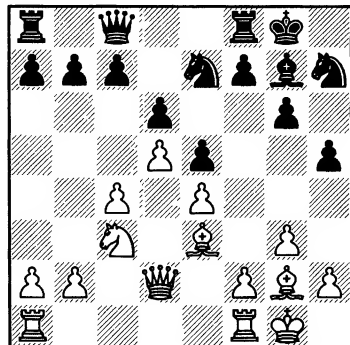
With the temporary pawn sacrifice 19 **b2-b4** White breaks open the queenside and invades there (Game A64).

**c2-c4**

This attacks the d5 square.

**c4-c5**

This advance attacks the d6 pawn.

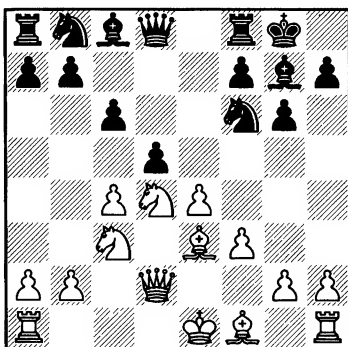


(position after 15...c6-e7)

White plays **16 c4-c5**, with the idea of opening the c-file for his rooks. In the endgame his bishops may become a powerful force (Game A31).

**c4xd5**

White captures a pawn on d5.



*(position after 9...d6-d5)*

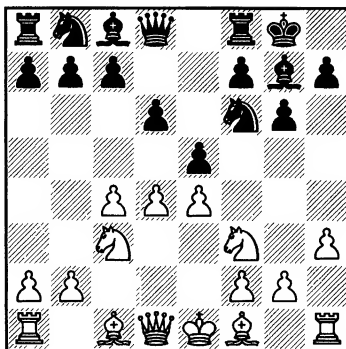
With his king not yet castled, White prefers to block the e-file with **10 c4xd5** cxd5 11 e5, rather than to open it by 10 exd5 (Game 22).

**d2-d4**

This pawn move occupies a central square and attacks the e5 and c5 squares.

**d4-d5**

This blocks the d6 pawn and gains White space on the queenside.

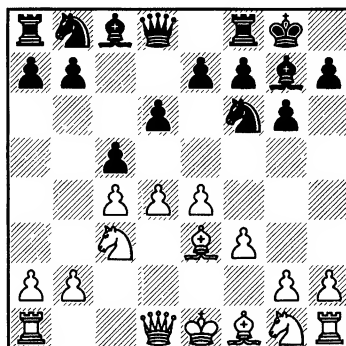


*(position after 6...e7-e5)*

As in similar positions, taking on e5 does not bring White any benefit. He plays **7 d4-d5**, gaining space and stabilising the pawn structure (Game 49).

**d4xc5**

White captures a pawn on c5.

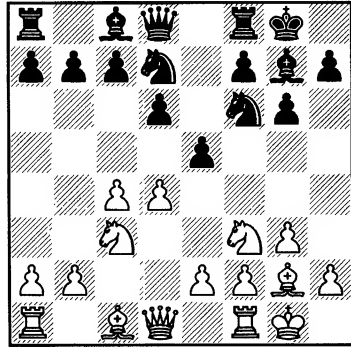


*(position after 6...c7-c5)*

White accepts the pawn offer with 7 **d4xc5** dxc5 8 ♖xd8 ♜xd8 9 ♘xc5. He must continue energetically, otherwise Black's initiative may become dangerous (Game A52).

**d4xe5**

White captures a pawn on e5, usually with the aim of opening the d-file.

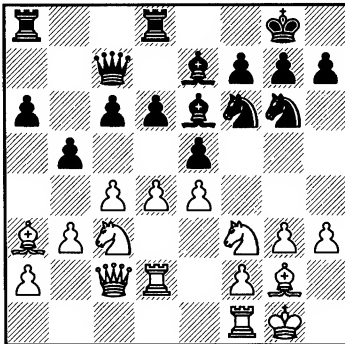


(position after 7...0-0)

White's standard plan is to occupy the centre with 8 **e2-e4**, even though it blocks the main diagonal of his king's bishop (Games A13 and A14).

**e2-e3**

With this move White supports his d4 pawn.

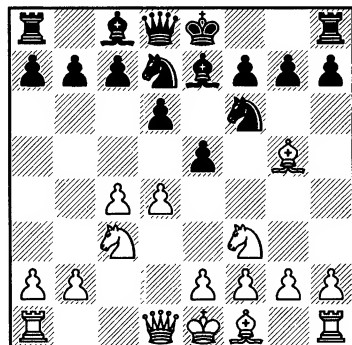


(position after 14...b7-b5)

The opponent's queenside activity is of little concern to White, as the black kingside pieces are passively placed. With 15 **d4xe5** followed by the exchange of the dark-square bishops he gains an advantage in the centre (Game A1).

**e2-e4**

The pawn occupies a central square and attacks the d5 and f5 squares.

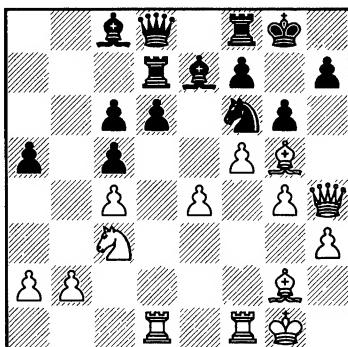


(position after 5...♗f8-e7)

A difficult variation for Black. White supports his d4 pawn by 6 **e2-e3**, and maintains control of e4 with his pieces (Game A50).

**e4-e5**

This attacks the d6 pawn and the f6 square, and vacates the e4 square for the white pieces.

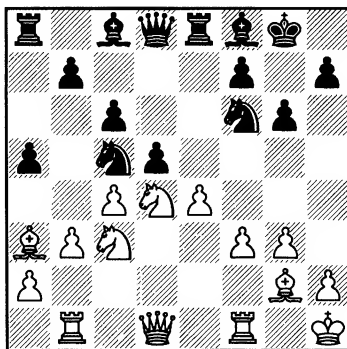


(position after 25... ♖c7-d8)

White has strong pressure on the d- and f-files. With 26 **e4-e5** he releases his knight and light-square bishop, which quickly forces a decision (Game 18).

**e4xd5**

With this move White normally captures a pawn on d5.

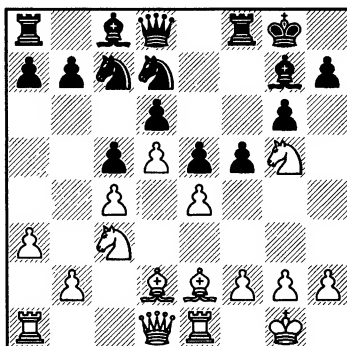


(position after 14... ♔g7-f8)

White has to find the best way of resolving the central tension. He plays 15 **e4xd5** cxd5 16 ♖cb5, when his minor pieces on the queenside are actively placed, and Black has still to complete his development (Game 21).

**e4xf5**

White captures a pawn on f5.

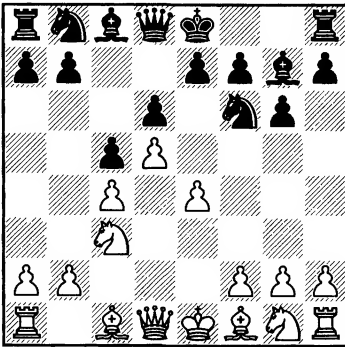


(position after 13... ♔e8-c7)

After covering the e6 square, Black is threatening to expand on the kingside with ...f5-f4. White plays 14 e4xf5, with the idea after 14...gxf5 15 f4 e4 of blocking the passed e-pawn (Game A27).

**f2-f3**

This defends the e4 pawn and the g4 square.

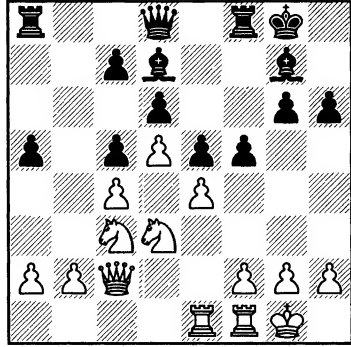


(position after 5...♕f8-g7)

White has a wide choice of plans. He opts for 6 f2-f3 0-0 7 ♖g5, securing his centre and deferring for the moment the decision of how to develop his kingside (Game A46).

**f2-f4**

With this move White attacks the e5 square.

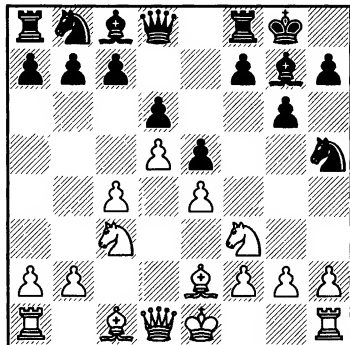


(position after 16...b6xc5)

Despite the opponent's two bishops, White is not afraid of opening the position by 17 f2-f4, as all his pieces are excellently placed (Game 24).

**g2-g3**

This defends the f4 square and allows the development of the bishop at g2.

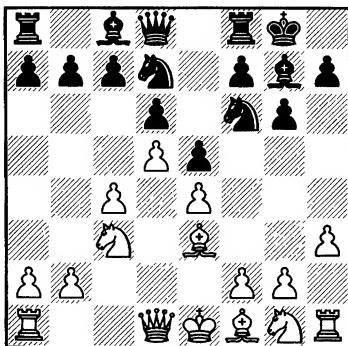


(position after 7...♖f6-h5)

White takes away the black knight's outpost at f4 by **8 g2-g3**, planning to leave his king in the centre and attack on the kingside by h2-h4 (Game 33).

**g2-g4**

With this move White attacks the f5 and h5 squares (g3-g4 has similar aims).

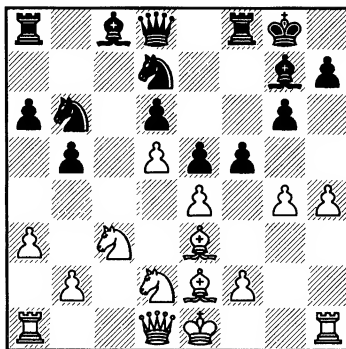


(position after 7...d8-d7)

In accordance with his plan, White continues **8 g2-g4**, preventing ...d5 and cramping Black on the kingside (Game A19).

**g4xf5**

White captures a pawn on f5, with the aim of opening the g-file.

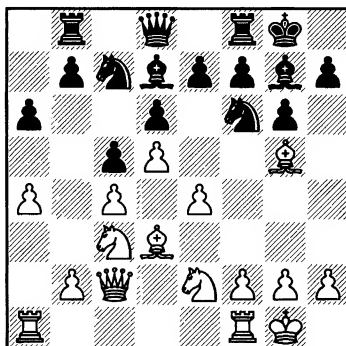


(position after 16...f7-f5)

White plays **17 g4xf5** gxf5 **18 exf5**, opening the g-file against the opposing king, although this also allows Black to activate his pieces (Game 46).

**h2-h3**

This move defends the g4 square.



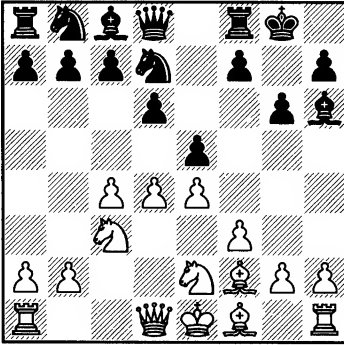
(position after 11...c8-d7)



White is planning to cramp Black still further with f2-f4. He precedes this with **12 h2-h3**, denying the black pieces access to g4 (Game A18).

**h2-h4**

The pawn attacks the g5 square and may move on further to h5.



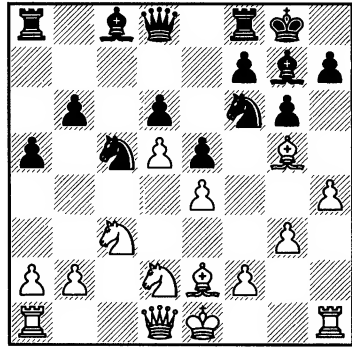
*(position after 8...0-0)*

Black's artificial opening play has left him in a difficult position. White

begins a direct storming of the kingside by **9 h2-h4** (Game A35).

**h4-h5**

With this move White attacks the g6 pawn.



*(position after 14...a7-a5)*

Supported by his rook, White plays **15 h4-h5**, planning to weaken the black king's defences by a later hxg6 (Game 33).

# 4 Test positions

To test your understanding of Black's standard King's Indian moves, we present here a number of test positions. The solutions are to be found on pages 202-205.

**Test 1** focuses on an important moment in the opening – the advance of the black e-pawn, and when it is, or is not, possible.

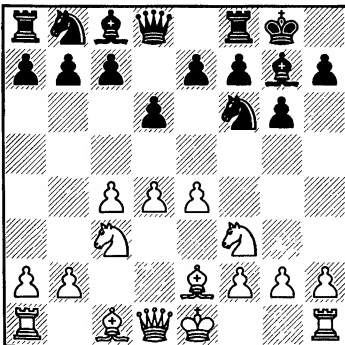
**Test 2** gives a number of more general positions, from the opening to the middlegame. We must emphasise that these are not 'Black to play and win' positions; in each case you are required to find one of the 60 standard black moves explained in the previous chapter.

## Test 1 Is ...e7-e5 possible? (1.1-1.8)

After Black has prepared a shelter for his king, his next important problem is to contest the centre. Usually (but not always) the best way of doing this will be by advancing his pawn to e5. Here are eight opening positions where it is Black to move, and he has to decide: is ...e7-e5 possible?

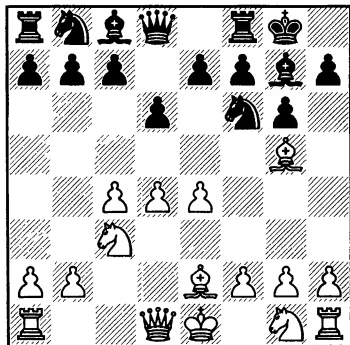
1.1

1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♖c3 ♙g7 4 e4 d6  
5 ♗f3 0-0 6 ♙e2



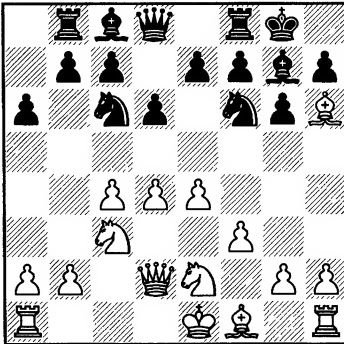
1.2

1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♖c3 ♙g7 4 e4 d6  
5 ♙e2 0-0 6 ♙g5



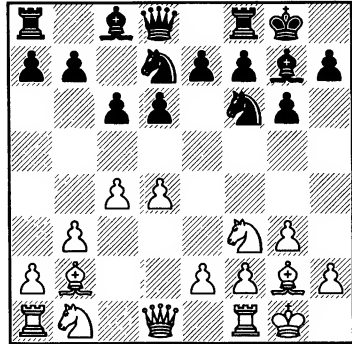
## 1.3

1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♖c3 ♙g7 4 e4 d6  
5 f3 0-0 6 ♙e3 ♘c6 7 ♘ge2 a6 8 ♚d2  
♜b8 9 ♙h6



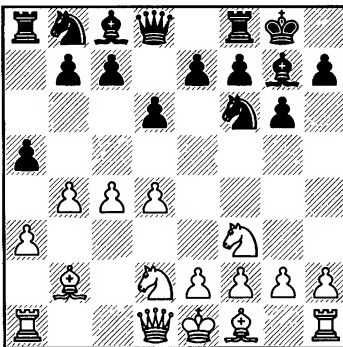
## 1.5

1 ♘f3 ♘f6 2 g3 g6 3 b3 ♙g7 4 ♙b2  
0-0 5 ♙g2 d6 6 d4 c6 7 c4 ♘bd7 8  
0-0



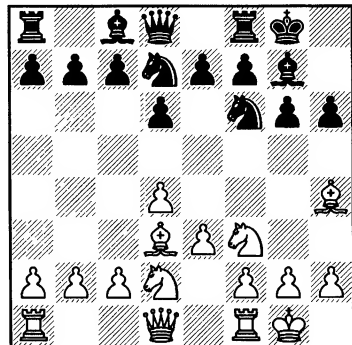
## 1.4

1 ♘f3 ♘f6 2 b4 d6 3 d4 g6 4 c4 ♙g7  
5 ♙b2 0-0 6 ♘bd2 a5 7 a3



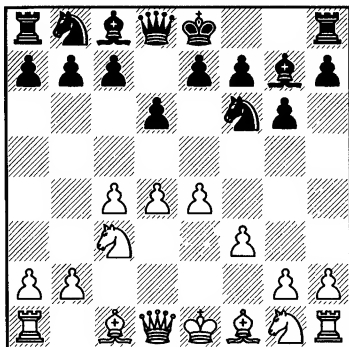
## 1.6

1 d4 ♘f6 2 ♘f3 g6 3 ♙g5 ♙g7 4  
♘bd2 d6 5 e3 0-0 6 ♙d3 ♘bd7 7 0-0  
h6 8 ♙h4



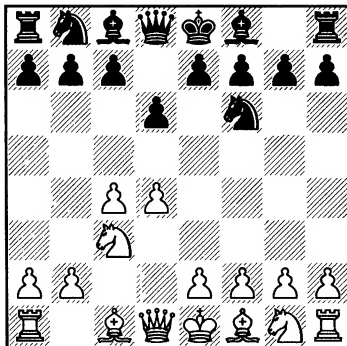
1.7

1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♘c3 ♙g7 4 e4 d6  
5 f3



1.8

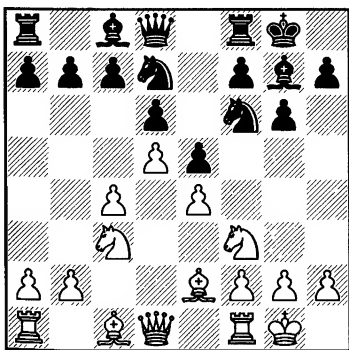
1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 d6 3 ♘c3



**Test 2**

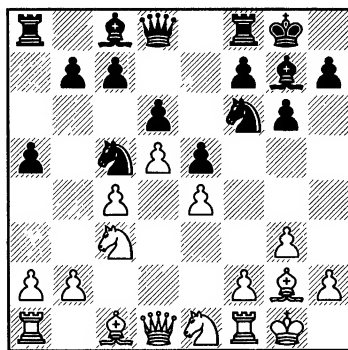
**Find the typical manoeuvre (2.1-2.18)**

2.1



(position after 8 d4-d5)

2.2

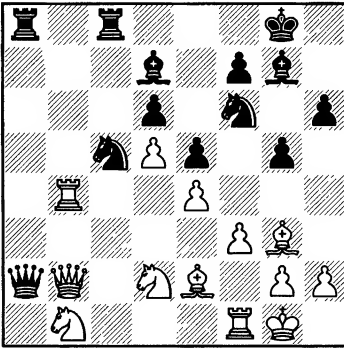


(position after 10 ♘f3-e1)

How should Black react to the blocking of the centre?

How does Black activate his game?

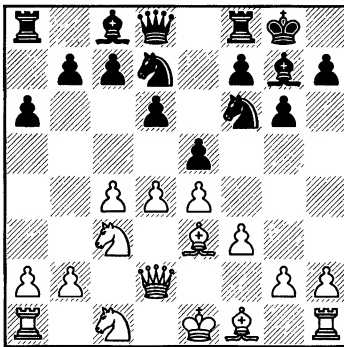
## 2.3



(position after 25 f2-f3)

Black clearly has the initiative on the queenside. How does he make further progress?

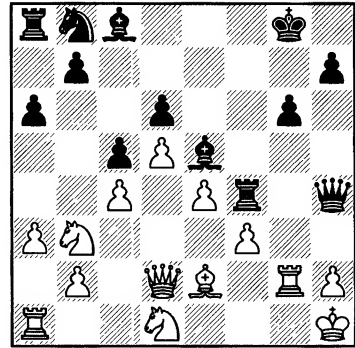
## 2.4



(position after 9 ♖e2-c1)

White is planning to play his knight to b3 and then complete the development of his kingside. But doesn't this all look rather slow?

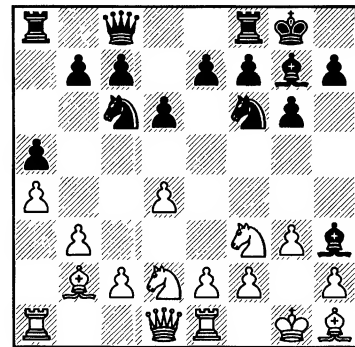
## 2.5



(position after 28 ♘c3-d1)

Black's blockade is so strong that up till now he has not required the use of his queenside pieces...

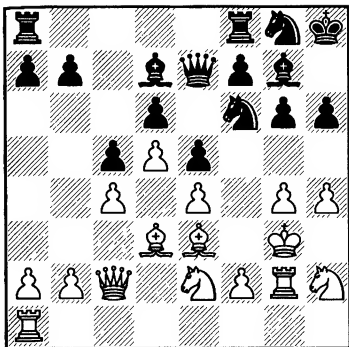
## 2.6



(position after 11 ♙g2-h1)

White has just declined the exchange of bishops. How does Black maintain his forces in their attacking positions?

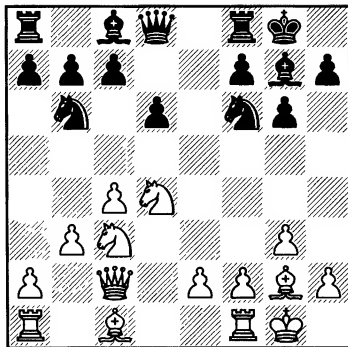
2.7



(position after 22 ♖f3-h2)

Black's pieces are compactly arranged, rather like a compressed spring. Does the exotic position of the white king suggest a way to uncoil it?

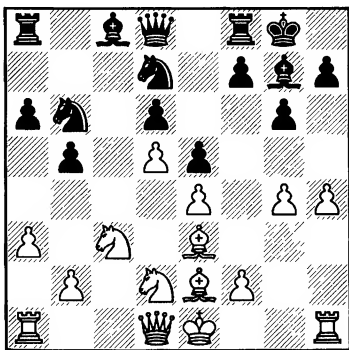
2.9



(position after 10 b2-b3)

White's last move has left him vulnerable on the long diagonal. How best does Black take advantage of this?

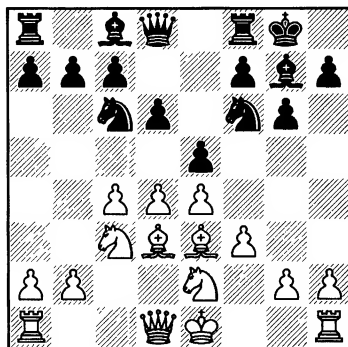
2.8



(position after 16 h3-h4)

White has begun a kingside pawn storm. How should Black react?

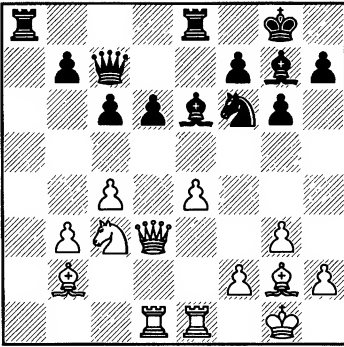
2.10



(position after 8 ♖g1-e2)

White has mobilised all his minor pieces. Is there any drawback to such an ideal development?

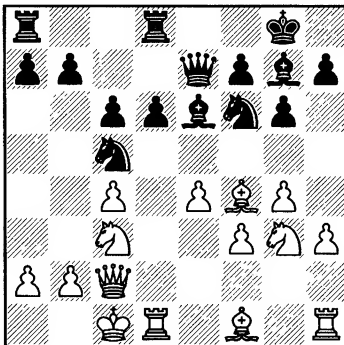
## 2.11



(position after 19 ♖c2xd3)

Black's d-pawn is under fire. Should he passively defend it, or is there some other, more active option?

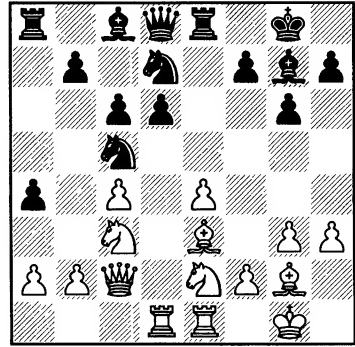
## 2.12



(position after 15 ♘e2-g3)

Black's forces are fully mobilised. How does he give them more scope?

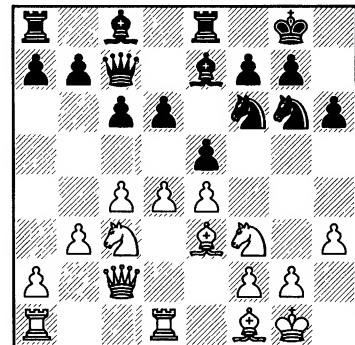
## 2.13



(position after 15 ♘d4-e2)

With his last move White made a discovered attack on the backward d6 pawn. Does Black have to defend it?

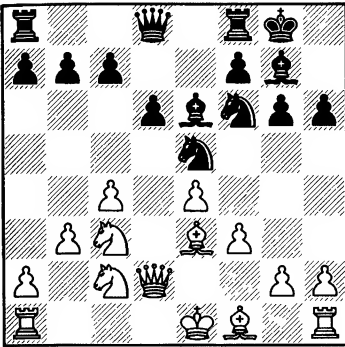
## 2.14



(position after 13 ♙e2-f1)

Black's position is cramped. Is there any way for him to relieve the pressure?

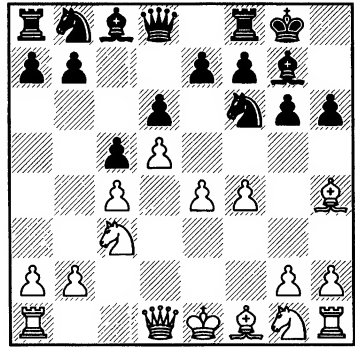
2.15



(position after 12 b2-b3)

Black's h-pawn is attacked. Should he defend it, or is there something more positive he can undertake?

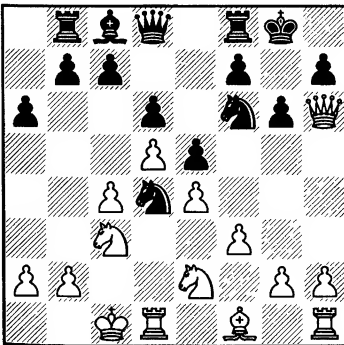
2.17



(position after 8 d4-d5)

White has set up an imposing pawn centre, but at the expense of his development. How can Black best take advantage of this?

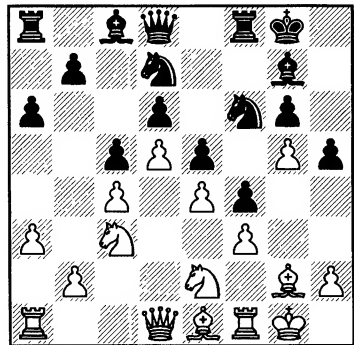
2.16



(position after 12 0-0-0)

Has White won the battle for the d4 square?

2.18



(position after 15 g4-g5)

Black's knight is attacked. How should he respond to this threat?



## 5 The King's Indian in action

Presented here are fifty King's Indian games played by David Bronstein, played over a time-span of more than half a century. Many of these games, as well as those in the following chapter of 64 additional games, are fairly old. However, this is by no means a bad thing: such games demonstrate the basic ideas more clearly, whereas present-day grandmasters are well familiar with the plans available, and so their games turn out to be much more complex. Therefore for beginners it is better to study old games, even if to modern experts they may seem somewhat primitive.

To facilitate the assimilation of the material, we have divided up the games into seven sections, depending on the central pawn formation and on the relative placing of the kings:

- Restrained set-up by White (p.65)
- White exchanges d4xe5 (p.82)
- Black captures ...e5xd4 (p.91)
- White closes the centre with d4-d5 (p.112)
- The central tension is maintained (p.147)
- Benoni set-ups (p.152)
- White castles queenside (p.164)

A familiarity with the standard King's Indian moves, and the ideas behind them, which were explained in Chapter 3, will make it easier for the reader to follow these games. Basically every game (at least in the opening stage) is made up of the standard moves, performed in various orders. The difficulty in playing the King's Indian, or indeed any other opening, is the fact that you have an opponent with his own ideas, which you are trying to counter.

## Restrained set-up by White

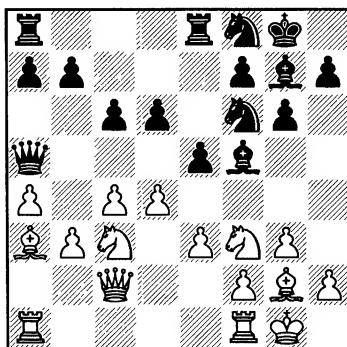
In this section we will examine several games where White adopts a restrained set-up, i.e. without an early occupation of the centre with e2-e4. Black's successes in this type of position led to the adoption of a similar King's Indian set-up by White, and an example of the so-called King's Indian Attack is provided by the last game in this chapter.

### Game 1

White: **Sergey Belavenets**

Black: **David Bronstein**

*USSR Championship Semi-Final  
Rostov-on-Don 1941*



This game with Sergey Belavenets – one of the most talented Soviet players and a wonderful man – I give with a heavy heart. At the very time when the participants in the Rostov Semi-Final of the USSR Championship were sitting at the chess board and considering their moves, on the Western borders of our State the German soldiers were awaiting the order to invade. And it followed very soon... That war cost many more lives than are recorded in the history books. My partner never again returned to the chess board. He perished in battle in the first year of the War.

1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 d6 3 ♘c3 e5 4 ♘f3  
 ♘bd7 5 g3 g6 6 ♙g2 ♙g7 7 0-0 0-0 8  
 b3 ♗e8 9 e3 c6 10 ♖c2 ♖a5 11 a4  
 ♘f8 12 ♙a3 ♙f5

White has employed a quiet system of development, which does not claim to 'refute' the King's Indian.

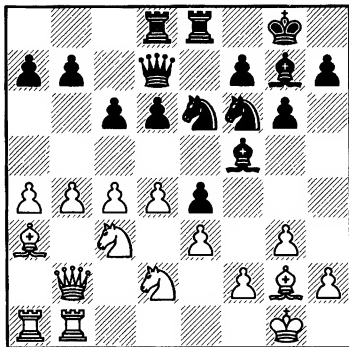
### 13 ♖b2

A poor move, after which White's kingside is torn to pieces. He should have played 13 ♖d2, after which the advance ...e5-e4 would have been hindered (13...e4? 14 ♘xe4), and he could then have continued d4-d5 with a roughly equal game.

### 13...♗ad8 14 ♗fd1 e4

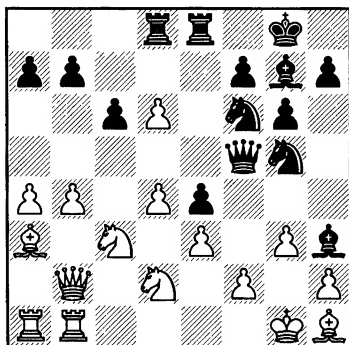
With this move Black splits the board in two, and he takes on the obligation to mate the opposing king. White in turn concentrates all his forces on the queenside. The question is: who will get there first?

15 ♘d2 ♘e6 16 b4 ♖c7 17 ♗db1  
 ♖d7



Black dutifully repeats a lesson that he had learned. I had many times seen such a set-up in games from tournaments in Kiev. In my opinion, that evening White was thinking about something more important than a game of chess.

**18 c5 ♖g5 19 cxd6 ♕h3 20 ♕h1 ♜f5**



**21 ♖e2**

This move evidently involved an oversight, but even after 21 b5 Black's attack would clearly have got there first, e.g. 21...♕g4! (after

21...♖g4 22 ♖d1 White holds on) 22 ♕g2 ♕f3 23 ♖xf3 exf3 24 ♕f1 ♖h3+ 25 ♖h1 ♜h5! 26 ♜c1 ♖g4 27 ♜c2 ♖f4 28 h4 ♕f6! followed by ...♕xh4 and wins.

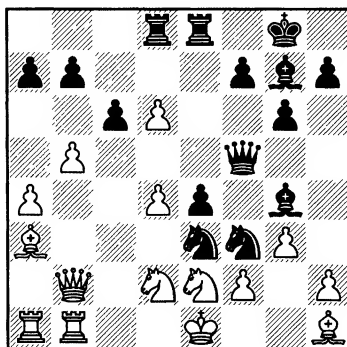
**21...♖d5 22 b5 ♕g4**

With this strong move Black creates a double threat: an attack on the knight and a knight check at h3.

**23 ♖f1**

Since the planned defence 23 ♖f4 would have been refuted by 23...♖xf4 24 exf4 (24 gxf4 ♕h3) 24...e3 25 fxe3 ♖h3+ 26 ♕g2 ♜xe3 27 ♜e1 ♜d5+, my partner made an altogether unfortunate move with his king, which was equivalent to resigning the game.

**23...♖xe3+ 24 ♖e1 ♖f3+**



The description of this game stirred in my memory some personal recollections of those distant years. In the Ukrainian Championship of 1940 I finished second, achieved the master norm, and should have become the youngest (at that time) chess master in the USSR. But the procedure of awarding titles was not then a formality.

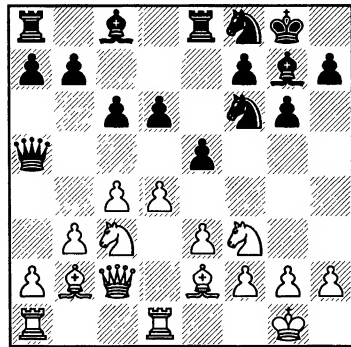
The Supreme Qualification Commission headed by Belavenets (his deputy was Vasily Smyslov) made a serious study of my games and came to a positive decision. And here, as Sergey Belavenets sat with his head in his hands, surveying his wrecked position, he suddenly exclaimed: 'Yes, we were right to award you the master title!', and he stopped the clocks.

master Henry Bird. What is interesting is that I thought I was playing alone that evening. Recently, browsing through the tournament bulletin, I was pleasantly surprised to discover that Grigory Ravinsky, playing alongside, had also employed Bird's Defence. An amazing coincidence in the choice of opening!

Game 2  
 White: **Alexander Tolush**  
 Black: **David Bronstein**  
*13th USSR Championship  
 Moscow 1944*

1 d4 ♖f6 2 c4 d6 3 ♘c3 e5 4 e3  
 ♜bd7 5 ♖f3 g6 6 ♙e2 ♙g7 7 b3 0-0  
 8 ♙b2 ♞e8 9 ♚c2 c6 10 0-0 ♚a5 11  
 ♞fd1 ♜f8

Beginning in 1944 and right up to 1975 I played in many of the USSR Championships. This first-round game with Alexander Tolush marked my debut in these important events. This tournament was held in the October Hall of the House of Soviets. Every evening the auditorium was full, and among the spectators were many in uniform with indications that they were injured. They had come from the hospital with the desire for one evening of being involved in the forgotten world of peace. I sensed their mood and every evening I did my utmost to create sharp combinative games, so that it would be interesting for the spectators.



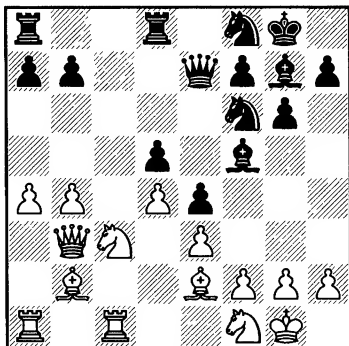
On 7th June, when it was announced on the radio that the second front had been opened, I did my utmost, in my game against Smyslov, by employing the defence of the English

**12 a3**

White is preparing a pawn offensive on the queenside. To counter this, Black begins an attack on the kingside. White could have cleared the situation in the centre by exchanging pawns 12 dxe5 dxe5 and then playing 13 ♘g5 with the intention of ♘g5-e4-d6. But then Black has the tactical trick 13...e4, and the pawn cannot be taken by either knight in view of the loss of a piece. It is interesting to see

whose attack will prove more effective. What is important is speedy and decisive action.

12...e4 13 ♖d2 ♙f5 14 b4 ♚c7 15 ♜f1 d5 16 cxd5 cxd5 17 ♚b3 ♞ed8 18 ♞dc1 ♚e7 19 a4



### 19...h5

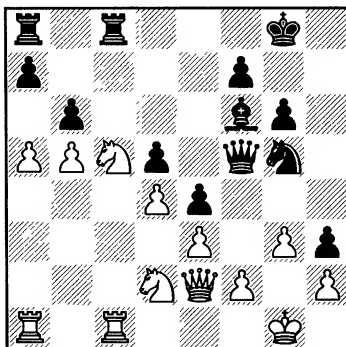
In three successive moves the black h-pawn advances to h3, creating weaknesses in the light squares in the vicinity of the white king. The advance of the h-pawn is also useful in providing a convenient escape square for the black king, and at the same time in such positions the h7 square can serve as a transit point for the knight at f8.

20 a5 h4 21 ♙a3 h3 22 g3 ♘8h7 23 ♘d2 ♘g5 24 b5 ♚e6 25 ♘a4 ♙g4 26 ♚d1 ♚f5

The black queen is aiming to penetrate to the g2 square. White, in turn, is hoping to win the battle on the queenside. Perhaps he should not have allowed the black h-pawn to advance so far, but after h2-h3 there was

always the threat of ...♙xh3 or ...♘h3, to say nothing of the pawn attack ...g6-g5-g4.

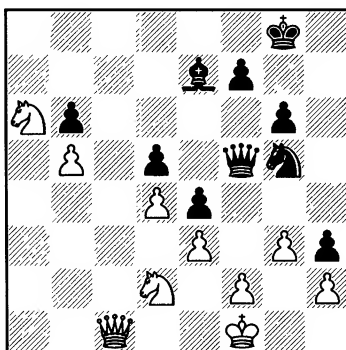
27 ♙e7 ♙xe2 28 ♚xe2 ♞dc8 29 ♙xf6 ♙xf6 30 ♘c5 b6



### 31 axb6

Black was not afraid of 31 g4 in view of the variation 31...♘f3+ 32 ♚xf3 ♚xf3 33 ♘xf3 bxc5 34 ♘e5 ♙xe5 35 dxex5 c4.

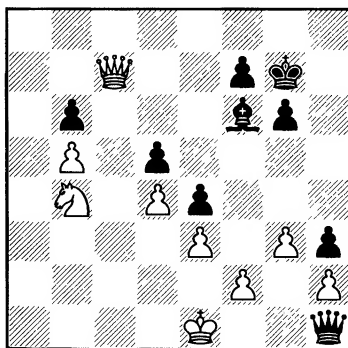
31...axb6 32 ♞xa8 ♞xa8 33 ♘a6 ♙e7 34 ♙f1 ♞c8 35 ♚d1 ♞xc1 36 ♚xc1



36...♔g7

Both players were in severe time trouble, and Black was unable to calculate the consequences of 36...♘f3 37 ♖xf3 ♜xf3 38 ♜c8+ ♔g7 39 ♜xh3. He saw 39...♞d1+ and White's reply 40 ♔g2. At the same time Black had the possibility of giving check from the other side – 39...♞h1+, after which there is a forcing variation: 40 ♖e2 ♞b1 41 ♞d7 ♞d3+ 42 ♖e1 ♙a3 and there is no defence against the manoeuvre ...♙a3-b2-c3. Including the white queen in the defence does not help: 43 ♜g4 ♙b2 44 ♞e2 ♞b1+ 45 ♞d1 ♙c3+ 46 ♖e2 ♞xb5+ and mate next move.

37 ♜c7 ♙f6 38 ♘b4 ♘f3 39 ♖xf3 ♜xf3 40 ♖e1 ♞h1+



Here the game was adjourned. White sealed 41 ♖e2 but resigned without resuming.

After 41...♞xh2 42 ♘xd5 ♞g2 43 ♞f4 ♙d8 44 ♞e5+ ♙f6 the h3 pawn promotes unhindered. There is also a quieter variation: 41...♞b1 42 ♞c3 ♙e7 43 ♘c2 ♞xb5+, winning a pawn.

Game 3

White: **Grigory Ravinsky**

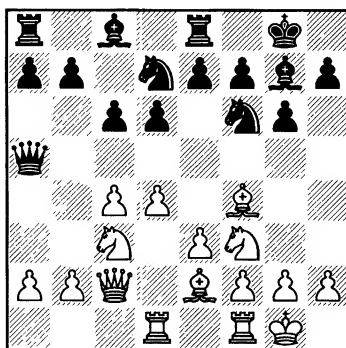
Black: **David Bronstein**

*Moscow Championship 1946*

Some incidental facts may be of interest: In May 1941 Ravinsky and I simultaneously received the master title. We also have the same patronymic (Ionovich). The game Ravinsky-Panov (Moscow 1943) appears in Reuben Fine's book *The Middle Game in Chess*.

The present game is a good demonstration of piece coordination.

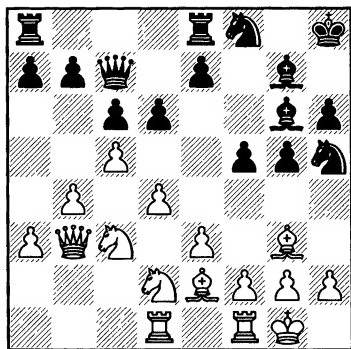
1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 d6 3 ♘f3 g6 4 ♘c3 ♙g7 5 ♙f4 ♘bd7 6 e3 0-0 7 ♞c2 c6 8 ♙e2 ♞e8 9 ♞d1 ♞a5 10 0-0



10...♘h5 11 ♙g5 ♘f8 12 a3 h6 13 b4 ♞c7 14 ♙h4 ♙f5

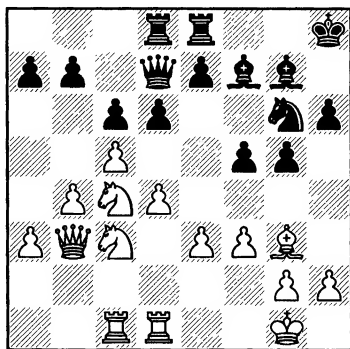
Provoking e3-e4, when Black would have the f4 square for his knight.

15 ♞b3 g5 16 ♘d2 ♙g6 17 ♙g3 f5 18 c5+ ♔h8



Black succeeds in exchanging one of the white bishops for his knight, and this subsequently helps him to carry out a fine attack. White decides to exchange his e2 bishop and leave his g3 bishop in place, to counter the bishop at g7.

19 ♖xh5 ♗xh5 20 ♖c1 ♔d7 21 ♜c4 ♜f7 22 ♞fd1 ♝g6 23 f3 ♞ad8



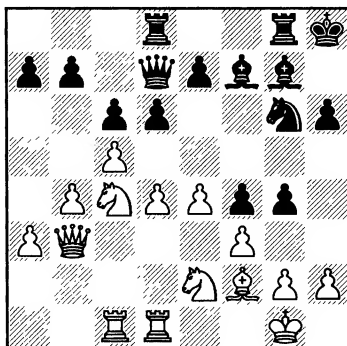
Black has concentrated his rooks in the centre (as has White), and his bishops are very well placed.

## 24 e4

White is attacking the pawn on d6. He now begins an offensive in the centre, and Black replies on the kingside.

What is typical for this type of position? The moves ...f5-f4 and ...g5-g4 are typical (it is unusual, however, that the black pawn remains at e7). Later, exploiting the fact that his king has moved into the corner, Black transfers his rook to a more active position – g8, from where, as though by X-ray, it begins probing the g2 square.

24...f4 25 ♜f2 g4 26 ♞e2 ♞g8

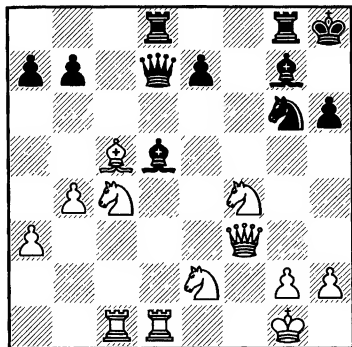


Black has advanced the pawns in front of his king, but his minor pieces have moved into their place.

27 d5 cxd5 28 exd5 dxc5 29 ♜xc5 gxf3 30 ♔xf3 ♜xd5 31 ♞xf4

White was not obliged to take on f4 (instead he could have played his queen to h5), but he quickly carried out a combinative series of moves, leading to what he thought was a

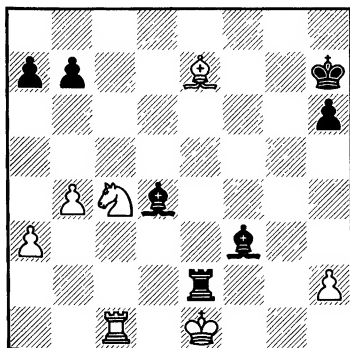
favourable position. He may have thought that 31 ♖xf4 would be a surprise.



31... ♖xf3 32 ♖xg6+ ♔h7 33 ♖xd7 ♗xd7 34 ♖xe7

It appears that White cut short his calculations at this point, but Black had seen a little further.

34... ♗xe7 35 ♖xe7 ♖d4+ 36 ♔f1 ♗xg2 (at last!) 37 ♔e1 ♗e2+



White resigns

Game 4

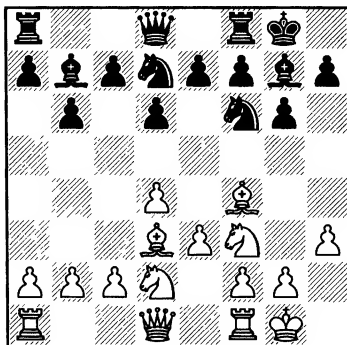
White: **Andrey Batuyev**

Black: **David Bronstein**

*USSR Championship Semi-Final  
Leningrad 1947*

My partner in this game was a man of varied interests. Apart from being a chess master and trainer, he was a singer, and also wrote several popular books about animals.

1 d4 ♖f6 2 ♖f3 g6 3 ♖f4 ♖g7 4 e3 0-0 5 h3 b6 6 ♖bd2 ♖b7 7 ♖d3 d6 8 0-0 ♖bd7



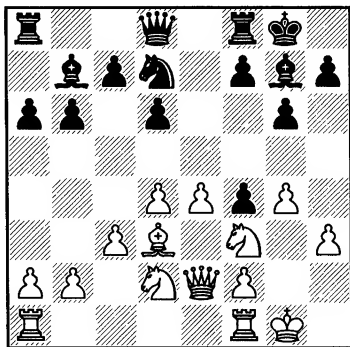
Neither side is in a hurry. Note the typical situation: White has occupied four ranks, Black has occupied three, and there is a separation zone, free of pieces and pawns. Who will be the first to begin an attack?

9 ♗e2 a6 10 e4 ♖h5 11 ♖h2 e5 12 c3 ♖f4 13 ♖xf4 exf4 14 g4

White has deliberately provoked the manoeuvre ... ♖f6-h5-f4 and with 14 g4 he decides to block the position.



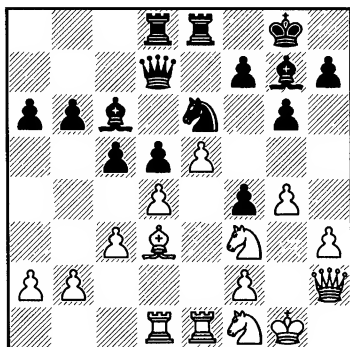
He then creates a strong pawn chain (à la Philidor!), but unexpectedly in this closed position there began some amazing combinations, which demonstrate the beauty of chess.



14...♖e8 15 ♖fe1 ♘f8 16 ♖ad1  
♗d7 17 ♗f1 ♙e6 18 ♗g2 ♖ad8

It will be noted that Black centralises his rooks *before* the storm breaks.

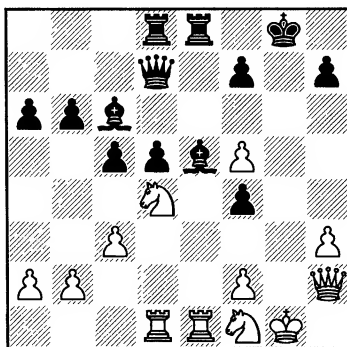
19 ♗h2 d5 20 e5 c5 21 ♙f1 ♙c6



22 ♙f5

Perhaps this move was not the best, but as the great Paul Morphy once replied, when asked about a not altogether correct combination that he had carried out: 'Gentlemen, but I had to do something!'

22...gxf5 23 gxf5 ♘xd4 24 ♘xd4  
♙xe5



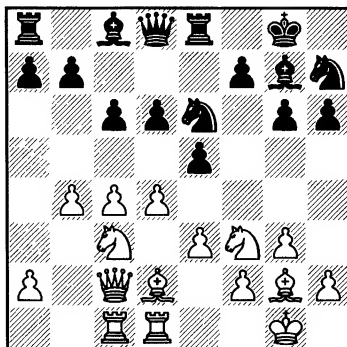
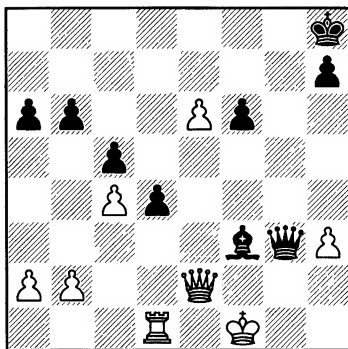
25 ♖xe5

Here White failed to exploit a good opportunity – 25 ♘xc6 ♗xc6 26 ♗g2+ ♖h8 27 ♖h1 followed by ♗f3 and ♘h2 with an unclear game. In the heat of the battle he captured on e5, and was lured into a pretty combination with an exchange of blows. What told in the end was his weakness on the long light-square diagonal.

25...♖xe5 26 ♗xf4 f6 27 ♙e6  
♖xe6 28 ♗g4+ ♖h8 29 fxe6 ♗d6 30  
♙g3 ♖g8 31 ♗e2 d4 32 c4 ♖xg3+ 33  
fxg3 ♗xg3+ 34 ♙f1 ♙f3

White resigns

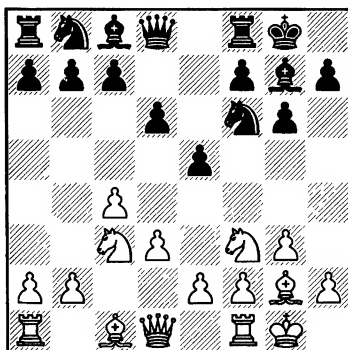
7...c6 8 ♖d2 ♜e8 9 ♜c1 h6 10 ♚c2  
 ♜a6 11 ♜fd1 ♜c5 12 b4 ♜e6 13 e3  
 ♜h7 14 d4



Game 5  
 White: **Vitaly Chekhover**  
 Black: **David Bronstein**  
*USSR Championship Semi-Final  
 Leningrad 1947*

Although this game begins life as an English Opening, the position reached after White's 14th move is unmistakably a King's Indian.

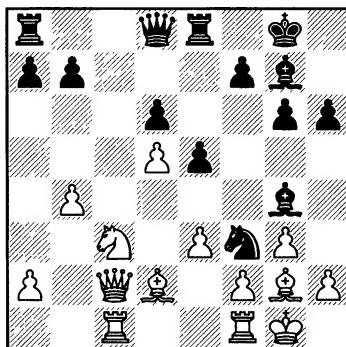
1 c4 ♜f6 2 ♜c3 e5 3 ♜f3 d6 4 g3 g6  
 5 ♖g2 ♖g7 6 0-0 0-0 7 d3



14...♜g5

Exploiting White's rather passive play, Black has carried out the plan of manoeuvring his queen's knight to g5 (♜b8-a6-c5-e6-g5).

15 ♜xg5 ♜xg5 16 d5 cxd5 17 cxd5 ♖g4 18 ♜f1 ♜f3+



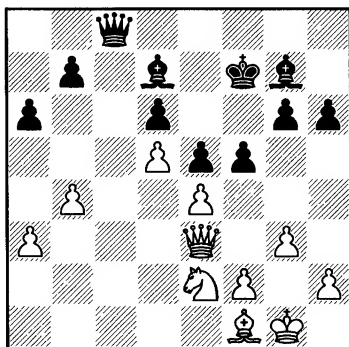
A rare instance of Black being able to exploit the weakness of the f3 square. As a result, I was able to exchange the opponent's dark-square

bishop (Chekhover did not want to give up his light-square bishop).

19 ♖h1 ♗xd2 20 ♕xd2 ♖b6 21 a3 ♗d7 22 ♖c2 ♖ac8 23 ♖fc1 ♖c7 24 ♖g1 ♖ec8 25 ♗f1 f5 26 ♗e2 a6 27 ♖xc7 ♖xc7 28 ♖xc7 ♖xc7

The result is an ending in which Black has two bishops, and White a bishop and knight.

29 e4 ♖f7 30 ♖e3 ♖c8

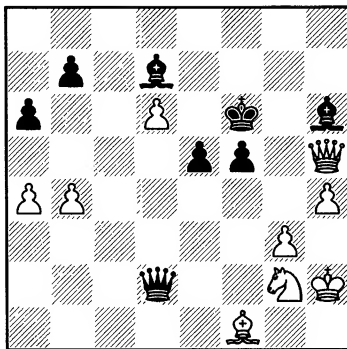


Looking at this position, you gain the impression that White is alright. But this is deceptive. Black is pressing on the light squares, he has the open c-file, and most important, his dark-square bishop, which has no opponent, is capable of developing great energy.

31 h4 h5 32 exf5 gxf5 33 ♖f3 ♖g6 34 ♖h2 ♗h6 35 ♖d3 ♗b5 36 ♖d1 ♖f6 37 a4 ♗e8 38 f4 ♖c4 39 fxg5+ dxe5 40 d6 ♗d7 41 ♗f4

The sealed move, after which Black carries out a very strong manoeuvre – check with the queen at a2 followed by 42...♖d2.

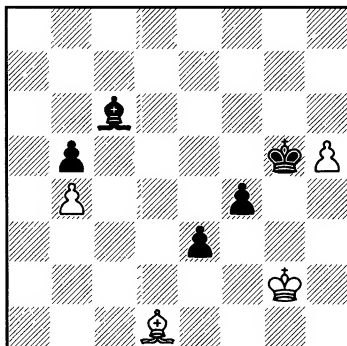
41...♖a2+ 42 ♗g2 ♖d2 43 ♖xh5



43...b5

Another precise move, fixing the weakness of the white pawn at b4 and the a8-h1 diagonal. White is forced to allow the black king forward, and he proves to be completely helpless.

44 axb5 axb5 45 ♗d3 e4 46 ♗c2 ♖e5 47 ♗b3 ♖xd6 48 ♗f4 ♖d2+ 49 ♖h3 ♖c1 50 ♗d1 ♗xf4 51 gxf4+ ♖d6 52 ♖e2 ♖xf4 53 ♖h2 ♖xh2+ 54 ♖xh2 ♖e5 55 h5 ♖f6 56 ♖g3 ♖g5 57 ♖f2 f4 58 ♖g2 ♗e8 59 ♗c2 ♗c6 60 ♗d1 e3+



White resigns

Game 6

White: **Atanas Kolarov**

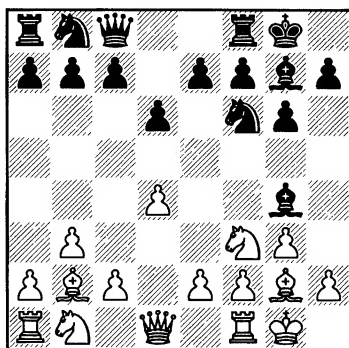
Black: **David Bronstein**

*Olympiad, Moscow 1956*

Black's win in this game helped him to achieve the overall best score at the Moscow Olympiad – 11 points from 13 games.

1 d4 ♘f6 2 ♘f3 g6 3 g3 ♙g7 4 ♙g2 0-0 5 0-0 d6 6 b3 ♙g4 7 ♙b2 ♚c8

White has employed the double fianchetto against Black's King's Indian. In reply Black has not hurried to play ...e7-e5, but has employed the unusual plan of gaining control of the c8-h3 diagonal to exploit the weakness of the h3 square.



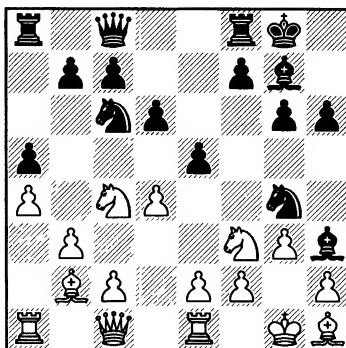
8 ♖e1 a5 9 a4 ♘c6 10 ♘bd2 ♙h3 11 ♙h1 h6

An essential move, not allowing the opponent's knight to attack the bishop from g5.

12 ♚c1 ♘g4 13 ♘c4 e5

This thematic move is no weaker

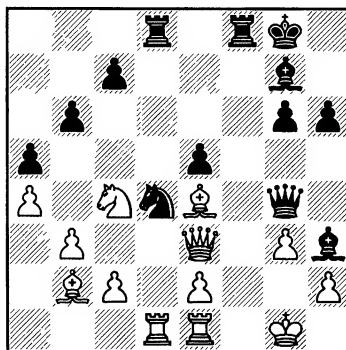
for having been delayed until the early middlegame.



14 dxe5 dxe5 15 ♘fd2 ♚e6 16 ♘e4 b6 17 f3 f5 18 fxg4 fxe4 19 ♙xe4 ♖ad8 20 ♚e3

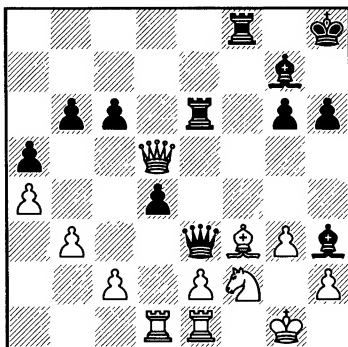
White has won a pawn and at first sight he appears to have a good position. However, with his control of the centre and the d- and f-files, Black quickly seizes the initiative and soon all his pieces are impending over the white king.

20...♘d4 21 ♖ad1 ♚xg4



The strong position of the black knight forces White to give up his dark-square bishop for it, but after this the e-file is opened, the bishop at g7 begins operating at full strength, and Black's attack aimed at f2 and f1 becomes even more dangerous.

22 ♖xd4 exd4 23 ♖d3 ♜de8 24 ♜d2 ♜h8 25 ♖f3 ♜e6 26 ♜e4 ♜f6 27 ♜c6 ♜g5 28 ♜e4 ♜e3+ 29 ♜f2 ♜e6 30 ♜d5 c6



Now if 31 ♜c4 Black has a forced win by 31... ♜xf3 32 exf3 ♜xe1+ 33 ♜xe1 ♜xe1+ 34 ♜f1 ♜xf1 mate.

Therefore **White resigned**.

#### Game 7

White: **Igor Bondarevsky**

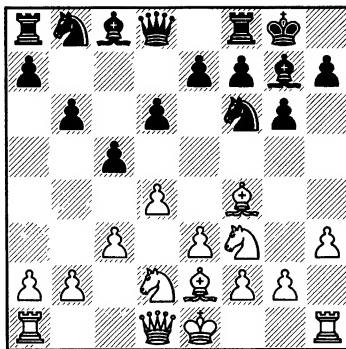
Black: **David Bronstein**

31st USSR Championship

Leningrad 1963

This game was awarded the prize for the best game of the Championship.

1 d4 ♜f6 2 ♜f3 g6 3 ♖f4 ♖g7 4 e3 0-0 5 ♜bd2 b6 6 c3 c5 7 h3 d6 8 ♖e2

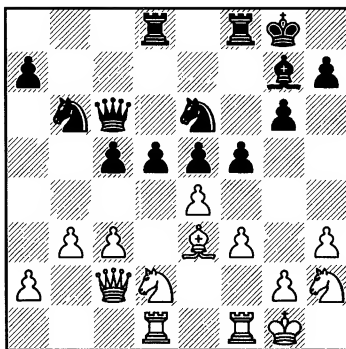
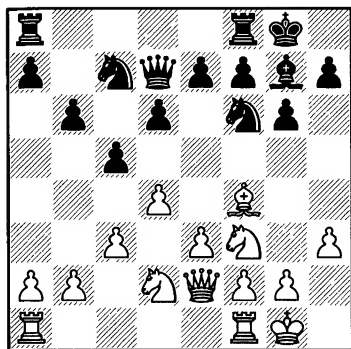


#### 8... ♖a6

White has played the quiet London Variation, a favourite of Capablanca. Here the impression is that Black has a good light-square bishop, which can move between his pawns. However, its white opposite number is also capable of carrying out similar functions, and so Black decides to exchange the bishops – this was the correct decision. It turns out that White's dark-square bishop does not stand as well as its opponent – it runs up against the d6 pawn, which is well defended. This factor ensures me a pleasant game.

9 ♖xa6 ♜xa6 10 0-0 ♖d7 11 ♜e2 ♜c7

Black is now preparing to exchange pawns on d4, and after the recapture e3xd4 to play a knight to d5 followed by ...b6-b5, obtaining a very good game. And in the event of c3xd4 the c-file would have been opened to his advantage. Therefore Bondarevsky employs a new plan: he exchanges pawns on c5 and begins an offensive in the centre.



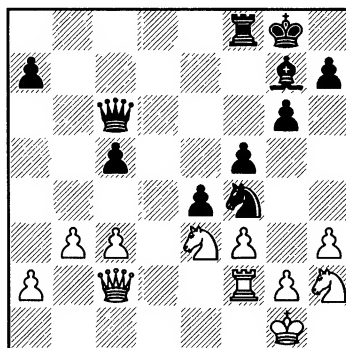
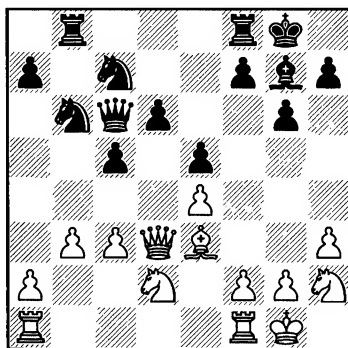
12 dxc5 bxc5 13 e4 e5 14 ♔e3  
♞ab8 15 b3 ♜c6

The queen vacates d7 for the knight, so that I can carry out my standard manoeuvre of ...♞f6-d7, and then on to b6.

16 ♜c4 ♞d7 17 ♞h2 ♞b6 18 ♜d3

Four black pawns have reached the equator. White decides to exchange on d5, but then both black knights gain the chance to penetrate to f4.

22 exd5 ♞xd5 23 ♞c4 ♞ef4 24 ♜f2 ♞xe3 25 ♞xe3 ♞xd1+ 26 ♜xd1 e4 27 ♜c2



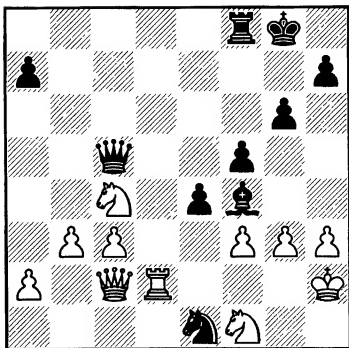
The critical position of the game. The knight at h2 is out of play, and Black advances ...d6-d5, after which one of his knights ends up on f4.

18...d5 19 f3 ♞bd8 20 ♜c2 f5 21 ♞ad1 ♞e6

27...♔h6

Black's most effective move in the game, after which White's position collapses in just a few moves.

28 ♞hf1 ♞d3 29 ♞d2 c4 30 ♞xc4 ♜c5+ 31 ♔h2 ♔f4+ 32 g3 ♞e1



White resigns

### Game 8

White: **Oleg Moiseyev**

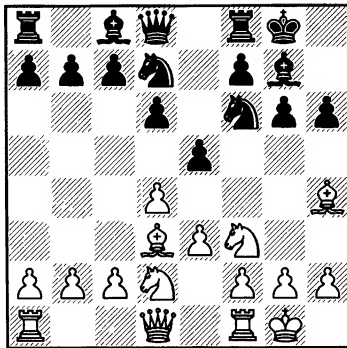
Black: **David Bronstein**

*Moscow Championship 1968*

In his report on this Championship (in which the winner of this game shared first place with the then World Champion Tigran Petrosian), Salo Flohr made the following comment: 'Bronstein is happy when he is able to make an original move, one that was not easy to find.'

**1 d4 ♘f6 2 ♘f3 g6 3 ♙g5 ♙g7 4 ♘bd2 d6 5 e3 0-0 6 ♙d3 ♘bd7 7 0-0 h6 8 ♙h4 e5**

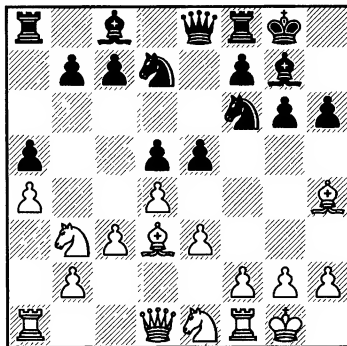
The game has followed the usual King's Indian scenario – Black has constructed a house for his king, then played ...d7-d6, and now begun attacking the centre by ...e7-e5.



**9 c3 ♙e8 10 ♘e1 d5**

White's unpretentious development invites Black to play ...e5-e4. However, he prefers instead to switch to a position more in the spirit of the Queen's Gambit.

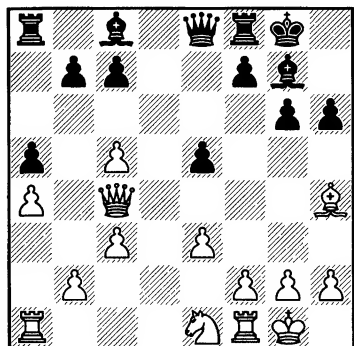
**11 ♘b3 a5 12 a4**



**12... ♘b6**

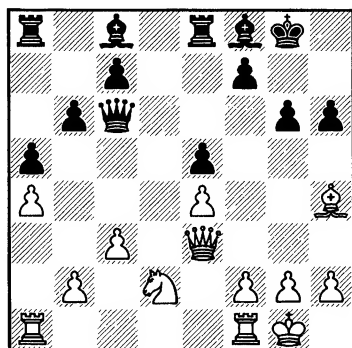
With this crafty move Black makes out that he wants to take a pawn, but in fact he is aiming to undermine the white centre.

13 ♖c5 ♗f7 14 ♖b3 ♗xc5 15  
 dxc5 ♗c4 16 ♕xc4 dxc4 17 ♖xc4



White's attempt to counter the opponent's plan has been met by a pawn sacrifice, for which Black has gained the two bishops. The process for converting this advantage consists in transferring the bishops to active diagonals.

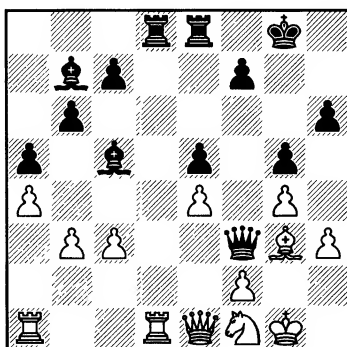
17...♕e6 18 ♖e2 ♖c6 19 e4 ♖xc5  
 20 ♗d3 ♖c6 21 ♖e3 ♗fe8 22 ♗c5  
 ♕c8 23 ♗b3 b6 24 ♗d2 ♕f8



Black has excellent prospects. White's bishop has been driven to the edge of the board and his knight has no manoeuvring prospects, whereas the black bishops, after returning to their initial positions, are again ready to display activity.

Chess bishops are not to be trifled with.

25 b3 ♕b7 26 g4 g5 27 ♕g3 ♗ad8  
 28 ♗fd1 ♖d7 29 h3 ♕c5 30 ♖e1  
 ♖d3 31 ♗f1 ♖f3



White resigns, as there is no defence against the threat of 32...♕xe4.

Game 9  
 White: David Bronstein  
 Black: Ignacy Nowak  
 Sandomierz 1976

As was mentioned earlier, Black's successes with the King's Indian led to players adopting the same set-up



with White. Moreover, as the present game shows, this is possible even after White has begun the game with 1 e4.

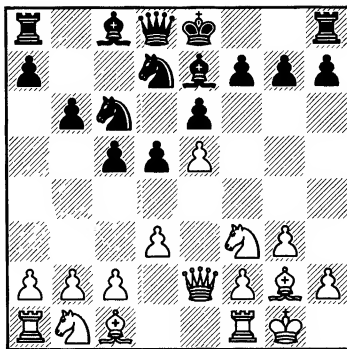
This tournament was organised by a well-known glass factory. My opponent here, Ignacy Nowak – a talented master – was the trainer of the Polish ladies' team.

Here I adopted an interesting set-up. At some point in time I had thought up the idea of undermining the centre by c2-c4. Once with this variation, in a simultaneous display of Pioneers' Palaces, I won against the future grandmaster Alexander Kochiev in 15 moves.

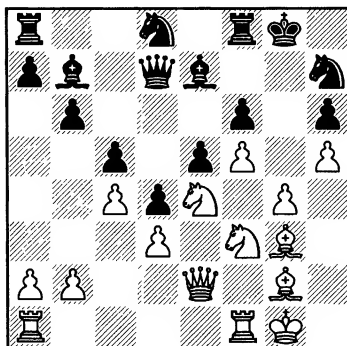
Nowak closed the position, and, in order to 'unseal' it, I had to sacrifice a pawn on the kingside and create a transit point at g4.

The concluding attack with the sacrifice of a piece evoked memories of the 7th game of the Lasker-Steinitz World Championship Match, New York 1894. Lasker won when a knight down, and everyone was amazed at how he had achieved this. But Steinitz's knight stood in a corner square and was worse than a pawn. In an issue of the newspaper *Izvestia*, for which I wrote a regular column, I published an analysis of the critical position, and showed that Lasker had deservedly won this game.

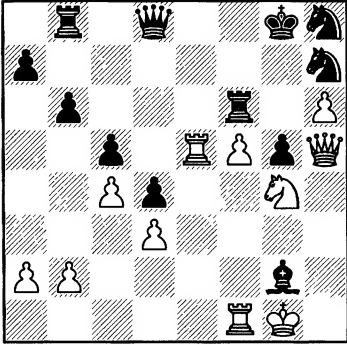
1 e4 c5 2 ♖f3 e6 3 d3 ♗c6 4 g3 ♕e7  
5 ♗g2 ♗f6 6 0-0 d5 7 ♖e2 b6 8 e5  
♗d7



9 c4 ♗db8 10 ♗c3 d4 11 ♗e4 h6  
12 h4 ♗b7 13 ♗f4 ♗d7 14 h5 ♗f8  
15 g4 ♗h7 16 ♗g3 ♖d7 17 ♗fd2 0-0  
18 f4 f5 19 exf6 gxf6 20 f5 e5 21 ♗f3  
♗d8

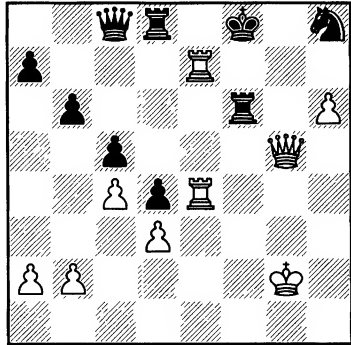


22 g5 hxg5 23 ♗h2 ♗f7 24 h6  
♖ab8 25 ♖h5 ♗h8 26 ♗g4 ♗d6 27  
♖ae1 ♖d8 28 ♗exf6+ ♖xf6 29 ♗xe5  
♗xe5 30 ♖xe5 ♗xg2



31 ♖fe1 ♜f7 32 ♔xg2 ♔f8 33 ♔g1  
 ♚c7 34 ♚h2 ♜d8 35 ♜1e4 ♚c8 36

♚h5 ♚c7 37 ♔g2 ♚c8 38 ♜e6 ♜xf5  
 39 ♜e7 ♔f6 40 ♔xf6 ♜xf6 41 ♚xg5



Black resigns

## White exchanges d4xe5

When White takes on e5 with his d-pawn, Black will normally recapture ...d6xe5. What does White achieve by this exchange? He no longer has the possibility of cramping Black by d4-d5, but on the other hand he has the d-file, on which he can concentrate his heavy pieces and aim to invade at d6 with a knight, supported if possible by a pawn on c5. Black must be careful. He should endeavour to control the c5 square, so as not to allow c4-c5, and should then oppose rooks on the d-file, or aim for an attack on the kingside.

### Game 10

White: **Alexander Kotov**

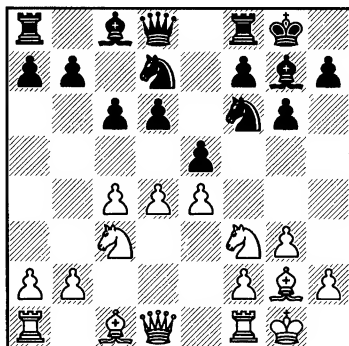
Black: **David Bronstein**

*13th USSR Championship*

*Moscow 1944*

This is an example of the dangers Black faces when the centre is opened up, and his queenside pieces (rook and bishop) are still undeveloped.

1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 d6 3 ♘c3 e5 4 ♘f3  
 ♜bd7 5 g3 g6 6 ♙g2 ♙g7 7 0-0 0-0 8  
 e4 c6



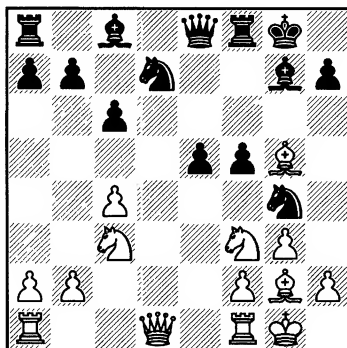
9 ♙e3

Not a popular move, as it allows Black to harass the bishop with his knight. Therefore the development of the bishop is usually prepared by 9 h3 (cf., for example, Games 18 and 20).

9... ♖g4 10 ♙g5 f6

I replied 10...f6 without thinking. At that time I greatly valued every tempo, and so I hurried to advance ...f6-f5 as quickly as possible. Later, in one of his matches against Botvinnik, Vasily Smyslov showed that 10...♗b6 can also be successfully played.

11 ♙c1 f5 12 ♙g5 ♖e8 13 dxe5  
 dxe5 14 exf5 gxf5

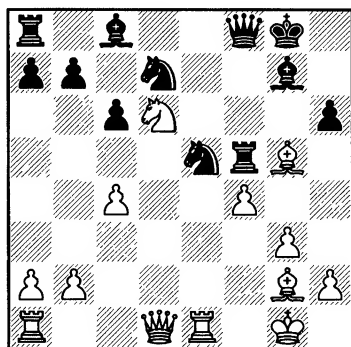


Black has obtained two strong central pawns, demonstrating that it is quite feasible for him to play ...f7(-f6)-f5 without waiting for White to block the centre by d4-d5.

15 ♖e1 e4 16 ♘h4 ♘ge5

Here I carried out an interesting manoeuvre, with the threat of occupying the d3 square. I provoked Kotov into a combination (essentially, forced him to carry it out).

17 f4 h6 18 ♘xf5 ♖xf5 19 ♘xe4 ♗f8 20 ♘d6

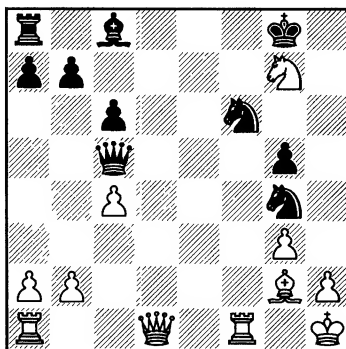


20...♖xf5

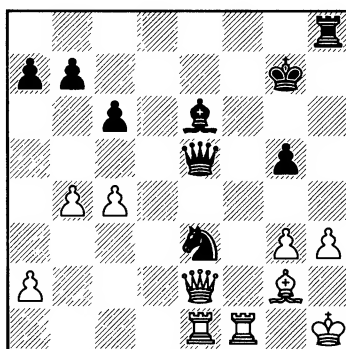
I thought that I was winning, e.g. 20...hxg5 21 ♘xf5 gxf4 22 ♘xg7 f3, but in this case Black's entire queenside does not take part in the play, and all is not so simple.

21 fxg5 hxg5 22 ♖f1 ♗e7 23 ♘f5 ♗c5+ 24 ♘h1 ♘f6 25 ♘xg7 ♘eg4

Black lost because his d8 square was undefended. One has to give the opponent his due – Kotov played prettily. Even so, I like this game, because I was able to carry out the advance of my central pawns.



26 ♖xf6 ♘xg7 27 ♖f1 ♗e6 28 ♗e2 ♖h8 29 h3 ♘e3 30 b4 ♗e5 31 ♖ae1



Black resigns

Game 11

White: Anthony Santasiere

Black: David Bronstein

USA v. USSR Radio Match 1945

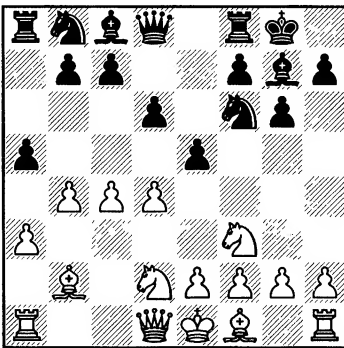
This game was played in the Radio Match arranged immediately after the end of the War. I was still a young, raw player. I had taken 3rd place in the 14th USSR Championship, and for

this they included me in the team on board 10. Each game lasted about 15 hours. The radio connection was good, but took a long time. We were fed, and we dozed – this was in the Central House of Art Workers. It was a grand event, with an opening ceremony. I, of course, was nervous, I was still naïve, and I wanted to show that I could play the King's Indian with Black. Santasiere was a strong and talented player; he played the King's Gambit, wrote verse, and was evidently the last American chess romantic.

1 ♖f3 ♜f6 2 b4 d6 3 d4 g6 4 c4

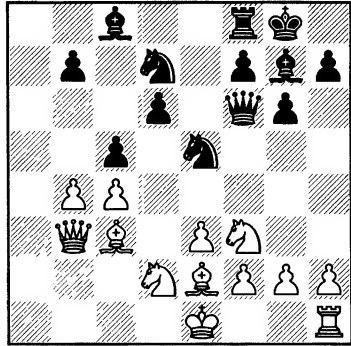
Here I was happy – the move b2-b4 had given me a target to attack, and I thought that if I were to make the correct King's Indian moves, I should mate the enemy king.

4...♙g7 5 ♙b2 0-0 6 ♜bd2 a5 7 a3 e5



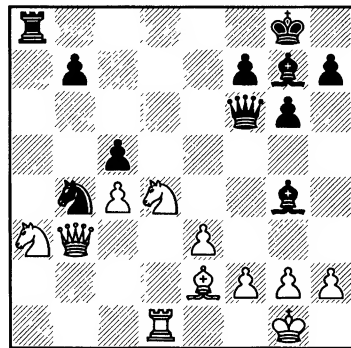
Everything has followed the standard course – Black has made the house for his king and then struck at the centre with ...e7-e5.

8 dxe5 ♞fd7 9 e3 ♞c6 10 ♚b3  
axb4 11 axb4 ♜xa1+ 12 ♙xa1  
♞xe5 13 ♙c3 c5 14 ♙e2 ♚f6



A rather unusual square for Black's queen. He attacks the c4 pawn, and is not concerned about his b7 pawn.

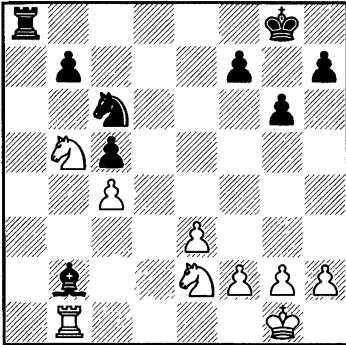
15 ♞e4 ♚e7 16 ♙xe5 ♞xe5 17  
bxc5 dxc5 18 0-0 ♙g4 19 ♞ed2 ♞c6  
20 ♜d1 ♞b4 21 ♞b1 ♚f6 22 ♞a3  
♜a8 23 ♞d4



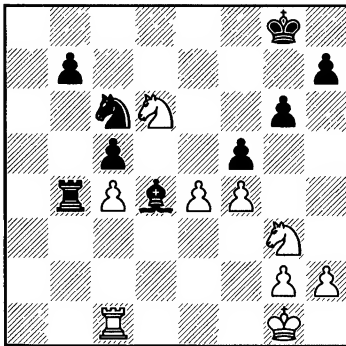
23...♙xe2

Black does not need to exchange bishops. Nowadays I would have retreated it to d7 without thinking.

24 ♖xe2 ♜b2 25 ♜xb2 ♙xb2 26  
 ♜b5 ♜c6 27 ♞b1

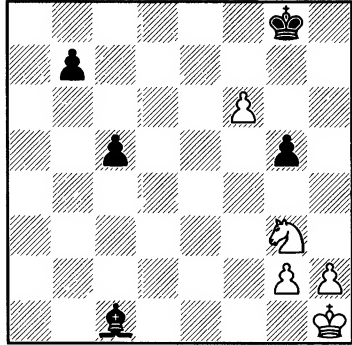


27...♞a4 28 ♜g3 ♙e5 29 f4 ♙g7  
 30 ♜d6 ♞b4 31 ♞c1 f5 32 e4 ♙d4+



Black's main trumps in this end-game are his dark-square bishop, which has no opponent, and the opponent's insecure queenside.

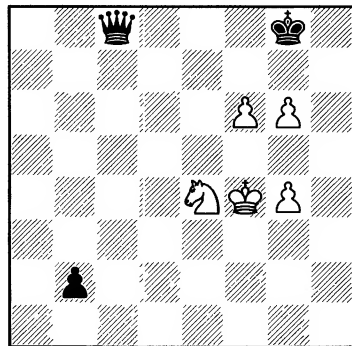
33 ♙h1 ♙e3 34 ♞f1 ♜a5 35 exf5  
 ♜xc4 36 ♜xc4 ♞xc4 37 fxg6 hxg6 38  
 f5 g5 39 f6 ♞c1 40 ♞xc1 ♙xc1



41 ♜e4 c4 42 g4

42 g3 would have offered better chances of saving the game.

42...♙f4 43 ♙g2 b5 44 ♙f3 b4 45  
 h4 c3 46 hxg5 c2 47 ♙xf4 c1=♞+ 48  
 ♙f5 ♞c8+ 49 ♙f4 b3 50 g6 b2



White resigns

## Game 12

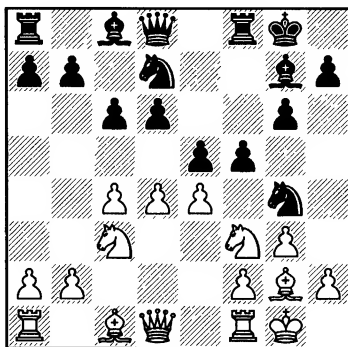
White: **Jaroslav Sajtar**Black: **David Bronstein**

Prague v. Moscow (round 4)

Prague 1946

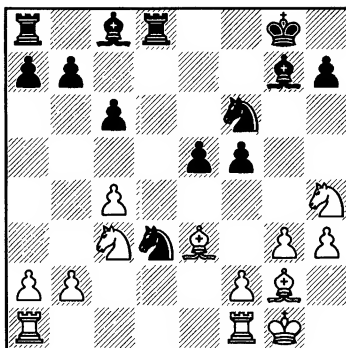
This encounter is from that remarkable (for me) match in Prague and Moscow, where I was able to play several thematic games with the King's Indian (cf. also Games 15, 16, 25 and A6).

1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 d6 3 ♘c3 e5 4 ♘f3  
 ♗bd7 5 g3 g6 6 ♙g2 ♙g7 7 0-0 0-0 8  
 e4 c6 9 ♙e3 ♗g4 10 ♙g5 f6 11 ♙c1  
 f5



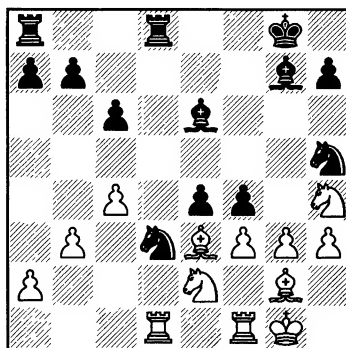
Here too (as against Kotov, Game 10) in reply to a kingside fianchetto by White, Black has replied ...c7-c6 and then played ...f6-f5 as quickly as possible.

12 exf5 gxf5 13 dxe5 dxe5 14 h3  
 ♗gf6 15 ♗h4 ♗c5 16 ♖xd8 ♖xd8 17  
 ♙e3 ♗d3



Exploiting a number of poor moves (in particular, the exchange of the central pawns and 15 ♗h4), I have been able to occupy with my knight the weakened d3 square (weakened, because in the King's Indian the white pawns usually move from c2 and e2).

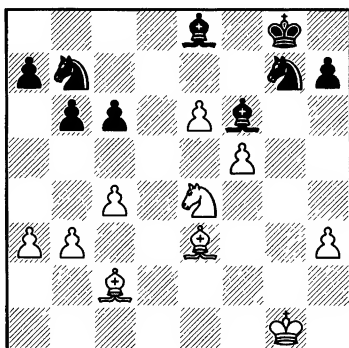
18 ♖ad1 ♙e6 19 b3 e4 20 ♗e2  
 ♗h5 21 f3 f4



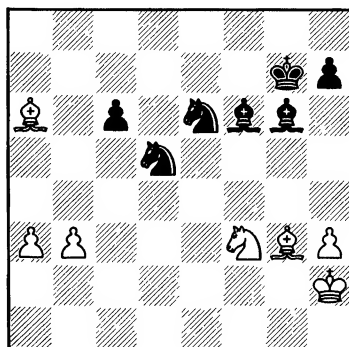
Here I was able to carry out the rather rare, almost simultaneous advance of my e- and f-pawns, and to

win a piece. The rest of the game was a question of technique.

22 gxf4 ♖f6 23 ♜f5 ♖xf5 24 fxe4  
 ♙g6 25 e5 ♖h4 26 f5 ♖e8 27 e6  
 ♜b4 28 ♖f3 ♜xd1 29 ♜xd1 ♜g7 30  
 ♜d4 ♖f6 31 a3 ♜a6 32 ♖e4 ♜d8 33  
 ♜d2 ♜c5 34 ♖c2 b6 35 ♜f3 ♜xd2 36  
 ♜xd2 ♜b7 37 ♜e4



37...♖b2 38 e5 ♜xf5 39 cxb6  
 axb6 40 ♖xb6 ♙g7 41 ♖c7 ♖d4+ 42  
 ♜h2 ♜e3 43 ♖d3 ♜d5 44 ♖g3 ♖g6  
 45 ♖a6 ♜d8 46 ♜g5 ♖f6 47 ♜f3  
 ♜xe6



White resigns

### Game 13

White: **David Bronstein**

Black: **Oscar Panno**

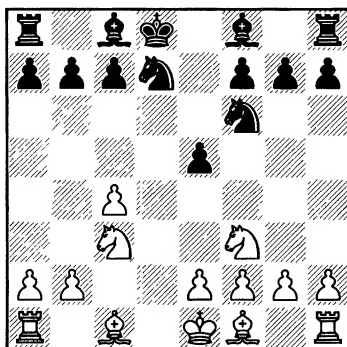
*Olympiad, Amsterdam 1954*

In this Olympiad the Argentine team, led by Miguel Najdorf, turned out to be our nearest rivals. My partner in the present game was making his Olympiad debut at the age of 19.

1 d4 ♜f6 2 c4 d6 3 ♜c3 e5

As has been explained elsewhere, this move order has the aim of avoiding variations such as the Sämisch, but Black does have to reckon with the immediate exchange of queens, as in the present game.

4 dxe5 dxe5 5 ♙xd8+ ♖xd8 6 ♜f3  
 ♜bd7



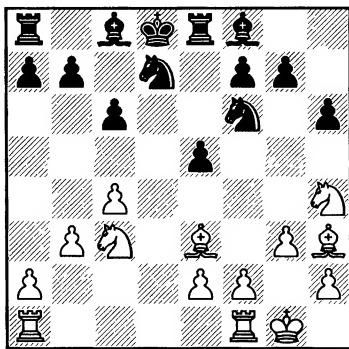
Once, in a USSR Team Championship, this exchange variation occurred in a game of mine with Artur Yusupov. After making my last move I got up to walk about. On returning to the board, I saw to my surprise that



my clock was going, but that White had not made a move. For several minutes I looked in silence and could not understand – all the pieces and pawns were on their old squares. I looked and looked... and it was awkward for me to ask. Then I suddenly saw that the white rook was at g1. I did not know this move, although the variation was very familiar to me – we had analysed it in detail in 1952, at a training session before the Olympiad in Helsinki. Since the move threatens g2-g4, I replied 7...h5! and the game soon ended in a draw.

The point of Black's sixth move is that, if he plays the old 6...♟fd7, then White has the good reply 7 g4. But Panno, despite his youth, already knew the latest achievements of chess theory.

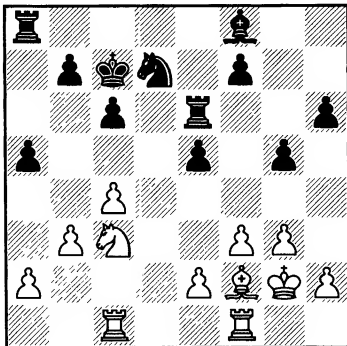
7 g3 c6 8 ♖h3 ♕d6 9 ♖e3 h6 10 0-0 ♜e8 11 ♟h4 ♖f8 12 b3



### 12...g5

Of course this is a risky move, and the weakening of the light squares later told.

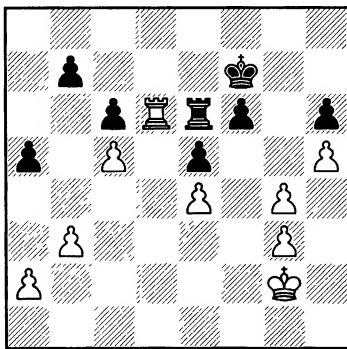
13 ♟f5 ♟c5 14 f3 ♖c7 15 ♜ac1 a5  
16 ♖g2 ♖e6 17 ♟g7 ♖xg7 18 ♖xc5  
♟d7 19 ♖xe6 ♜xe6 20 ♖f2 ♖f8



21 ♟d5+ ♖d8 22 ♟b6 ♟xb6 23  
♖xb6+ ♖e8 24 c5 ♖e7 25 ♜cd1 f6  
26 e4 ♖d8 27 ♖xd8 ♜xd8 28 ♜xd8+  
♖xd8 29 ♜d1+ ♖e8 30 h4 ♜e7

White has the advantage, but Black should play 30...gxh4 31 g4 h5!

31 ♜d6 ♖f7 32 h5 g4 33 fxg4 ♜e6

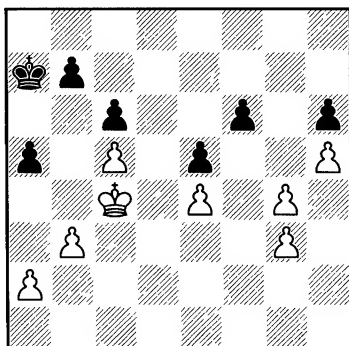


When, in severe time trouble, there is the possibility of going into a pawn ending, doubts always arise. Suppose that... With his last move Black set a

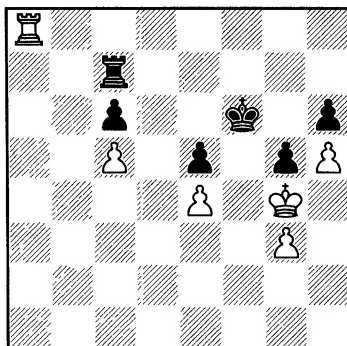
psychological trap, and I took him at his word.

34 ♖d8

In fact after the exchange of rooks the white king goes to c4 – at this point the black king is at a7 (34 ♖xe6 ♜xe6 35 ♜f3 ♜d7 36 ♜e3 ♜c7 37 ♜d3 ♜b8 38 ♜c4 ♜a7).



41 a4 ♜e6 42 g5 fxg5 43 a5 ♖f8+  
44 ♜g4 ♖f7 45 ♖b6 ♖c7 46 a6 bxa6  
47 ♖xa6 ♜f6 48 ♖a8

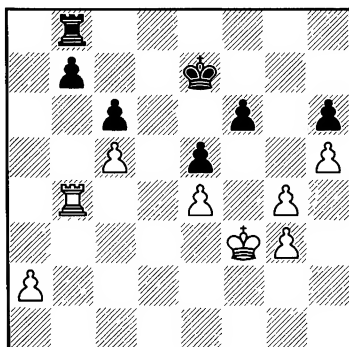


Now there is no defence against the decisive invasion of the white pieces.

**Black resigns.**

Now White plays 39 b4 axb4 40 ♜xb4 ♜a6, and here both 41 a3 and 41 ♜a4 win.

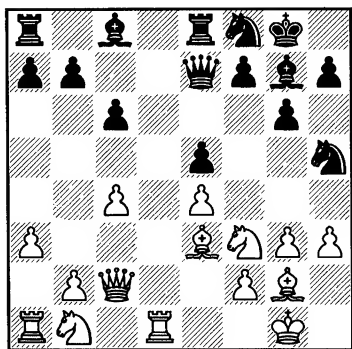
34...♖e8 35 ♖d2 ♜e7 36 ♜f3 ♖g8  
37 ♖d1 ♖g7 38 ♖b1 ♖g8 39 b4 axb4  
40 ♖xb4 ♖b8



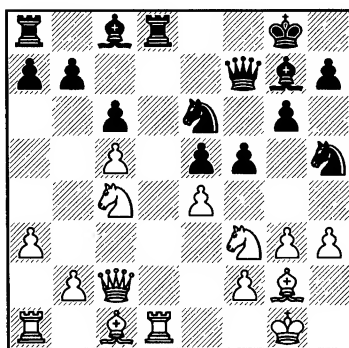
Game 14  
White: **Rafael Vaganian**  
Black: **David Bronstein**  
*Moscow Open Championship 1981*

This game is from one of the Moscow Championships, in which I played more or less regularly for many years, even though on occasions I was the only grandmaster. However, this open event was a very strong one, with no less than 12 grandmasters among the 18 competitors.

1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♘f3 ♙g7 4 g3 0-0  
5 ♙g2 d6 6 0-0 ♘bd7 7 ♖c2 e5 8  
♖d1 ♖e8 9 dxex5 dxex5 10 e4 c6 11 h3  
♘h5 12 ♙e3 ♖e7 13 a3 ♘f8



14 c5 f5 15 ♖g5 ♗f7 16 ♖c1 ♘e6  
17 ♘bd2 ♞d8 18 ♘c4



Vaganian has played the opening in very interesting fashion. He exchanged on e5 and then played his pawn to e4. Then he subtly played his bishop to g5, then back to c1, then brought out his knight at d2 (blocking his bishop and rook!), and transferred it

to c4, attacking the e5 pawn, exploiting Black's ...f7-f5.

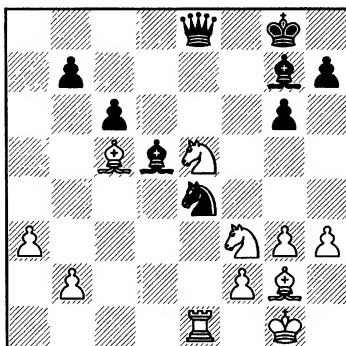
18...♞xd1+ 19 ♗xd1 ♘xc5 20 ♘cxe5 ♗e8 21 exf5 ♖xf5 22 ♖e3 ♞d8

Then he offered a piece sacrifice (21 exf5), and, when I attacked his queen, he sacrificed his queen for rook and bishop.

23 ♖xc5 ♞xd1+ 24 ♞xd1 ♘f6 25 ♖xa7 ♖e4 26 ♖c5 ♖d5

The most curious thing was that, when after this move I offered a draw, Vaganian was terribly upset. 'Why a draw, why aren't you playing for a win?' He evidently wanted me to lose this position, and could not understand that I also understand something about chess!

27 ♞e1 ♘e4



**Draw agreed**

## Black captures ...e5xd4

Let us suppose that Black has played ...e7-e5. If White maintains the central tension by keeping his pawn at d4, as soon as Black has safeguarded his king he has the option of opening the centre himself by ...e5xd4. He now has the c5 square for his knight (supported by ...a7-a5) and by playing ...♖e8 he will intensify the pressure on the e4 pawn. After this he can play ...c7-c6 and find a suitable post for his queen on the queenside. In the resulting tense position Black has reasonable manoeuvring possibilities, but success is normally possible only in the event of passive play by White. Therefore he sometimes chooses another option – he does not hurry with ...e5xd4, but provokes White into playing d4-d5.

### Game 15

White: **Ludek Pachman**

Black: **David Bronstein**

*Prague v. Moscow (round 2)*

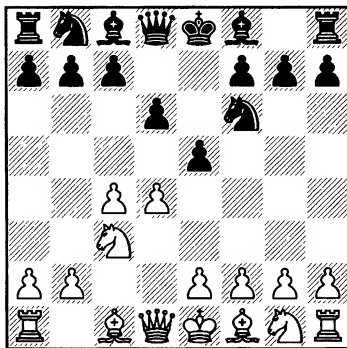
*Prague 1946*

This is perhaps my most famous King's Indian game, a 'gift from the gods', so to speak. After it, and the game with Zita, from being a 'losing' opening the King's Indian was transformed virtually into a winning one, and this made a great impression in the West. Thanks to these games I was included in the FIDE list for the first Interzonal Tournament.

**1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 d6 3 ♘c3 e5**

Why this move order, instead of first developing the bishop at g7, and only then ...d7-d6 and ...e7-e5? Well, the point is that in those days we were very afraid of the Sämisch Variation (2...g6 3 ♘c3 ♗g7 4 e4 d6 5 f3), and the chosen move order rules this out,

as 4 e4 allows Black a lead in development by 4...exd4 5 ♖xd4 ♘c6.



**4 ♘f3 ♘bd7 5 g3 g6 6 ♗g2 ♗g7 7 0-0 0-0 8 b3**

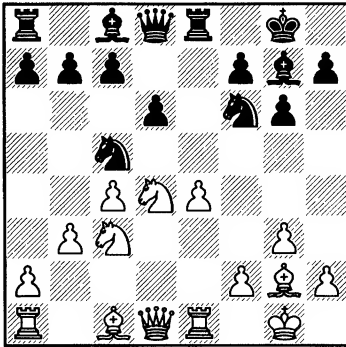
Later White learned to avoid this move, which creates a potential tactical weakness on the long diagonal, in favour of the immediate 8 e4.

**8...♖e8 9 e4**

Black was threatening ...e5-e4-e3. 9 e3 was possible. The text move allows Black, after exchanging pawns in the

centre, to deploy his pieces comfortably and to take the initiative.

9...exd4 10 ♖xd4 ♗c5 11 ♖e1



11...a5 12 ♗b2

Perhaps 12 a3 should have been played, to answer 12...a4 with 13 b4. Now, however, after 12...a4 White has a weakness at b3. White would like to exploit the weakening of the b5 square by ♗db5 (I am always afraid of this manoeuvre in the King's Indian), but on this and the next move it is not possible because of 12...♗fxe4, and then Black will play ...c7-c6.

12...a4 13 ♖c1

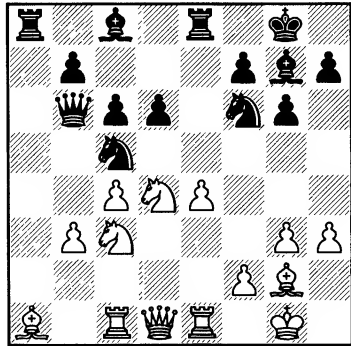
If 13 b4 Black was planning the sharp move 13...a3.

13...c6 14 ♗a1 axb3 15 axb3 ♖b6 16 h3

A classic position, where I have done everything possible: played my pawn to c6, knight to c5 and queen to b6, while the other two queenside pieces are waiting.

Now I had to play something, but I did not know what – this was one of

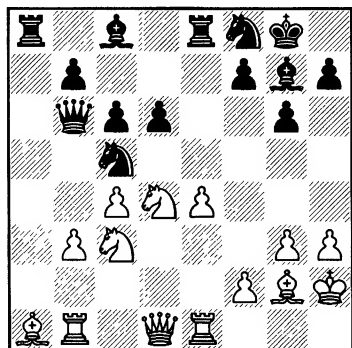
my first games King's Indian games. I remembered that Dr Lasker advised putting the king's knight on f8, so that it should not get in the way. That was how a new idea in this variation arose: ...♗f6-d7-f8!



16...♗f7

It is curious that, when I played this, the participants and spectators thought that the knight was aiming for e5 and then d3. From this point Black required only three moves to prepare the decisive combination.

17 ♖b1 ♗f8 18 ♗h2



**18...h5**

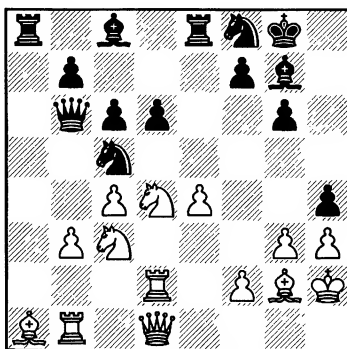
A notable feature of this game is Black's attack with his rook's pawns on both sides of the board, with the aim of breaking up the white position.

**19 ♖e2**

If 19 f4 there would have followed 19...h4 20 g4 ♘ce6, when Black penetrates on the opponent's weakened squares on the kingside. White improves the position of his rook, by playing it to d2, where it defends the second rank against the invasion of the a8 rook, and will simultaneously threaten the d6 pawn.

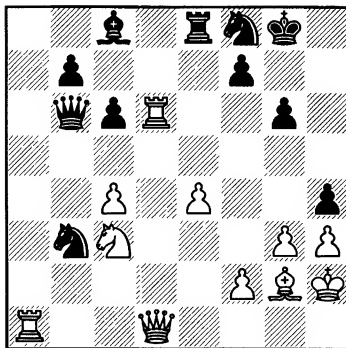
**19...h4 20 ♖d2**

When he made this move, White anticipated the opponent's reply. He thought that he would win the game by refuting Black's combination, but he had miscalculated.

**20...♖xa1**

Black carries out his planned combination, after which a very interesting tactical skirmish develops.

**21 ♖xa1 ♙xd4 22 ♖xd4 ♘xb3 23 ♖xd6**

**23...♚xf2**

The crux of Black's combination! He does not play 23...♘xa1, in view of the counter-combination 24 ♘d5 ♚xf2 25 ♘f6+ and ♘xe8.

**24 ♖a2**

If 24 ♚xb3, then 24...hxg3+ 25 ♙h1 ♙xh3 (the decisive intrusion of the 'undeveloped' bishop) 26 ♖g1 ♙xg2+ 27 ♖xg2 ♚f1+ 28 ♖g1 ♚h3 mate.

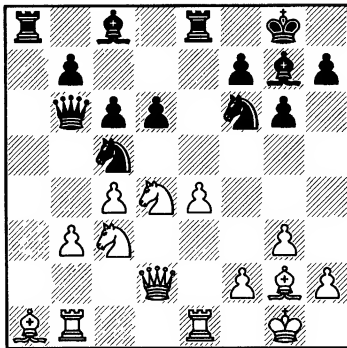
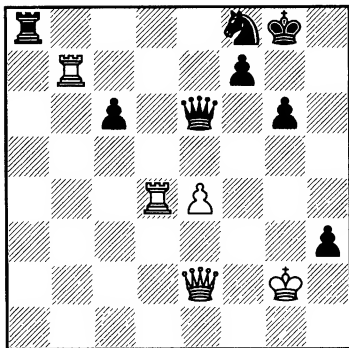
**24...♚xg3+ 25 ♙h1 ♚xc3 26 ♖a3**

Or 26 ♖d3 ♚c1, and the knight at b3 is invulnerable.

**26...♙xh3 27 ♖xb3 ♙xg2+ 28 ♙xg2 ♚xc4 29 ♖d4 ♚e6 30 ♖xb7 ♖a8 31 ♚e2 h3+**

White resigns, as he is powerless against the mating attack.

In this game Black employed an innovative way of using space. Five of his pieces – king, knight at f8, rooks at e8 and a8, and bishop at c8 – stood on the back rank undeveloped, and yet at the same time these pieces were very active.



## Game 16

White: **Frantisek Zita**Black: **David Bronstein***Prague v. Moscow (round 6)**Prague 1946*

This was played just a few days after my game with Pachman. As regards demonstrating the activity of the black pieces in the King's Indian Defence, it is hard to find a better example. The secret of playing such positions is to alternate attack and defence.

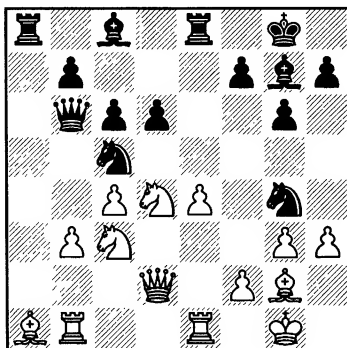
1 e4 e5 2 ♘c3 ♘f6 3 ♘f3 d6 4 d4  
 ♜bd7 5 g3 g6 6 ♙g2 ♙g7 7 0-0 0-0 8  
 b3

The same position as in the game with Pachman has been reached, but now Black varies slightly.

8...c6 9 ♙b2 ♞e8 10 e4 exd4 11  
 ♜xd4 ♞b6 12 ♞d2 ♘c5 13 ♞fe1 a5  
 14 ♞ab1 a4 15 ♙a1 axb3 16 axb3

## 16...♘g4 17 h3

In this game the reader can see that the King's Indian Defence is full of tactical nuances. One must have the ability to see two to three moves ahead. Here there was the unpleasant threat of ...♘g4-e5-d3, and in some cases ...f7-f5. Incidentally, the immediate ...♘d3 was also threatened. The d3 square is often a weakness, as both White's c- and e-pawns have moved from their original squares.

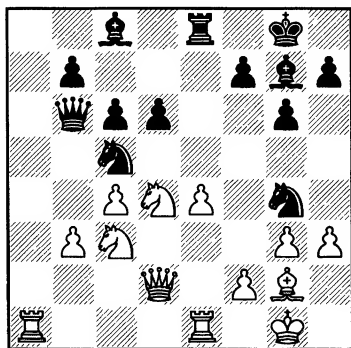


To avoid the coming combination, White should have played 17 ♘d1.

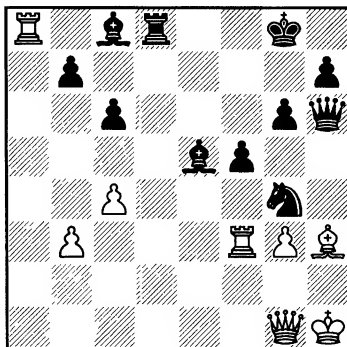
17...♖xa1

The corner-stone of White's position is his bishop at a1. By exchanging his rook for this bishop, Black strengthens the role of his g7 bishop.

18 ♖xa1



23...f5 24 ♖xe4 ♖xe4 25 ♖xd6  
 ♖xd4 26 ♖b8 ♖d8 27 ♖a8 ♖e5 28  
 ♖a7 ♖b4 29 ♖g1 ♖f8 30 ♖h3 ♖h6

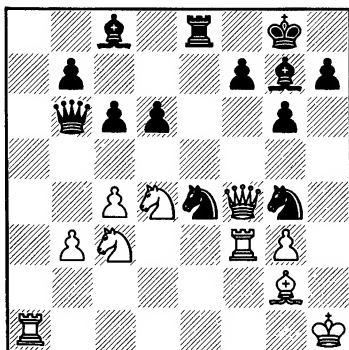


White resigns

18...♖xf2

Black's combination is based on geometry. If now 19 ♖xf2 ♖xb3, or 19 ♖xf2 ♖d3, in each case with decisive threats.

19 ♖e3 ♖xh3+ 20 ♖h2 ♖f2 21  
 ♖f3 ♖xe4 22 ♖f4 ♖g4+ 23 ♖h1

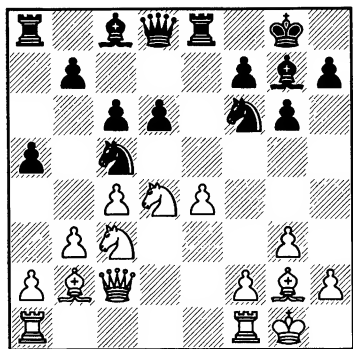


Game 17  
 White: **William Winter**  
 Black: **David Bronstein**  
*Great Britain v. USSR Radio Match*  
 1946

My opponent, a highly intelligent man, was at that time my main admirer in England. In the first round of this double-round event on twelve boards he had defeated me with the black pieces (in fact this was the only loss by the Soviet side), so naturally there was considerable pressure on me to even the score.

1 d4 ♖f6 2 c4 d6 3 ♖c3 ♖bd7 4 ♖f3  
 e5 5 g3 g6 6 ♖g2 ♖g7 7 0-0 0-0 8 e4  
 c6 9 b3 exd4 10 ♖xd4 ♖e8 11 ♖b2  
 ♖c5 12 ♖c2 a5





Again we see a similar picture to the two previous games. It is worth reiterating the method of play that Black adopts after the pawn exchange on d4. His rook goes to e8, intensifying the pressure on the e4 pawn, and his a-pawn, which appears to be defending the knight against attack, is in reality ready to engage the white b-pawn.

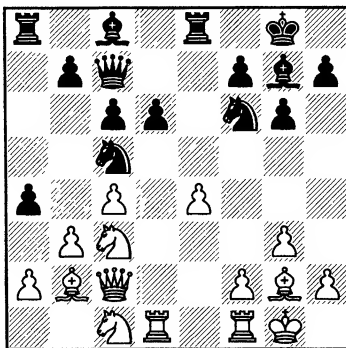
In many cases Black's d6 pawn is left undefended; this is very important, as during this time he is able to develop an initiative elsewhere on the board. But sometimes it has to be defended.

It is significant in many variations of the King's Indian that both the rook at a8 and the bishop at c8 remain on these squares, but still participate in the play. This is one of Black's main trumps.

**13 ♖ad1 ♜b6 14 ♘de2 a4 15 ♘c1 ♜c7**

It is not clear whether the d6 pawn should be defended. One possibility recommended at the time was 15...a3

16 ♙a1 ♙g4 17 ♖d2 ♘fxe4, but this would have led to rapid simplification, which naturally did not attract me. Therefore for the moment I decided to defend my weak pawn.



**16 ♖fe1 axb3 17 axb3 ♙e6**

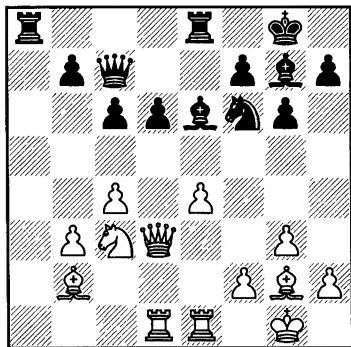
But this move is probably not the best. Perhaps Black should first have provoked f2-f3 by 17...♙g4 18 f3 and then played 18...♙e6.

**18 ♘d3**

White exchanges his passive knight for the strongly placed knight at c5. However, he did not take account of the fact that soon a second black knight would appear at c5, and in the meantime the b3 pawn would have lost its defender.

Instead White could have played 18 f4, initiating a kingside pawn storm, but there was something he did not like. Most probably it was the fact that Black could intensify the pressure on e4 by 18...♙g4 19 ♖d2 ♜b6 20 ♙h1 ♙f5.

**18...♘xd3 19 ♜xd3**

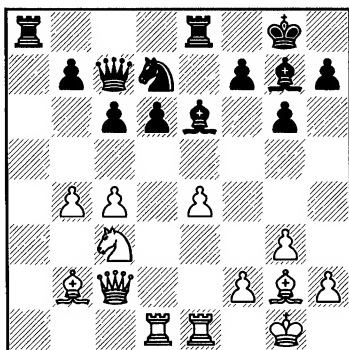


19...♞d7

In the King's Indian Defence the d6 pawn is often left without any direct defence. In this case White avoids the capture 20 ♜xd6, as Black does not exchange queens, but plays 20...♜b6, after which he easily regains his pawn.

20 ♜c2 ♞c5 21 b4 ♞d7

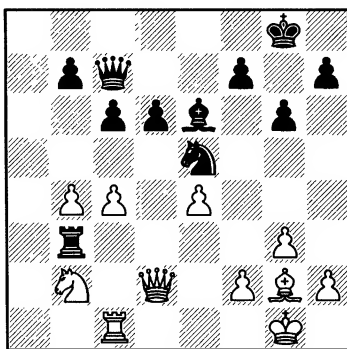
Another typical idea: the black knight moves to and fro (d7-c5-d7), provoking a weakening of White's queenside pawns.



22 ♞a4

With this unfortunate manoeuvre (22 ♞b1 would have been better), White allows the opponent's rook to go to a3, which is also a standard manoeuvre for Black.

22...♙xb2 23 ♞xb2 ♜a3 24 ♜a1 ♜ea8 25 ♜xa3 ♜xa3 26 ♜d2 ♞e5 27 ♜c1 ♜b3



28 c5

Black's last move had the drawback of relinquishing control of the open file, and White should have taken advantage of this by 28 ♜a1. After the move played his c5 pawn is left irrevocably weak.

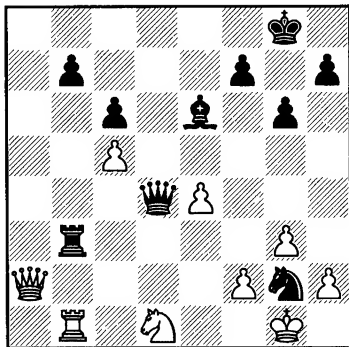
28...dxc5 29 bxc5 ♜d7 30 ♜c2

After the exchange of queens White would lose his c5 pawn, but now he has to concede control of the d-file.

30...♜d4

Forcing the white pieces to retreat still further.

31 ♞d1 ♞d3 32 ♜b1 ♞e1 33 ♜a2 ♞xg2



### White resigns

The weakness of the entire variation with the fianchetto of the f1 bishop is that, if White does not achieve good play in the centre, his king, three pawns and bishop are in danger of being left out of the game.

### Game 18

White: David Bronstein

Black: Arpad Vajda

*Moscow v. Budapest Match 1949*

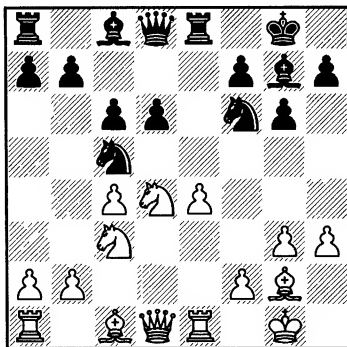
In this game I had to play with White against my favourite variation. Here, profiting from my experiences with Black, I avoided my previous opponents' mistake of playing 8 b3, and as a result I was able to develop my bishop more actively than at b2.

1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 d6 3 ♘c3 e5 4 ♘f3  
 ♗bd7 5 g3 g6 6 ♙g2 ♙g7 7 0-0 0-0 8  
 e4 ♞e8 9 h3 exd4 10 ♗xd4 ♗c5

A slight inaccuracy (10...c6 is better, and if 11 ♙f4 ♗e5), after

which White is able to prevent the opponent from achieving his desired set-up of ...a7-a5-a4 and ...♞a5.

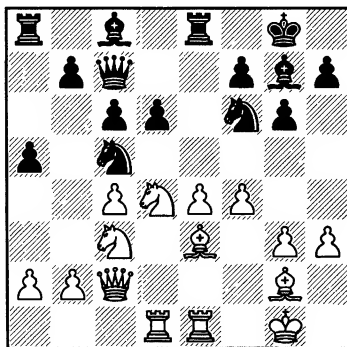
11 ♞e1 c6



12 ♙f4

At that time this move seemed very strong to me – ♗b3 is threatened. White's strategy is aimed at removing the knight from c5.

12...♗h5 13 ♙e3 ♗f6 14 ♞c2 a5  
 15 ♞ad1 ♞c7 16 f4



16...♙d7

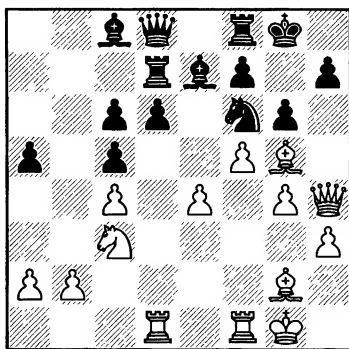
Missing the opportunity for 16...a4, after which White is able to exchange

the pride of Black's position – his knight at c5.

17 ♖b3 b6 18 ♜xc5 bxc5 19 ♚d2  
♙f8

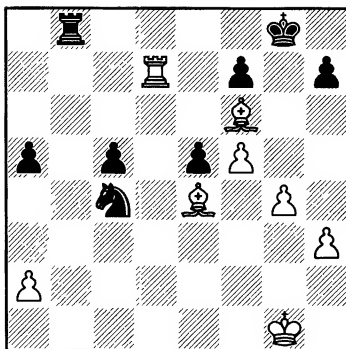
Black has perhaps played too cautiously – he has clung on to the d6 pawn, which he should not especially begrudge. As a result, White has acquired all that he can dream of in this opening – space, and pressure on the d- and f-files. He now begins a pawn attack on the kingside and soon transforms his positional advantage into a material one.

20 f5 ♜ad8 21 ♙g5 ♙e7 22 ♜f1  
♜f8 23 g4 ♙c8 24 ♚e1 ♜d7 25 ♚h4  
♚d8



The offensive by the white pawns is a standard technique. Now a temporary pawn sacrifice brings the white knight into play.

26 e5 dxe5 27 ♜xd7 ♙xd7 28 ♜e4  
♜xe4 29 ♙xe7 g5 30 ♙xd8 gxh4 31  
♙xh4 ♜d2 32 ♜d1 ♜xc4 33 ♜xd7  
♜xb2 34 ♙f6 ♜c4 35 ♙xc6 ♜b8 36  
♙e4



**Black resigns**

Game 19

White: **Miguel Najdorf**

Black: **David Bronstein**

*Candidates Tournament*

*Budapest 1950*

In the search for fresh ideas I have always employed a wide range of openings. Thus out of my nine black games in this tournament, this was one of only two King's Indians.

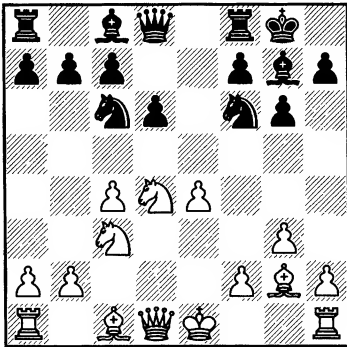
1 d4 ♜f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♜c3 ♙g7 4 e4 d6  
5 g3 0-0 6 ♙g2 e5 7 ♜ge2

The plan of developing the knight at e2 is a good one for White. This was the first time I had encountered it, and I did not know exactly how to react.

7...exd4 8 ♜xd4 ♜c6

After the exchange on d4 the point of the knight move to c6 is that, as an admirer of Anderssen, Morphy and LaBourdonnais, I always thought that

the opponent's king should be attacked, as long as it has not castled.



### 9 ♖xc6

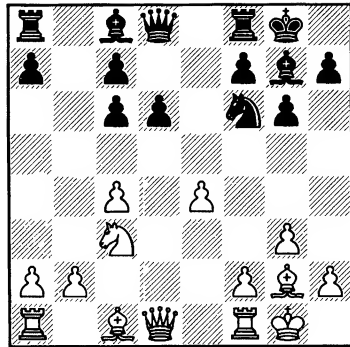
9 0-0 demanded calculation because of the possible 9...♗xe4, but if White wants a draw, the variation 10 ♗xc6 ♗xc3 11 ♗xd8 ♗xd1 12 ♗xb7 ♗xb7 13 ♖xd1 is quite suitable.

### 9...bxc6

It used to be thought that the doubled c-pawns were passive and that this variation favoured White, but I believed (and this was mentioned by Fine in one of his books) that all attacks on the king must be begun directly from the opening. In earlier times this was not so – they completed their development, prepared a plan, and only then began an attack.

### 10 0-0

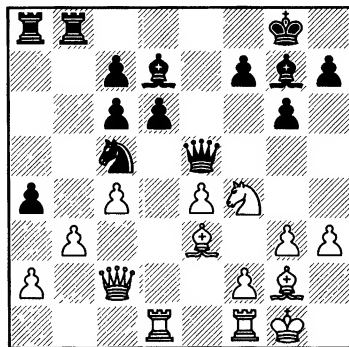
For example, in this position they would play as Black 10...♖b8, ...♗e6, ...♗d7 etc. But in such positions I often employed the manoeuvre ...♗f6-d7, while my queen's rook and queen's bishop remained in their places.



### 10...♗d7

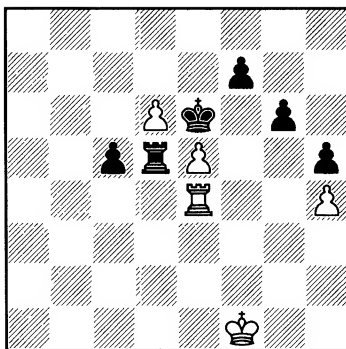
Here there is a concrete aim – Black is trying not to allow b2-b3 and ♗b2.

11 ♖c2 ♖f6 12 ♗e2 ♖e8 13 ♖b1 ♖e7 14 ♗d2 ♗c5 15 ♖be1 a5 16 b3 ♗g4 17 ♗f4 ♖eb8 18 ♗e3 ♖e5 19 h3 ♗d7 20 ♖d1 a4



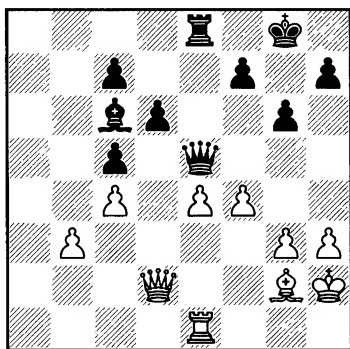
Black squeezes himself up into a ball, like a hedgehog, and waits. Here there are no variations, that commentators so like. This is one of those positions of equilibrium which, as Lasker once wrote, are the most

difficult to play in chess. Look at this position. Black has done everything: queen in the centre, rooks on the queenside, bishop on the long diagonal, good knight at c5 – all his pieces are active. But when I am asked the stupid question: ‘Can you win from this position?’, it infuriates me. The subsequent play depends on the skill of the two players, their staying-power in maintaining the tension, and many other factors. In this game I managed to win an almost drawn ending, literally ‘by a thread’.

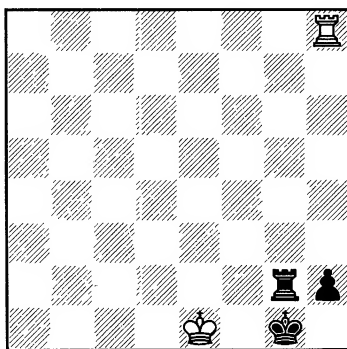


21 ♖d3 axb3 22 axb3 ♜xd3 23 ♞xd3 c5 24 ♙f4 ♚e8 25 ♙d2 ♙c6 26 ♙c3 ♙xc3 27 ♚xc3 ♚e5 28 ♚d2 ♞e8 29 ♚h2 ♚g7 30 ♞e1 ♞a1 31 ♞de3 ♞xe1 32 ♞xe1 ♚e5 33 f4

52...f6 53 exf6+ ♔xf6 54 g4 ♞xd6 55 gxf5 gxf5 56 ♞c4 ♞d5 57 ♚e2 ♚e6 58 ♚e3 ♚d6 59 ♞a4 ♚c6 60 ♞a1 ♞d4 61 ♞h1 ♚d5 62 ♚e2 c4 63 ♚e3 ♚c5 64 ♞h2 c3 65 ♞a2 ♞xh4 66 ♞a8 ♞h3+ 67 ♚e2 ♚c4 68 ♚d1 ♞h1+ 69 ♚c2 ♞h2+ 70 ♚c1 h4 71 ♞c8+ ♚d4 72 ♞d8+ ♚e4 73 ♞e8+ ♚f3 74 ♞f8+ ♚g3 75 ♞c8 ♞f2 76 ♞xc3+ ♚g2 77 ♚d1 h3 78 ♞c8 h2 79 ♞g8+ ♚f1 80 ♞h8 ♚g1 81 ♚e1 ♞g2



33...♚d4 34 ♚xd4 cxd4 35 ♞d1 ♞b8 36 ♞xd4 ♞xb3 37 ♙f1 h5 38 h4 ♞b4 39 ♚g2 ♚f8 40 ♚f2 ♚e7 41 ♚e3 ♞b1 42 ♚f2 ♞c1 43 e5 dxe5 44 fxe5 ♙d7 45 ♙g2 ♞c2+ 46 ♚f1 c5 47 ♞f4 ♙e6 48 ♙d5 ♙xd5 49 cxd5 ♞d2 50 d6+ ♚e6 51 ♞c4 ♞d5 52 ♞e4



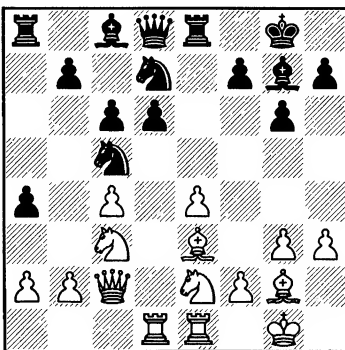
White resigns

## Game 20

White: **Samuel Reshevsky**Black: **David Bronstein***Candidates Tournament**Zurich 1953*

Usually with Black I endeavoured in the first instance not to lose to Samuel Reshevsky, one of the strongest (if not THE strongest!) players from the West. As is now well known, Soviet players were put in a difficult psychological position. There could be no question of uninhibited play. Your every move was scrutinised not only by strict fans, but also by officials of every rank. Mistakes were not forgiven. On the result of one game could depend, to put it mildly, your entire well-being. And here I had received an ultra-difficult order – I had to win!

1 d4 ♟f6 2 c4 g6 3 g3 ♟g7 4 ♟g2 0-0  
5 ♟c3 d6 6 ♟f3 ♟bd7 7 0-0 e5 8 e4  
♟e8 9 h3 exd4 10 ♟xd4 ♟c5 11 ♟e1  
a5 12 ♟c2 c6 13 ♟e3 ♟fd7 14 ♟ad1  
a4 15 ♟de2

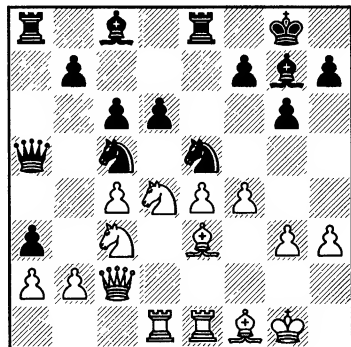


A position typical of my King's Indians has arisen, where for a very long time my queen's bishop and rook are 'dozing' – they come into play only on the 22nd and 24th moves respectively. Theoreticians cannot agree with this approach – they demand the development of all the pieces. But I consider that the board is small and that it is better to wait a little, so as then to bring them out directly to the most needed squares.

15... ♟a5 16 ♟f1

White has attacked the d6 pawn, but after Black's reply he sees that the pawn can be advantageously regained by 16 ♟xd6 ♟e5, and 17 b3 would only make things worse in view of the surprising stroke 17... ♟xh3, when taking the bishop allows a check at f3, for example: 18 ♟xh3 ♟f3+ 19 ♟f1 ♟xe1 20 ♟xe1 axb3 21 axb3 ♟xe4 22 ♟d3 ♟a1+ 23 ♟d1 ♟a2 24 ♟c1 ♟xf2 25 ♟xf2 ♟xe2+.

16... ♟e5 17 ♟d4 a3 18 f4



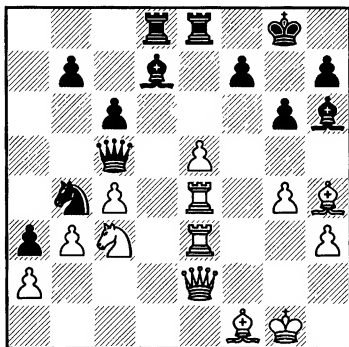
After making this active move, Reshevsky offered a draw, although to

all appearances he was in a fighting mood, and would have been upset if I had accepted the offer. His question 'Are you playing for a win?' was more of a probe against an opponent whom he wanted to egg on into making some rash step.

18...♖ed7 19 b3 ♗a6 20 ♕f2  
 ♜dc5 21 ♜e3 ♗b4 22 ♛e2 ♕d7 23  
 e5 dxe5 24 fxe5 ♜ad8 25 g4 ♗e6 26  
 ♕h4 ♗xd4 27 ♜xd4 ♛c5

A key move, on which Black's entire strategy in this phase of the game is based. It is very important not to allow the white knight to go to f6. He could not take the e5 pawn with his bishop, as White would reply 28 ♜xe5 and only then take the rook at d8; now, however, White must give serious consideration to the defence of his e5 pawn.

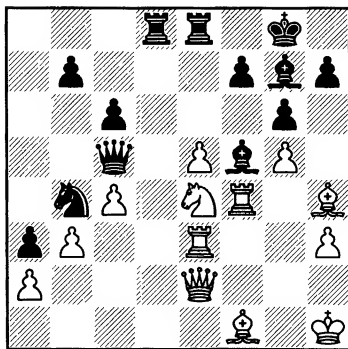
28 ♜de4 ♕h6



29 ♖h1 ♕e6 30 g5

The start of a combination. Reshevsky vacates f4 for his rook, which in turn makes way for the knight.

30...♕g7 31 ♜f4 ♕f5 32 ♗e4



32...♕xe4+

White offers to sacrifice his e5 pawn. It is tempting to take it, and on the obvious knight check to sacrifice the queen for rook, knight and pawn, when Black's pieces are very active and he has good prospects of further strengthening his position. But in the event of the pawn being taken, Reshevsky had prepared a devilish combination: 32...♛xe5? 33 ♜xf5 when there can follow: 33...gxf5 (33...♛xf5 34 ♗f6+ ♕xf6 35 ♜xe8+ ♜xe8 36 ♛xe8+ ♖g7 37 gxf6+) 34 ♗f6+ ♕xf6 35 gxf6!! ♛xe3 36 ♛g2+. The beauty of the combination is revealed in the second variation, when on the 35th move, White, who is already a rook down, does not take the queen, but takes the bishop with the pawn, creating an irresistible mating threat.

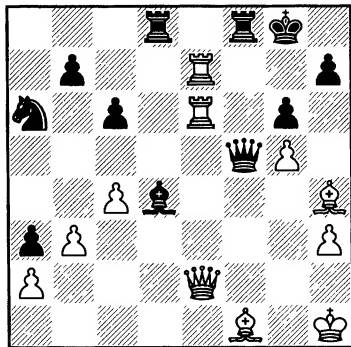
33 ♜fxe4 ♗a6 34 e6 fxe6

Here, for the second time, Reshevsky offered a draw; on this occasion seriously, I think. Black's position is better thanks to his strong a3 pawn, the exposed position of the white



king, and the superiority of his knight over the bad light-square bishop.

35 ♖xe6 ♜f8 36 ♜e7 ♔d4 37 ♖3e6 ♜f5



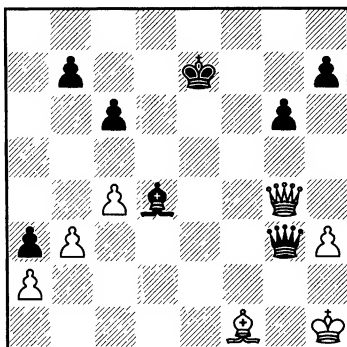
38 ♜e8 ♜c5 39 ♜xd8 ♜xe6 40 ♜xf8+ ♜xf8 41 ♔g3 ♜xg5

At the adjournment Reshevsky thought for a long time and decided to give up his doomed pawn immediately, in the hope that the capture with the queen would lead to an ending with opposite-colour bishops, and the capture with the knight to perpetual check: 41...♜xg5 42 ♔d6+ ♜g7 43 ♜e7+. Meanwhile, had he managed to defend his g5 pawn by h3-h4, he would have significantly improved his position.

42 ♜xe6 ♜xg3 43 ♜c8+ ♔e7 44 ♜g4

White would very much like to take the b7 pawn, but unexpectedly this leads to his immediate defeat, as this is a rare case of a king forcing back a queen: 44 ♜xb7+ ♔d8 45 ♜a8+ ♔c7 46 ♜a5+ ♔b6 when the queen is

attacked and mate at g1 is threatened. Even so, the previous check was useful for White. He has enticed the king to e7, and now the black queen cannot go to f2 in view of 45 ♜e2+, exchanging queens with an obvious draw.



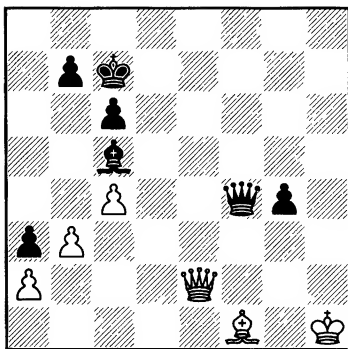
44...♜c3 45 ♔g2 ♜b2+ 46 ♜e2+ ♔d6 47 ♜f3 ♔c5 48 ♔e4 ♜d4+ 49 ♜f3 ♜f6+ 50 ♔g2 ♔c7 51 ♜f3 ♜b2+ 52 ♜e2 ♜d4 53 ♜f3

Neither player can take the initiative as regards exchanging queens. If White takes on b2, for Black to win it is sufficient for him to create another passed pawn on the kingside. If Black takes on e2, the maximum that he can achieve is to win the a2 pawn, but this fails to win the game, as at this point the white king goes to c2 and does not allow its opposite number to escape.

53...h5

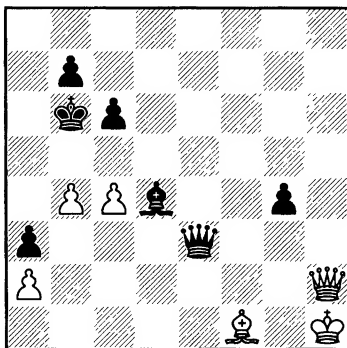
The last reserves join the battle.

54 ♔g2 g5 55 ♔g3 ♜f4+ 56 ♔g2 g4 57 hxg4 hxg4 58 ♔h1



At this point it appeared, not only to the spectators but also for an instant to the players, that Black would be unable to break his opponent's resourceful and stout resistance. If, for example, he advances his pawn to g3, then 59 ♔h3, and it is not clear how Black can strengthen his position. The winning idea is based on *zugzwang*.

58...♖b6 59 ♔g2 ♕c7 60 ♖h1  
 ♔d6 61 ♖g1 ♖b6 62 ♗g2 ♔c5+ 63  
 ♖h1 ♗h6+ 64 ♗h2 ♗e3 65 b4 ♔d4



White resigns, as after 66 c5+ ♖a7  
 67 ♗g2 g3 he runs out of moves.

## Game 21

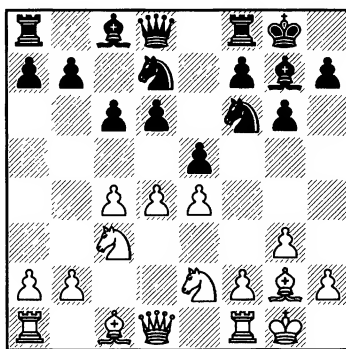
White: **David Bronstein**Black: **Max Blau***Olympiad, Munich 1958*

In this game we see an instructive example of the fact that a delay in developing the queen's rook and bishop is permissible only when the centre is closed or semi-closed. But if the centre is open you must play in accordance with the principles of open games!

1 d4 ♖f6 2 c4 d6 3 ♘c3 ♘bd7 4 e4  
 e5 5 ♘ge2

White develops his knight at e2; nowadays 5 ♘f3 is more usual.

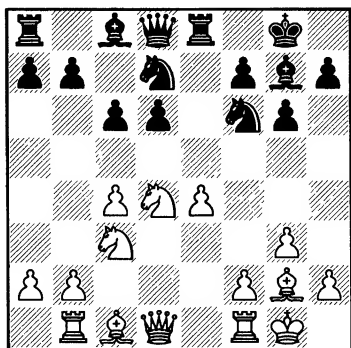
5...c6 6 g3 g6 7 ♗g2 ♔g7 8 0-0 0-0



9 ♗b1

This move is to escape from the pin on the long diagonal. I remembered well my games with Pachman and Zita, where White had problems on the a1-h8 and a7-g1 diagonals, and safeguarded myself beforehand (cf. also 11 ♖h1).

9...exd4 10 ♘xd4 ♖e8



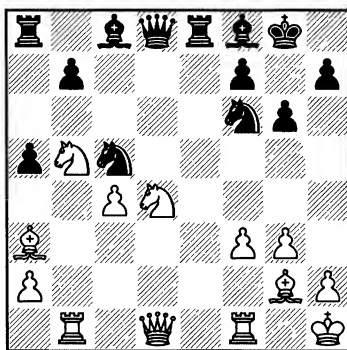
11 ♖h1

Avoiding the geometry of the Pachman and Zita games.

11...♗c5 12 f3 a5 13 b3 d5

White has allowed his opponent to play ...d6-d5, but has obtained the strong square b5 for his knight.

14 ♖a3 ♖f8 15 exd5 cxd5 16 ♗cb5 dxc4 17 bxc4

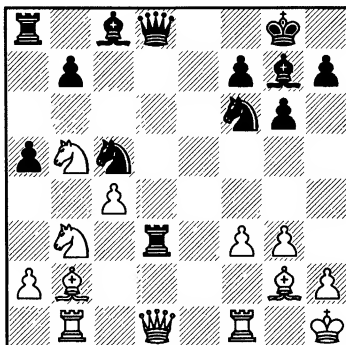


17...♖e3

Instead of this premature activity, Black should have played 17...♖d7. He is punished for failing to develop

his queen's bishop and rook – in an open position!

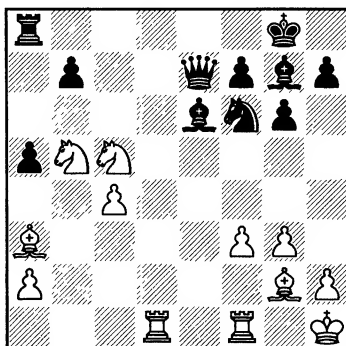
18 ♖b2 ♖g7 19 ♗b3 ♖d3



20 ♗xc5

I was able to carry out a combination with a queen sacrifice, thanks to the weakness of the d8 square.

20...♖xd1 21 ♖bxd1 ♖e7 22 ♖a3 ♖e6



23 ♗xe6

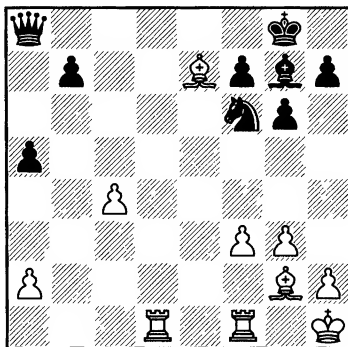
However, here I missed a simple win – 23 ♖fe1 ♖d8 24 ♖b1, when a possible finish is 24...♖e8 25 ♗c7 ♖c6 26 ♗7xe6 fxe6 27 f4 ♖c8 28

♙xb7 ♖b8 29 ♘a6 ♗a7 30 ♙c5, and the black queen is trapped.

23...♗xe6 24 ♘c7 ♖c8

Black in turn missed a good defence – 24...♗e3 25 ♙c1 ♖a7.

25 ♘xa8 ♖xa8 26 ♙e7



Black resigns

Game 22

White: David Bronstein

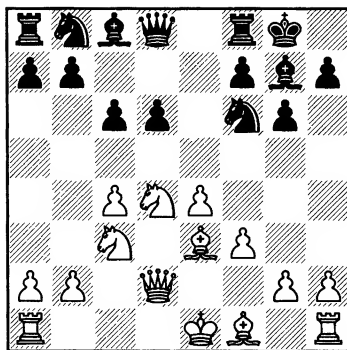
Black: Yuri Sakharov

USSR Team Championship

Moscow 1960

Not content with opening the position by exchanging pawns on d4, Black sometimes follows up with ...c7-c6 and ...d6-d5, with the intention of completely destroying White's pawn centre. And if the white king has not yet castled, this can lead to very sharp play.

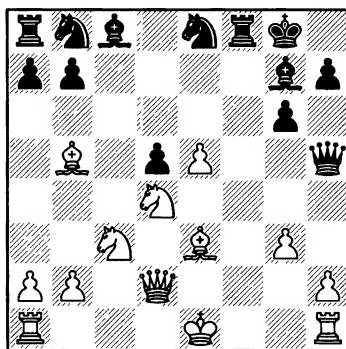
1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♘c3 ♙g7 4 e4 0-0  
5 ♙e3 d6 6 f3 e5 7 ♘ge2 c6 8 ♖d2  
exd4 9 ♘xd4



9...d5

Now White gains a space advantage. Perhaps Black should preface this advance with 9...♖e8, in order to prevent e4-e5.

10 cxd5 cxd5 11 e5 ♘e8 12 f4 f6  
13 ♙b5 fxе5 14 fxе5 ♖h4+ 15 g3  
♗h5



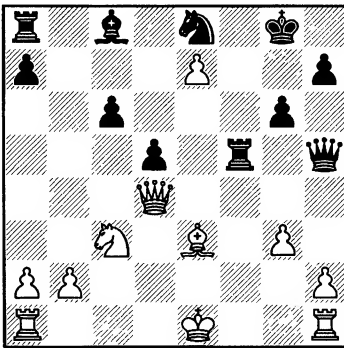
Team events have their own special flavour – the result of a game is of value not just to the player, but to his team. Black played his first 15 moves at lightning speed, but after 16 e6 he realised that he had been wrong to

allow this pawn advance. And although he thought for a long time, he was unable to find a defence. My opponent was a good theoretician, and all these moves were made in roughly one minute. Sakharov knew my game with Vasyukov from the 1956 Moscow Championship (Game A30), where I thought up the strange move 13  $\text{♙b5}$ , although it always seemed to me that White should be able to use his lead in development. Therefore, when my opponent checked on h4 and then quickly played his queen to h5, I was somewhat surprised, as I had never looked at this continuation, but I immediately realised that I had to advance my e-pawn.

16 e6

Apparently Black had completely failed to take this move into account, and he replied only after long thought.

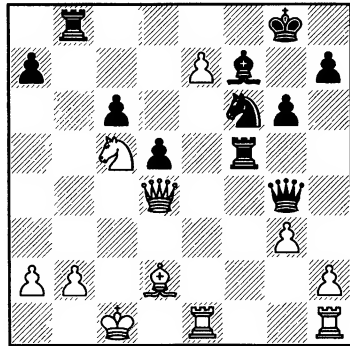
16... $\text{♙xd4}$  17 e7  $\text{♜f5}$  18  $\text{♚xd4}$   
 $\text{♜c6}$  19  $\text{♙xc6 bxc6}$



After these obvious moves came a highly interesting moment. The point is that when Sakharov played

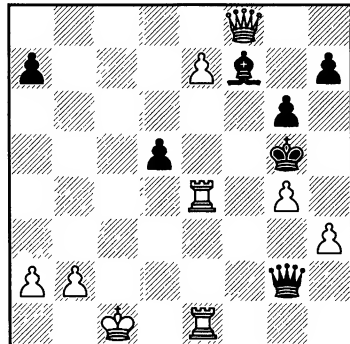
15... $\text{♚h5}$ , he thought that he had prevented the white king from castling on either side. But it turns out that the king feels perfectly happy at d2.

20  $\text{♙d2}$   $\text{♚h3}$  21  $\text{♜a1}$   $\text{♙e6}$  22  
 $\text{♜a4}$   $\text{♙f7}$  23  $\text{♙c1}$   $\text{♜b8}$  24  $\text{♙d2}$   $\text{♜f6}$   
 25  $\text{♜c5}$   $\text{♚g4}$



The conclusion of the game did not present any difficulties.

26  $\text{♙f4}$   $\text{♜b5}$  27 h3  $\text{♚f3}$  28  $\text{♜hf1}$   
 $\text{♚g2}$  29 g4  $\text{♜xc5+}$  30  $\text{♚xc5}$   $\text{♜e4}$  31  
 $\text{♚xc6}$   $\text{♜xf4}$  32  $\text{♚c8+}$   $\text{♙g7}$  33  $\text{♚f8+}$   
 $\text{♙f6}$  34  $\text{♜xf4+}$   $\text{♙g5}$  35  $\text{♜fxe4}$



**Black resigns**

## Game 23

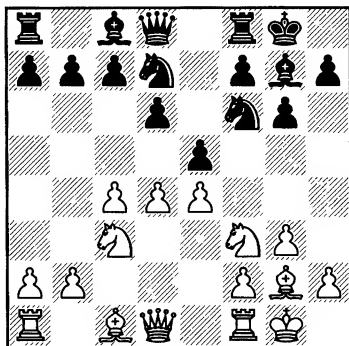
White: **Rafael Vaganian**Black: **David Bronstein**

USSR Zonal Tournament

Vilnius 1975

In the present game Black succeeded with all the ideas of the King's Indian Defence. I recommend that you also look at the game Kotov-Geller, 17th USSR Championship, Moscow 1949 (Game A11), where Black gained similar play on the queenside, and he had the opportunity for a similar queen sacrifice.

1  $\text{d}f3$   $\text{d}f6$  2  $\text{c}4$   $\text{g}6$  3  $\text{d}c3$   $\text{e}g7$  4  $\text{g}3$   
 0-0 5  $\text{e}g2$   $\text{d}6$  6 0-0  $\text{e}5$  7  $\text{d}4$   $\text{b}d7$  8  
 $\text{e}4$



## 8...a6

This move has an interesting history. By that time I was tired of always playing 8...c6. I made a similar move back in 1947 against Flohr, although in a different variation with the development of the white bishop at f4. There I played ...c7-c6, ...a7-a6

and ...b7-b5. It seemed to me that I had introduced a new method in the King's Indian: earlier Black used to play only on the kingside, and thought that on the queenside his pawns should stand still. But I began playing also with these pawns.

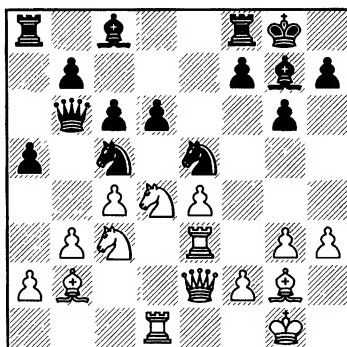
9  $\text{f}e1$ 

The standard move 9 h3 can be met by 9...b5, with play against the e4 pawn.

9...c6 10  $\text{b}3$   $\text{e}xd4$  11  $\text{d}xd4$   $\text{d}g4$ 

This move is not new, but in this position I played it only once – in the present game. This manoeuvre has become possible, because White has not managed to play h2-h3. Now the black knights occupy the key squares in the centre.

12  $\text{e}b2$   $\text{d}c5$  13  $\text{h}3$   $\text{d}e5$  14  $\text{f}e3$   
 $\text{b}b6$  15  $\text{e}e2$   $\text{a}5$  16  $\text{d}d1$



## 16...a4

The bold advance of the white f-pawn had to be supported by an accurate calculation of the main variation 17...axb3. This is what White did,

preparing a pretty stroke two moves later where his knight was placed *en prise* to a black pawn. Black's actions were forced – a counter-sacrifice of his queen led to an interesting combative battle.

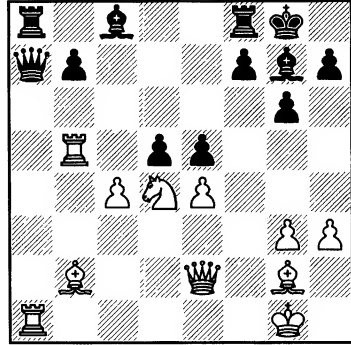
Instead of 16...a4 it was more correct to bring the king's rook into play by 16...♖e8. It should be said that, with regard to so-called 'correct play', there are two points of view: for example, the present generation always looks at the diagram and evaluates the position on the basis of various indicators, forgetting that, when you are playing, it is not a diagram that you see, but the pieces and your opponent. Moreover, your pieces are close to you, whereas the opponent's are a little further away, and the position in his brain looks completely different.

For some reason I did not want to retreat the knight to d7 after 17 f4. Now I would have retreated the knight without thinking. But at the time I saw the opportunity for a stunning combination – this is the essence of the King's Indian Defence, a variety of combinations that you are unable to calculate exactly.

**17 f4 axb3 18 axb3**

After 18 fxe5 bxa2 19 exd6 ♕xd4 20 ♖xd4 ♖xb2 21 ♖xb2 a1♖+ 22 ♖xa1 ♖xa1+ Black would have regained the piece, with equal chances.

**18...♗xb3 19 ♗d5 cxd5 20 ♖xb3 ♖c5 21 ♖b5 ♖a7 22 fxe5 dxe5 23 ♖a1**



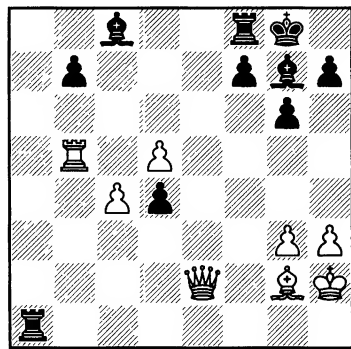
**23...♖xa1+**

This queen sacrifice is not only forced, but also desirable. At this point I was happy, as out of a dull initial position I had managed to create some obscure complications.

**24 ♕xa1 ♖xa1+**

Again the rook has come directly into play from its initial square a8.

**25 ♖h2 exd4 26 exd5**

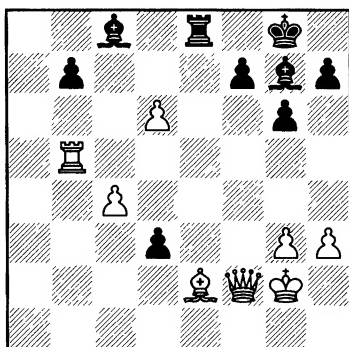


Black has an ideal king, defended by bishop and pawns, as well as the two bishops and a strong passed pawn, whereas White's pieces are

passive and his king is insecure. Incidentally, in the Moscow Championship, in a Dutch Defence against Balashov, I once sacrificed my queen in very similar fashion. And many years later Balashov praised me: 'what a fine game you won against me!'

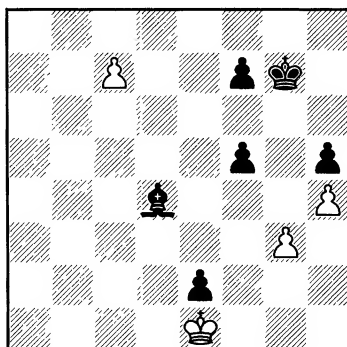
Here Black's position was easily won, and in various ways, but due to shortage of time he messed it up.

26...♖a3 (thus 26...♙f5 was very strong) 27 d6 ♜e3 28 ♜f2 ♜fe8 29 ♙f3 d3 30 ♘g2 ♜e2 31 ♙xe2



And here Black should have taken with the pawn: 31...dxe2 32 ♜b1 ♙c3 33 ♜e1 ♙xe1 34 ♜xe1 ♙d7.

31...♜xe2 32 ♜xe2 dxe2 33 ♘f2 ♙e6 34 ♜xb7 ♙f6 35 c5 ♙c4 36 d7 ♘g7 37 ♜b1 ♙d3 38 ♜c1 ♙d4+ 39 ♘f3 ♙b2 40 d8=♜ ♙xc1 41 ♜d4+ ♘g8 42 ♜d8+ ♘g7 43 ♜a5 ♙g5 44 ♘f2 ♙f6 45 c6 h5 46 h4 ♙d4+ 47 ♘e1 ♙f5 48 ♜xf5 gxf5 49 c7



Black resigns



## White closes the centre with d4-d5

With d4-d5 White cramps his opponent, but also restricts his own possibilities: for example, his knight can no longer go to d5. With this pawn advance he fixes the d6 pawn and after suitable preparation he is ready to attack it by c4-c5. Black has a choice:

(a) Leaving his c7 pawn on its initial square, he can reply with an immediate counterattack: ... $\text{f6-h5}$  (... $\text{f6-d7}$ , ... $\text{f6-e8}$ ) and ... $\text{f7-f5-f4}$ , or first play ... $\text{a7-a5}$ , for the moment preventing b2-b4.

(b) He can play ... $\text{c7-c6}$  and then exchange pawns with ... $\text{c6xd5}$  at a moment when it is unfavourable for White to recapture with his knight (e.g. because the e4 pawn is lost), or with his e4 pawn (because of the possible attack ... $\text{f7-f5}$  and ... $\text{e5-e4}$ ). After  $\text{c4xd5}$  the threat of the c4-c5 attack has been eliminated. On the other hand, Black now has other problems: the c-file has been opened and White may double rooks with the aim of invading at c7.

(c) He can physically prevent the advance of the white c-pawn by playing ... $\text{c7-c5}$ , before proceeding with his counterattack on the kingside.

## Black keeps his pawn at c7

Game 24

White: **Georgy Lisitsyn**

Black: **David Bronstein**

*13th USSR Championship*

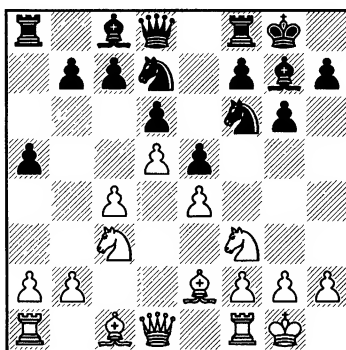
*Moscow 1944*

earlier, but when the white bishop is developed at e2 I do not like to take on d4.

This game demonstrates one of the ways for Black to play against the closed centre.

1  $\text{f3}$   $\text{f6}$  2  $\text{c4}$   $\text{d6}$  3  $\text{d4}$   $\text{bd7}$  4  $\text{c3}$   
 e5 5  $\text{e4}$   $\text{g6}$  6  $\text{e2}$   $\text{g7}$  7 0-0 0-0 8  $\text{d5}$   
 a5

Black prepares ... $\text{c5}$  by for the moment preventing b2-b4. White, in turn, is ready to evict the knight from c5 by  $\text{e1-d3}$ , or to exchange it. Of course, I could have exchanged on d4

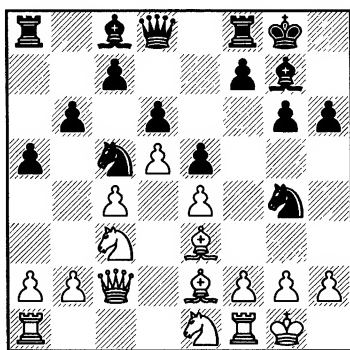


9  $\text{e1}$   $\text{c5}$

It used to be thought that, when

Black's knight reached c5, he achieved a good position. After all, I was not the first and not the tenth person to play the King's Indian. It was employed by Capablanca and the English Champion Yates, and it was played by Réti, Euwe, Chigorin and even Tarrasch. But it should be realised that this is a good position only compared with the Queen's Gambit, where you are down on your knees, awaiting the invasion of a knight at e5, the doubling of rooks, and so on.

10 ♖c2 b6 11 ♙g5 h6 12 ♙e3  
 ♘g4

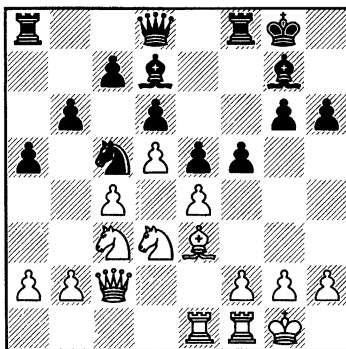


Georgy Lisitsyn was a very strong player, who wrote three excellent books – on the opening, middlegame and endgame. I confidently played 12...♘g4, and was very surprised by the exchange of first one bishop for a knight, and then the other.

13 ♙xg4 ♙xg4 14 ♘d3 ♙d7

Today, of course, I would have taken the knight at d3 and then played ...♙d7.

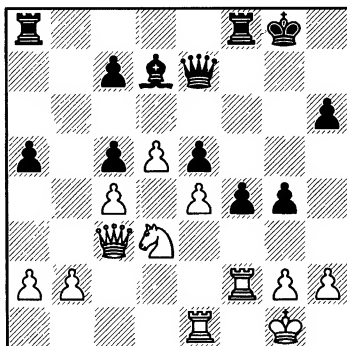
15 ♞ae1 f5



16 ♙xc5 bxc5 17 f4

A brilliant decision by White – he captured with his bishop (!) on c5 and then played f2-f4. I found myself in a very difficult position, and did not know what to do. In general, at that time I was not afraid of ending up in difficulties, as I always believed that I would find something! That was also the case in the present game.

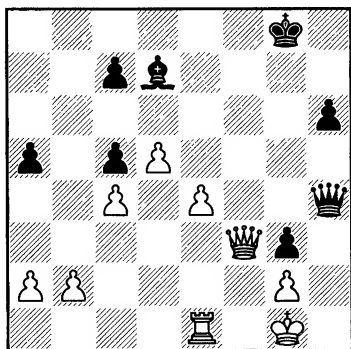
17...exf4 18 ♞xf4 ♙e5 19 ♘xe5  
 dxe5 20 ♞f2 f4 21 ♘e2 g5 22 ♖c3  
 ♗e7 23 ♘c1 g4 24 ♘d3



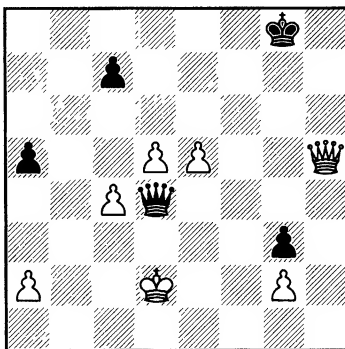
24...g3

The only way to gain some play.

25 hxg3 fxg3 26 ♖xf8+ ♖xf8 27  
♜xe5 ♜h4 28 ♜f3 ♖xf3 29 ♜xf3



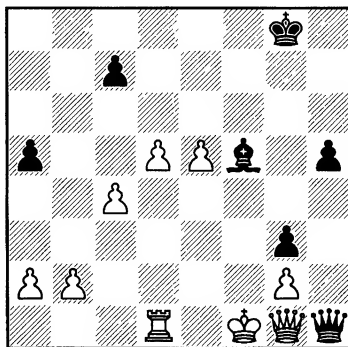
♖d1 ♜xd1 42 ♜xd1 ♜xb2 43 ♜xh5  
♜f2+ 44 ♜d1 ♜d4+ 45 ♜e2 ♜e4+  
46 ♜d2 ♜d4+



### 29...h5

We were both in severe time trouble, with about a minute each for our last fifteen moves. At the time I was very proud of this move.

30 ♜e3 ♜g4 31 e5 ♜f5 32 ♖d1  
♜h2+ 33 ♜f1 ♜h1+ 34 ♜g1 ♜h4 35  
♜xc5 ♜h1+ 36 ♜g1



36...♜h4 37 ♖d4 ♜g4 38 ♖d2  
♜g5 39 ♜d4 ♜f5+ 40 ♜e1 ♜b1+ 41

### Draw agreed

#### Game 25

White: **Cenek Kottnauer**

Black: **David Bronstein**

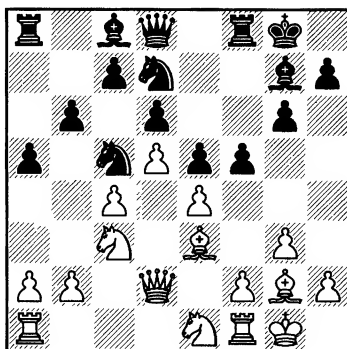
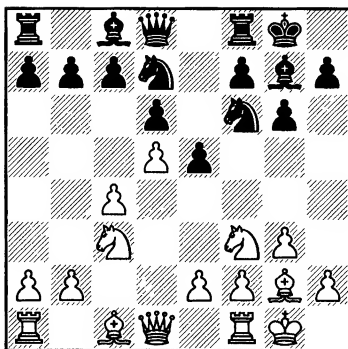
*Prague v. Moscow (round 11)*

*Moscow 1946*

This game is from our historic match with the Czechoslovak team, which took place half in Prague and half in Moscow.

My opponent, an intelligent, clever, athletic man, also played water polo. Then at some point he travelled to a tournament in England, fell in love with a beautiful Englishwoman, and decided to settle down there.

1 ♜f3 ♜f6 2 c4 d6 3 g3 g6 4 ♜g2  
♜g7 5 0-0 ♜bd7 6 d4 e5 7 ♜c3 0-0 8  
d5



White closes the centre and aims later to build up an attack against Black's queenside. Kottnauer had of course seen my games with Pachman and Zita, and therefore he did not want to play e2-e4, which allows a possible ...e5xd4.

After the immediate closing of the centre Black's only feasible reply is ...a7-a5 and ...c5.

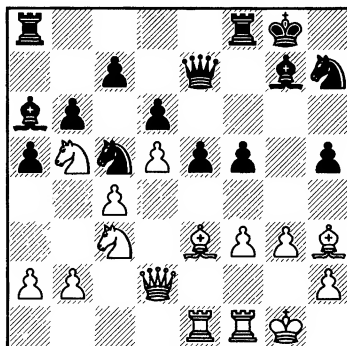
**8...a5 9 e4 c5 10 e1 e1 fd7**

Black's plan is to advance ...f7-f5, and then possibly ...f5-f4 with an attack on the kingside. A nuance of the given variation is that, as long as the white queen is at d1, Black cannot play ...h5, since after the thematic ...f7-f5, e4xf5 he cannot reply ...g6xf5. Therefore he has to retreat his knight to d7 or e8, play ...f7-f5 and then return the knight to f6.

**11 e3 f5 12 f7 d2 b6**

With the aim of answering e3xc5 with ...b6xc5, but this is an unnecessary move that conclusively weakens the light squares on the queenside, and Kottnauer later exploits this factor.

**13 c2 a6 14 a3 f6 15 exf5  
gxf5 16 f3 e7 17 a1 h5 18 ab5  
h7 19 h3**



**19...a1e8**

19...f7 is bad because of 20 f4 and if 20...e4 21 e3xc5 bxc5 22 xe4.

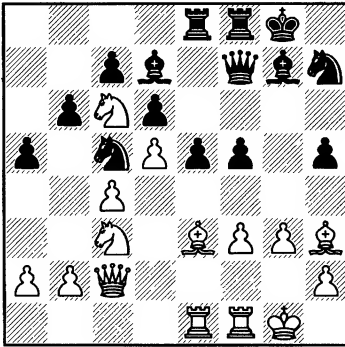
**20 c2 e3 21 a7**

Kottnauer thought that 21 a3 followed by b2-b4 would have been better. However, Black would have replied 21...f7 22 b4 b7.

**21...e3 22 c6**

If 22 cb5 Black has the good reply 22...a6.

22...♖f7



23 b3 ♖xc6 24 dxc6 ♗e6 25 ♗d5

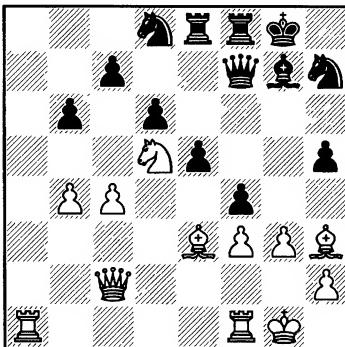
White sacrifices his c6 pawn, obtaining a strong position for his knight at d5 and a dangerous attack on the queenside.

25...♗d8 26 a3 ♗xc6 27 b4 axb4 28 axb4 ♗d8

Not 28...♗d4 in view of 29 ♖xd4 exd4 30 ♖xf5

29 ♖a1 f4

If 29...♗e6 30 ♖a7 with the threat of ♖xb6. Now White cannot play 30 gxf4 because of 30...exf4.



30 ♖a7

Brilliantly played.

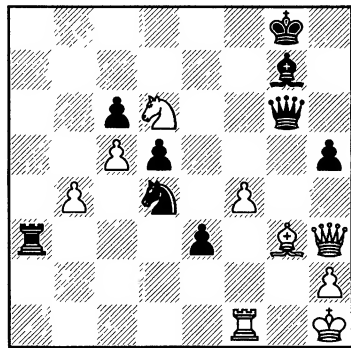
30...♗g5 31 ♖c8 ♗ge6

Time trouble, time trouble. And, of course, fatigue. It is not easy constantly to maintain the tension of a combinative game. After 31...fxe3 32 ♖xc7 ♗xf3+ 33 ♖h1 ♖xc7 34 ♗xc7 ♗d4 35 ♖xf8+ (35 ♖d3 ♖xf1+ 36 ♖xf1 ♖f8 37 ♖e1 e2 38 ♖h3 ♖h6) 35...♖xf8 36 ♖d3 e2 Black would have emerged unscathed. But where to find the seconds needed to calculate these variations? Accepting the sacrifice (31...fxe3) would have led to undesirable complications, and so Black chooses a quieter continuation, by which he maintains some initiative.

32 ♖xe6 ♗xe6 33 ♖xb6 ♖a8 34 ♖xa8 ♖xa8 35 ♖f2 fvg3

35...♖a3 came into consideration.

36 ♖xg3 ♗d4 37 ♖g2 c6 38 ♗b6 ♖a6 39 c5 ♖a2 40 ♖h3 d5 41 ♖h1 ♖a3 42 f4 e4 43 ♗c8 e3 44 ♗d6 ♖g6



45 b5

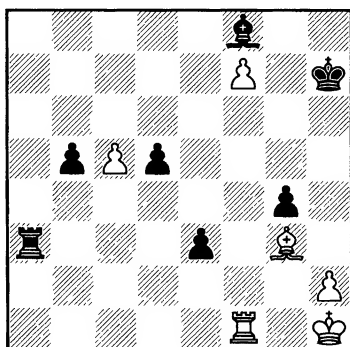
A clever idea. White defends very resourcefully and causes his opponent

the utmost difficulty in achieving any real gains.

45... ♖xb5

Not 45... cxb5 in view of 46 f5 ♖g4 47 ♖g2. With the text move Black forces a favourable ending.

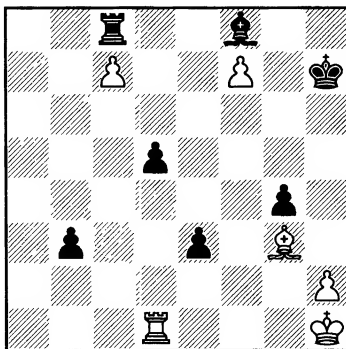
46 f5 ♖g4 47 ♖xg4 hxg4 48 f6 ♙f8 49 ♖xb5 cxb5 50 f7+ ♔h7



51 c6

Although this ending appears to be a simple win, it contains many latent possibilities, and demands of Black very careful play and precise calculation. The win for him is not hard after 51 ♙d6, e.g. 51... ♙g7 52 ♙e5+ ♔g6 53 ♙d6 e2 54 ♖e1 ♙xd6 55 cxd6 ♔xf7 56 ♖xe2 ♖a6 57 ♖b2 ♖xd6 58 ♖xb5 d4, but 51 ♖c1 sets more difficult problems. Here after 51...d4 52 c6 d3 53 c7 ♖a8 54 c8 ♖x8 55 ♖xc8 d2 56 ♖d8 b4 57 ♔g2 b3 it is unexpectedly White who wins: 58 ♖xf8 d1 ♖ 59 ♖h8+. Therefore after 51 ♖c1 Black would have continued 51...b4 52 c6 ♖a8 as in the game.

51...b4 52 ♖c1 ♖a8 53 c7 ♖c8 54 ♖d1 b3



This is the idea – the pawns are immune.

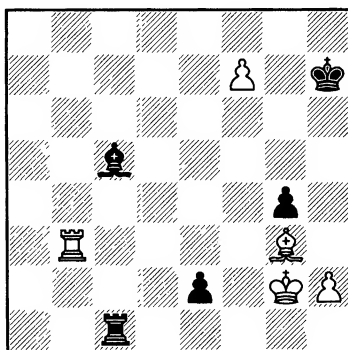
55 ♖xd5

Now White loses quickly. The best defence was 55 ♔g2 b2 56 ♔f1, but after 56... ♙g6 57 ♔e2 ♔xf7 58 ♔xe3 ♔e6 Black should in the end win with his extra pawn.

55...e2 56 ♖b5

56 ♖d2 also fails to save the game after 56... ♖xc7 57 ♖xe2 ♖xf7.

56... ♖xc7 57 ♖xb3 ♖c1+ 58 ♔g2 ♙c5



A pretty concluding manoeuvre, in a position where White was still hoping to draw. If instead 58...e1♚ 59 ♙xe1 ♖xe1 60 h3 and Black's extra bishop is unlikely to help him to win.

But now after 59 h3 there follows 59...♖g1+ 60 ♖h2 ♖xg3 and wins, while if 59 ♙f2 ♙xf2 60 f8♚ ♖g1+ 61 ♖xf2 e1♚ mate.

**White resigns**

Game 26

White: **Alexander Kotov**

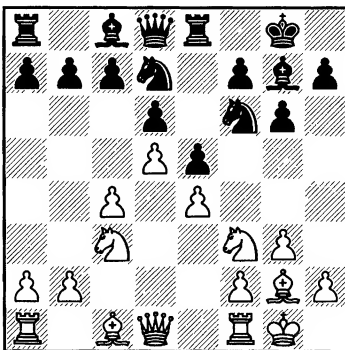
Black: **David Bronstein**

*Candidates Tournament*

*Zurich 1953*

A game abounding in various strategic and tactical motifs, where White persistently aims to break through on the queenside, and Black equally persistently strives for an attack on the king.

1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 g6 3 g3 ♙g7 4 ♙g2 0-0  
5 ♘c3 d6 6 ♘f3 ♘bd7 7 0-0 e5 8 e4  
♖e8 9 d5



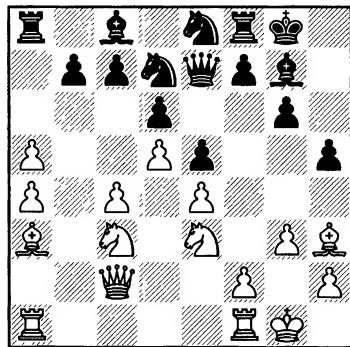
9...a6 10 ♘d1 ♖b8 11 ♘c2 ♚e7

After the closing of the centre Black appeared to be preparing play on the b-file. But when White made preparations to oppose this, Black began large-scale manoeuvres on the other side of the board. Why did I avoid playing 11...b5? Because White would have replied 12 cxb5 axb5 13 ♘b4, when Black is left with a weak b5 pawn and a paralysed queenside.

12 b4 ♖f8 13 ♘e3 ♘e8 14 ♚c2  
♘df6 15 a4 a5

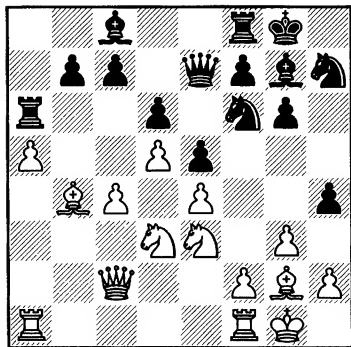
An important move, otherwise White himself would have advanced his a-pawn, and then opened one of the queenside files (b- or c-).

16 bxa5 ♖a8 17 ♙a3 ♘d7 18 ♙h3  
h5



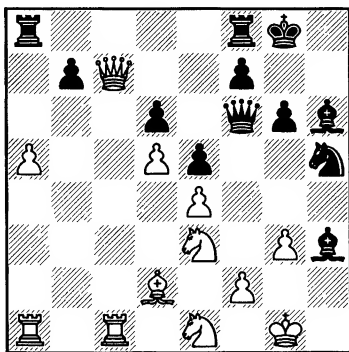
The advance of this pawn enabled me to include my knight in the play on the kingside via the route ...♘e8-f6-h7-g5.

19 ♘cd1 ♖a5 20 ♘b2 ♘ef6 21  
♙b4 ♖a6 22 a5 ♘h7 23 ♙g2 h4 24  
♘d3 ♘df6



A sharp, dynamic battle has developed, with approximate equilibrium. But, as is known, ideally correct play in chess does not happen! Here, carried away by my manoeuvres on the kingside, I allow White to break through on the queenside, which 24...♖c5 would have prevented.

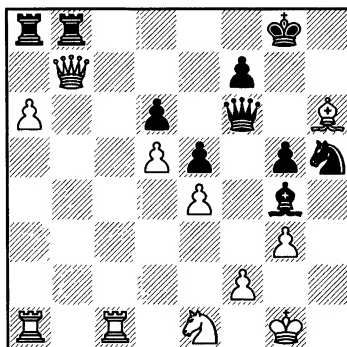
25 c5 ♖g5 26 ♜c4 ♙h6 27 ♙d2 ♜a8 28 ♜fc1 ♗h5 29 cxd6 cxd6 30 ♜c7 ♜f6 31 ♗e1 hxg3 32 hxg3 ♗h3+ 33 ♙xh3 ♙xh3



### 34 ♗g4

The immediate 34 ♜xb7 would have allowed the knight sacrifice 34...♗xg3 35 fxg3 ♙xe3+ and 36...♜f1+, closing in on the white king.

34...♙xg4 35 ♙xh6 ♜fc8 36 ♜xb7 ♜cb8 37 a6 g5



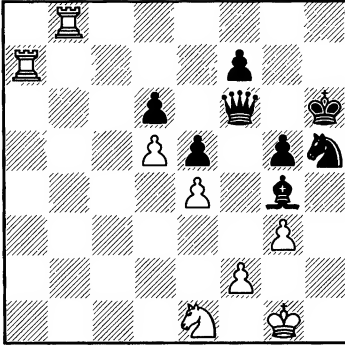
### 38 ♜xb8+

I have given too much freedom to the white a-pawn, and here I could have lost to a pretty combination: 38 ♜cb1 ♜xb7 39 axb7 ♜b8 40 ♜a8 ♜d8 41 ♙xg5 f6 42 ♜xb8 ♜xb8 43 ♙e3 ♙c8 44 ♙a7 ♜xb7 45 ♜xb7 ♙xb7 46 ♙b8, attacking the pawns from the rear.

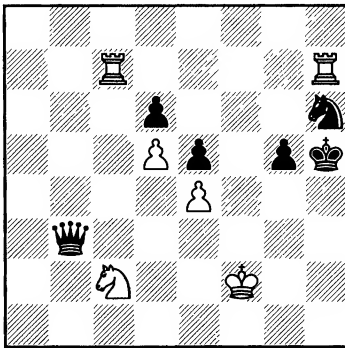
38...♜xb8 39 a7 ♜a8 40 ♜cb1 ♗h7 41 ♜b8 ♜xa7 42 ♜xa7 ♗xh6

After Kotov failed to take his chance and the game was adjourned, on the resumption Black several times missed a win. However, he cannot make any progress without sacrificing one of his minor pieces.





43 ♖bb7 ♔g6 44 f3 ♕c8 45 ♖c7  
 ♗d8 46 g4 ♜f6 47 ♔g2 ♕d7 48 ♜c2  
 ♕xg4 49 fxg4 ♜xg4 50 ♖xf7 ♗b6 51  
 ♖g7+ ♔h5 52 ♖h7+ ♜h6 53 ♖ac7  
 ♗b3 54 ♔f2



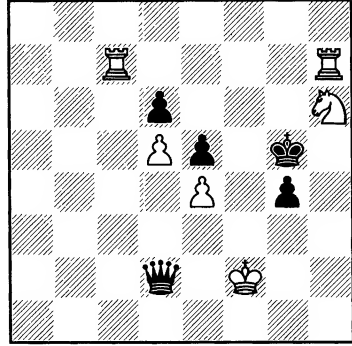
54...g4

Here, for example: 54...♗d3 55  
 ♜e3 ♗d2+ would have won.

55 ♜e3 ♗d3

And here 55...♔g5 56 ♖cg7+ ♔f4  
 57 ♜g2+ ♔xe4 58 ♖hx6 g3+.

56 ♜f5 ♗f3+ 57 ♔g1 ♗d1+ 58  
 ♔f2 ♔g5 59 ♜hx6 ♗d2+



Draw agreed

Game 27

White: **Harry Golombek**

Black: **David Bronstein**

*Great Britain v. USSR*

*London 1954*

This game was played on board two  
 in the second round of this double-  
 round match, one of a series of  
 meetings between the USSR and  
 foreign teams during 1954.

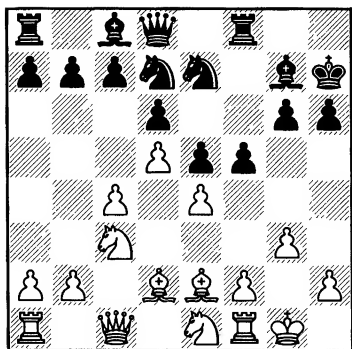
1 c4 ♜f6 2 d4 g6 3 ♜c3 ♕g7 4 e4 d6  
 5 ♜f3 0-0 6 ♕e2 e5 7 0-0 ♜c6 8 d5  
 ♜e7

A modern variation played in a  
 game nearly half a century ago.

9 ♕g5 h6 10 ♕d2

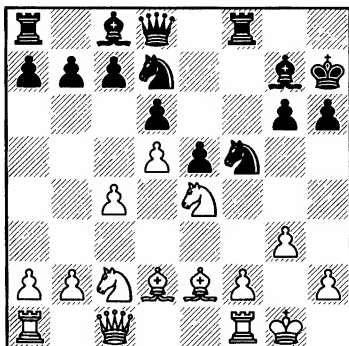
White deliberately forced a weak-  
 ening of the castled position (9...h6),  
 considering it useful for him.

10...♜d7 11 ♗c1 ♔h7 12 ♜e1 f5  
 13 g3

**13...fxe4**

It is interesting that here Black plays somewhat against the rules – he allows the white knight to occupy the blockading square e4, but on the other hand he also transfers his own knight to the centre. This occurred for the first time in the present game. It had happened before that White himself captured on f5 and Black took with the knight, but this is not exactly the same thing.

14 ♖xe4 ♜f5 15 ♘c2

**15...c6**

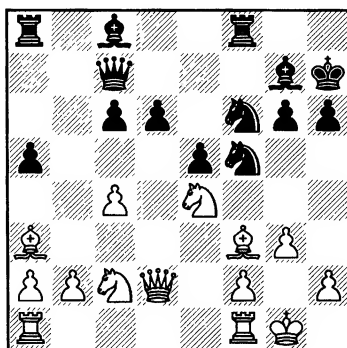
Here Black has to play very accurately. He begins dislodging the knight from e4 by ...c7-c6 and ...d6-d5.

I often employed the procedure seen in the present game – that of hiding my king behind a bishop and two pawns (for the king two pawns are enough!). One rook operates on the open f-file, and again the queen's rook and queen's bishop do not come into play for a long time.

**16 dxc6**

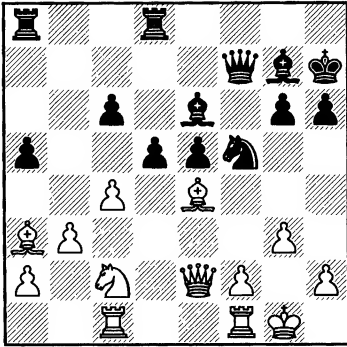
With 15...c6 Black invited 16 g4, but after 16...♗d4 17 ♘xd4 exd4 18 ♘xd6 d3 19 ♙d1 ♜e5 White's position is hard to defend.

16...bxc6 17 ♙b4 ♜f6 18 ♙f3 a5  
19 ♙a3 ♖c7 20 ♖d2

**20...♗d8**

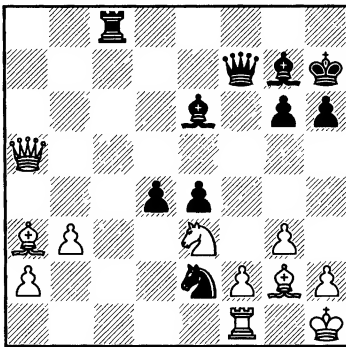
The battle is proceeding as follows: White attacks the d6 pawn (Black's main weakness in the King's Indian!), and Black accurately defends it. Hence this very unusual move.

21 ♖ac1 ♙e6 22 ♖e2 ♖f7 23 b3  
♘xe4 24 ♙xe4 d5



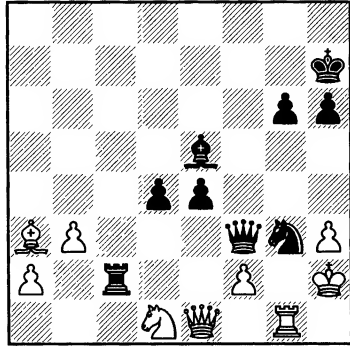
With this move Black seizes the initiative and successfully makes use of his central pawns, and thereby (with ...e5-e4) shuts the opponent's light-square bishop out of the game.

25 cxd5 cxd5 26 ♖g2 ♜ac8 27 ♜a6 e4 28 ♖e3 ♘d4 29 ♜xc8 ♜xc8 30 ♜xa5 ♖e2+ 31 ♔h1 d4



The culmination of Black's strategy – like an ice-breaker the central pawns split White's position in two.

32 ♘d1 ♖g4 33 h3 ♖f3 34 ♜e1 ♜c2 35 ♔h2 ♖xg2 36 ♔xg2 ♜f3+ 37 ♔h2 ♖e5 38 ♜g1 ♘g3



White resigns

#### Game 28

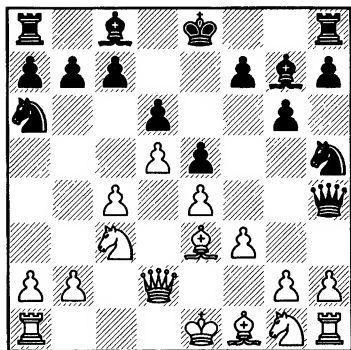
White: **Boris Spassky**  
 Black: **David Bronstein**  
*Candidates Tournament  
 Amsterdam 1956*

In this game I was able to introduce an original queen sacrifice. Asked at the time about my evaluation of the resulting position, I replied that I considered the sacrifice to be correct, and that subsequently there would be players willing to take the side of either White or Black. I myself played the variation again nearly 40 years later in a simultaneous (Game A62).

1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♘c3 ♖g7 4 e4 d6 5 f3 e5 6 d5 ♘h5 7 ♖e3 ♘a6

I do not like moving my knights to the edge of the board, but in this game I exceeded the norm – in the space of two moves both knights have ended up there.

8 ♜d2 ♜h4+

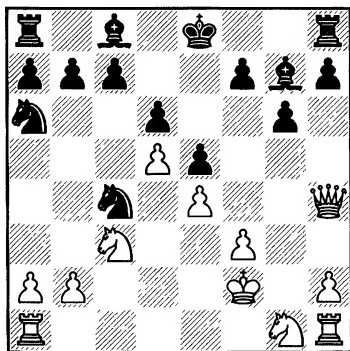


After this move I was convinced that White should play either 9 ♖f2 or 9 ♕f2. But Spassky confidently advanced his g-pawn, which I took with my knight.

9 g3 ♖xg3

In many magazines this move was proclaimed as virtually the move of the century. I wanted to demonstrate that the two bishops are a great force. It seems to me that subsequently Spassky did not play very well.

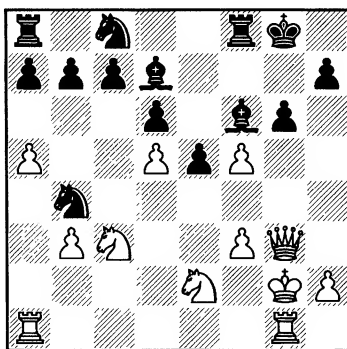
10 ♖f2 ♖xf1 11 ♖xh4 ♖xe3 12 ♖f2 ♖xc4



13 b3 ♖b6 14 ♖ge2 f5 15 ♖hg1 0-0 16 ♖g2 ♕d7 17 a4 ♕f6 18 ♖g3 ♖b4 19 a5 ♖c8

Here I expected any move by White (e.g., 20 ♖h1 or 20 ♖ad1), apart from the capture on f5. When Spassky in fact played this, I became nervous and took with the bishop.

20 exf5



20...♕xf5

But Black had available a very powerful move – 20...♖e7!, with the possible sequel 21 ♖e4 (or 21 fxg6 ♖f5 22 ♖e1 ♖c2) 21...♖xf5 22 ♖xf6+ ♖xf6 23 ♖g5 ♖af8 when he has a very strong position. There is a mass of threats – ...♖d4, ...♖c2 and ...♖d3. It seems to me that here Black's position is considerably better, as his pieces are dominant.

21 ♖a4

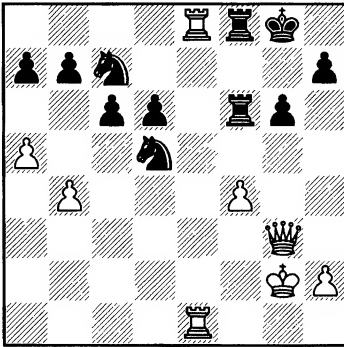
I became further rattled after this move – subsequently I could have played much better.

21...♖d3

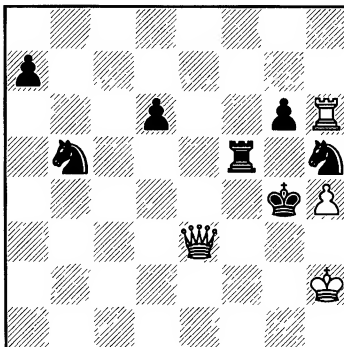
Thus either 21...♖c2 or else the immediate 21...♖a6 was preferable.

22 ♖c4 ♜c5 23 ♞e4 ♞a6 24  
 ♜xf6+ ♖xf6 25 f4 e4 26 ♜c3 ♞e7 27  
 ♖e1 ♖af8 28 b4 c6 29 ♞xe4 ♙xe4+  
 30 ♖cx4 ♞xd5 31 ♖e8 ♞ac7

And here the obvious 31...♞xf4+  
 and 32...♞xb4 would have offered  
 better chances of resisting.



32 ♖xf8+ ♙xf8 33 ♙h1 ♖f5 34  
 ♖h4 ♞f6 35 ♖f2 ♞b5 36 ♖e2 ♞d5  
 37 a6 bxa6 38 ♖e8+ ♙g7 39 ♖xc6  
 ♙h6 40 ♖xa6 ♞xb4 41 ♖b7 ♞d3 42  
 ♖e7 ♞xf4 43 ♖xh7+ ♙g5 44 ♖e7+  
 ♙g4 45 ♖e3 ♙g5 46 h4+ ♙g4 47  
 ♙h2 ♞h5 48 ♖h6



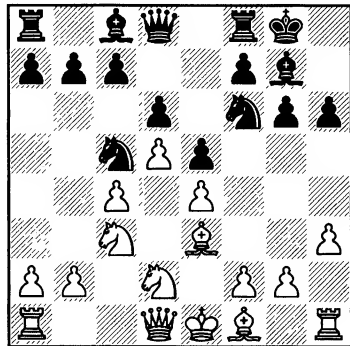
**Black resigns.**

Black lost this game, but the idea  
 of the queen sacrifice remains viable  
 to this day.

Game 29  
 White: **David Bronstein**  
 Black: **Albert Kapengut**  
 40th USSR Championship  
 Baku 1972

My opponent had already established  
 something of a reputation as a  
 theoretician, but in this game a basic  
 opening error led eventually to his  
 defeat.

1 c4 ♞f6 2 ♞f3 g6 3 ♞c3 ♙g7 4 e4  
 0-0 5 d4 d6 6 h3 e5 7 d5 ♞a6 8 ♙g5  
 h6 9 ♙e3 ♞c5 10 ♞d2

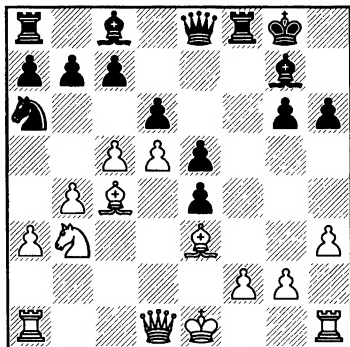


10...♞h7 11 b4 ♞a6

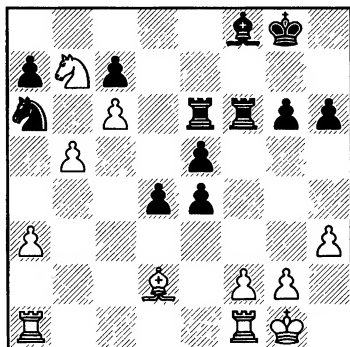
This game illustrates how a piece  
 can be shut out of the game. In the  
 given case it was the black knight at

a6. Essentially for the entire game White was playing with an extra piece. Black could have prevented this by the standard move 10...a5.

12 a3 f5 13 ♘b3 ♘f6 14 c5 ♗xe4  
15 ♗xe4 fxe4 16 ♖c4 ♖e8



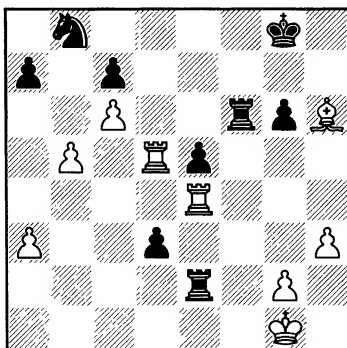
17 c6 bxc6 18 dxc6+ ♖e6 19  
♖xe6+ ♖xe6 20 ♗a5 d5 21 ♖b3 ♖f6  
22 0-0 ♖d8 23 ♗b7 ♖e8 24 b5 d4 25  
♖xe6+ ♖xe6 26 ♖d2 ♖f8



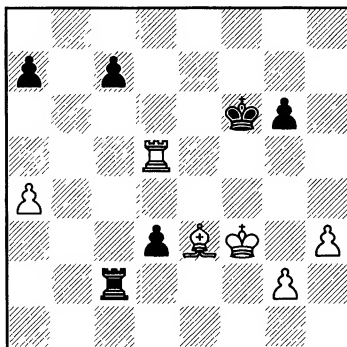
Here there was another important point: Black has obtained three pawns

in the centre, but the white rooks are able to outflank and eliminate them, because Black is playing a piece down.

27 ♖fc1 ♗b8 28 ♗c5 ♖xc5 29  
♖xc5 ♖f5 30 ♖e1 ♖ef6 31 ♖xe4 ♖xf2  
32 ♖xh6 d3 33 ♖d5 ♖e2



34 ♖xe5 ♗xc6 35 bxc6 ♖xe5 36  
♖xe5 ♖xc6 37 ♖e3 ♖c3 38 ♖f2 ♖f7  
39 a4 ♖c2+ 40 ♖f3 ♖f6 41 ♖d5



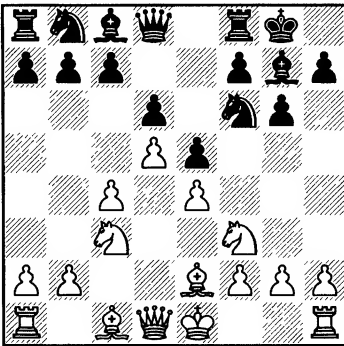
**Black resigns**

## Game 30

White: **Olafur Thorsson**Black: **David Bronstein***Reykjavik Open 1996*

This game went unnoticed by the theoreticians, although Black employed a rare manoeuvre with his king's knight: ...♞g8-f6-d7-c5. Usually it is his queen's knight that goes to c5.

1 d4 ♟f6 2 ♟f3 g6 3 c4 ♟g7 4 ♟c3  
0-0 5 e4 d6 6 ♟e2 e5 7 d5



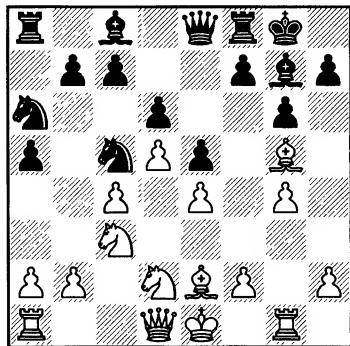
When White closes the centre, you as Black have several options, depending on your mood and your imagination. You can play 7...♞bd7 then ...♞c5, and wait, to see what White will play. You can even make the quiet move 7...♞e7 or the aggressive 7...♞h5. You do not close the centre by 7...c5, as you want to keep open the option of the undermining move ...c7-c6. But if you play 7...c6 immediately, then after the inevitable exchange ...c6xd5, c4xd5 the white knight acquires the good

square c4. The difference between this variation, and the one with the fianchetto of the bishop at g2, is that there it is harder for White to establish his knight at c4.

## 7...a5

In chess there is always a slight air of uncertainty – you never know whether you are losing a move, or gaining one. Thus here 7...a5 is either a competent move, or it is a waste of time – suppose that the knight does not go to c5, suppose that it is not needed there? Perhaps the immediate 7...♞e8 would be better? In undetermined positions such as this one (White has not yet castled) I have always harboured doubts: you play 7...♞e8, and the opponent unexpectedly advances his h-pawn. Then you have to play ...h7-h6, to avoid the opening of the h-file.

8 ♟g5 ♞e8 9 ♟d2 ♟fd7 10 g4  
♞c5 11 ♟g1 ♟ba6



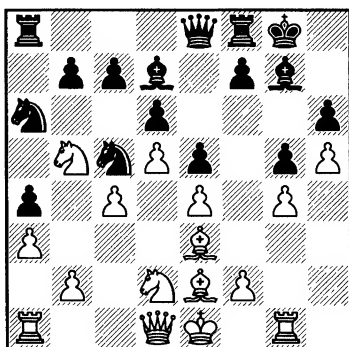
## 12 a3

Here White made a typical mistake. He did not play 12 b3, as evidently he

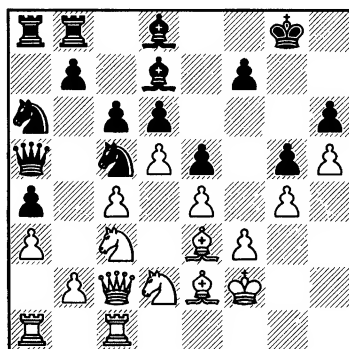
did not care for 12...a4 13 ♖b1 axb3 14 axb3 ♘b4, but in this line he had a much stronger move – 13 ♗b1!

Now the black knights begin to take up dominant posts on the queenside.

12...a4 13 h4 ♙d7 14 h5 h6 15 ♙e3 g5 16 ♘b5



16...♗b8 17 ♗c2 c6 18 ♘c3 ♗d8 19 f3 ♗a5 20 ♘f2 ♖fb8 21 ♖gd1 ♙f6 22 ♚dc1 ♙d8



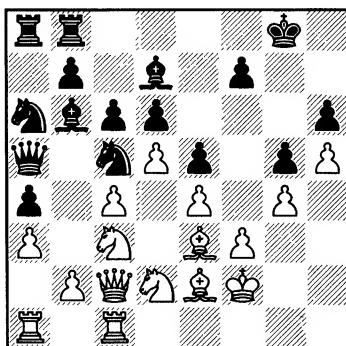
A most unusual occurrence – on Black's kingside the only piece remaining is his king. His dark-square

bishop has left there, aiming for the queenside.

23 ♙d1

I had foreseen the possibility of the unexpected knight leap on move 24, but if White had played 23 ♙f1 ♙b6 24 ♙g2 it is probable that nothing terrible for him would have occurred.

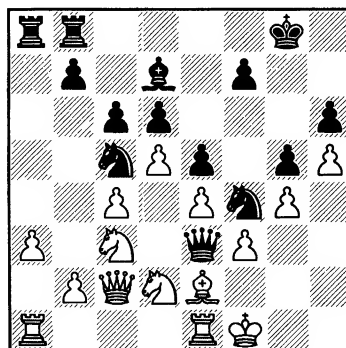
23...♙b6 24 ♙e2



24...♘e6 25 ♙xb6

Or 25 dxe6 ♙xe3+, when 26 ♘xe3 allows 26...♗c5+ 27 ♘d3 ♗d4 mate.

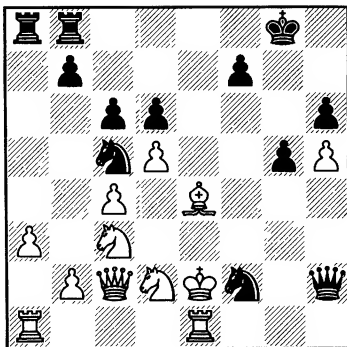
25...♗xb6+ 26 ♘f1 ♘f4 27 ♘xa4 ♗e3 28 ♘c3 ♘c5 29 ♖e1





29...♙xg4 30 fxg4 ♖g3 31 ♙f3  
 ♜h3 32 ♜e2 ♜h2+ 33 ♜d1 ♜f2+ 34  
 ♜e2 ♜xg4+ 35 ♜d1 ♜f2+ 36 ♜e2  
 ♜fxe4+ 37 ♜d1 ♜f2+ 38 ♜e2 e4 39  
 ♙xe4 (see diagram)

**White resigns**



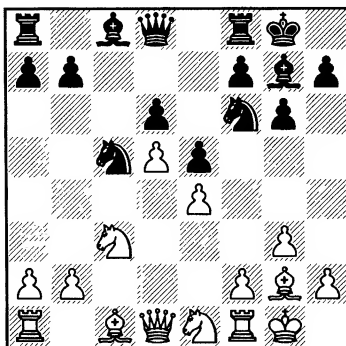
## Black opens the c-file

Game 31  
 White: **Andrei Lilienthal**  
 Black: **David Bronstein**  
*USSR Championship Semi-Final*  
*Baku 1944*

In this and the following game I was able to demonstrate the viability of a new system of play for Black in the King's Indian, in particular the exchange of pawns on d5, opening the c-file. Previously it had been considered obligatory to keep the pawn on c7.

1 d4 ♜f6 2 c4 d6 3 ♜c3 e5 4 ♜f3  
 ♜bd7 5 g3 g6 6 ♙g2 ♙g7 7 0-0 0-0 8  
 e4 c6 9 d5 ♜c5 10 ♜e1 cxd5 11 cxd5  
 (see diagram)

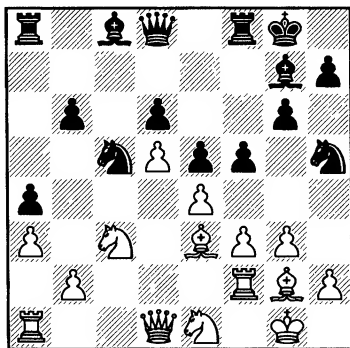
11...a5 12 f3 b6 13 ♙e3 ♜h5 14 a3  
 a4 15 ♜f2



In this game the following elements are of interest: after the standard ...c7-c6, ...♜d7-c5 and ...a7-a5, Black then advanced his pawn to a4 and tried to force White to take it in return for the exchange of his dark-square bishop. I have always believed in the strength of the two bishops, which successfully operate at a distance. In

the event of 15 ♖xc5 Black would have replied 15...bxc5 and then 16 ♗xa4 ♖h6 with active play.

15...f5



A textbook example: Black's a7 pawn has advanced to a4, his knights have taken up position at c5 and h5, and his f7 pawn has gone onto the attack. What more could he dream of in this complicated opening?

16 exf5 gxf5 17 f4 ♖f6

Here I should have taken on f4 and only then played ...♖f6, opening the long diagonal. At that time I did not yet have sufficient experience.

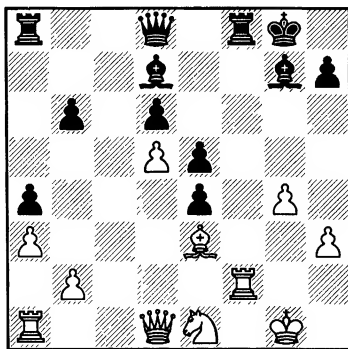
18 h3 ♗fe4 19 ♗xe4 ♖xe4

I was trying at all costs to deprive White of his two bishops, and in this I succeeded – Lilienthal gave up his light-square bishop, and in addition he had to sacrifice a pawn at f5.

20 ♖xe4 fxe4 21 f5 ♖xf5 22 g4 ♖d7

But instead of this I should, of course, have retreated my bishop to g6. Then I could have played ...♖f7 and perhaps picked up the d5 pawn.

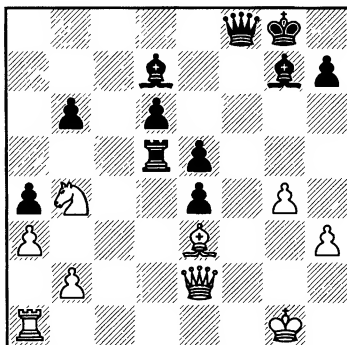
But at the time I was more interested in playing my rook to b3.



23 ♖xf8+ ♖xf8 24 ♖e2 ♖a5 25 ♖c2 ♖xd5

Instead of taking the pawn, I should have played 25...♖f3.

26 ♖b4

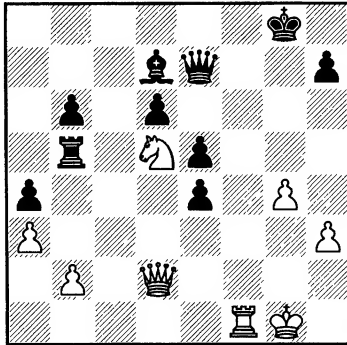


26...♖b5

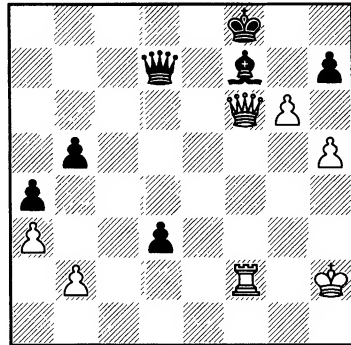
Another important moment. Here it was essential for Black to play 26...♖d3, and if the knight takes this impudent rook, then 27 ♖xd3 ♖b5 with a reasonable game.

27 ♖f1 ♖a8 28 ♖d2 ♖f8 29 ♖h6

♙e7 30 ♙g5 ♚d8 31 ♙xe7 ♚xe7 32  
 ♜d5



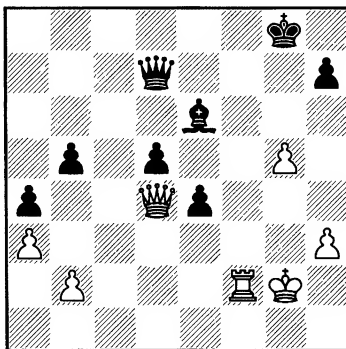
41 ♚f6 ♙f7 42 ♚f4 ♚e8 43 ♚f5 e3  
 44 ♚e5 ♚a8 45 ♚f3 ♚d8 46 ♚xe3  
 d4 47 ♚d2 ♚d6 48 ♚f4 ♚d7 49 ♚e2  
 d3 50 ♚f2 ♚d5+ 51 ♙h2 ♚d7 52 h4  
 ♚e8 53 ♚d6 ♚e4 54 ♚b8+ ♙g7 55  
 ♚f4 ♚d5 56 h5 ♚d7 57 ♚f6+ ♙f8  
 58 g6



**Black resigns**

This was one of the first games where Black showed that the white centre could be completely destroyed. Later, through inexperience, I even lost, trying to extricate myself by tactics. Of course, Lilienthal then was much more experienced than me, and what told was the badly placed black rook – I had to give up the exchange.

32...♚xd5 33 ♚xd5+ ♙e6 34 ♚xe4  
 ♙f7 35 ♚e3 b5 36 g5 d5 37 ♚f5 e4  
 38 ♚d4 ♚c7 39 ♙g2 ♙e6 40 ♚f2 ♚d7

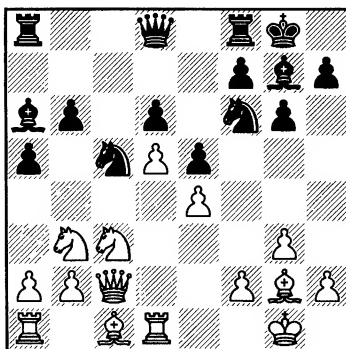
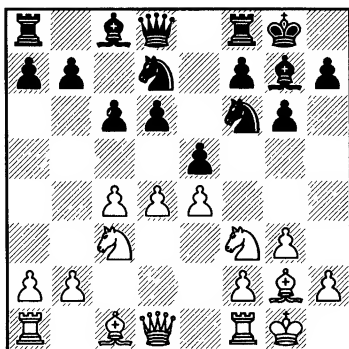


Game 32  
 White: **Mikhail Botvinnik**  
 Black: **David Bronstein**  
*14th USSR Championship  
 Moscow 1945*

I had made my USSR Championship debut the previous year, when I finished 15th out of 17 players, but was one of only two to defeat the runaway winner, Botvinnik. Here Botvinnik's domination was even more marked, but I was able to improve to gain third place.

1 ♜f3 ♜f6 2 d4 d6 3 e4 ♜bd7 4 g3

g6 5 ♖g2 ♖g7 6 ♘c3 e5 7 0-0 0-0 8  
e4 c6



When I played this move, without thinking for a second Mikhail Moiseevich replied 9 d5, but when after 9...cxd5 I obtained a good position, he never played 9 d5 again. However, during this game he decided to punish me. 'This young man has made a mistake, and now I will show him how one should play.'

The following moves are typical of this variation: White supports his centre, while Black develops his queenside. White's intentions include exchanging as many pieces as possible, since he has occupied more space.

9 d5 cxd5 10 cxd5 ♘c5 11 ♖c2 a5  
12 ♘d2 b6

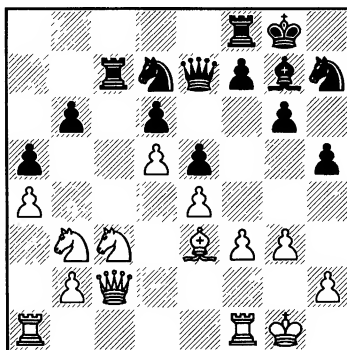
This supports the knight and opens the diagonal for the bishop to a6, but such a development is not in the spirit of the King's Indian. 12...♘h5 followed by ...f7-f5 was more thematic.

13 ♘b3 ♖a6 14 ♖d1

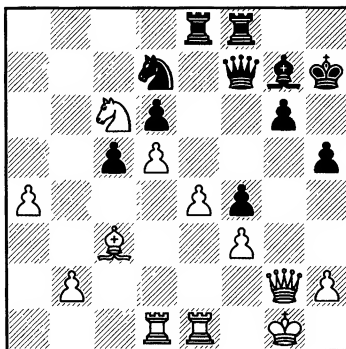
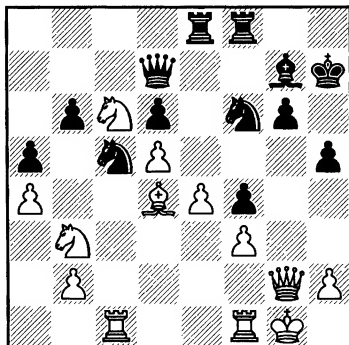
14...♘cd7

Here I had a choice: to exchange knights, and after 14...♘xb3 15 ♖xb3 ♘d7 16 ♖e3 to go onto the defensive, or to avoid exchanges and maintain the tension, in so doing trying to play on the kingside, while abandoning the opposite wing to its fate. I chose the latter plan, and the course of the game demonstrated its viability.

15 a4 ♖c8 16 ♖h3 ♖c7 17 ♖e3 h5  
18 ♖g5 ♖e8 19 f3 ♘h7 20 ♖e3 ♖e7  
21 ♖f1 ♖xf1 22 ♖xf1



22...f5 23 ♖e2 f4 24 ♘b5 ♜cc8 25  
gxf4 exf4 26 ♙d4 ♘hf6 27 ♘a7  
♜ce8 28 ♖g2 ♚h7 29 ♜ac1 ♘c5 30  
♘c6 ♗d7

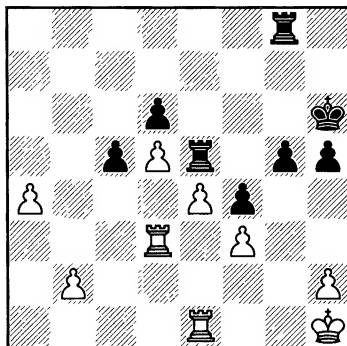


Black's position seems critical: White's pieces have not only increased their scope, but have seized control of the light squares on the queenside and the dark squares in the centre. Evidently at heart my opponent was already celebrating a quick win, especially since by force he now wins the important a5 pawn. But here a typical 'King's Indian miracle' occurred: Black's kingside pawns began advancing and he imperceptibly gained control of the long diagonal.

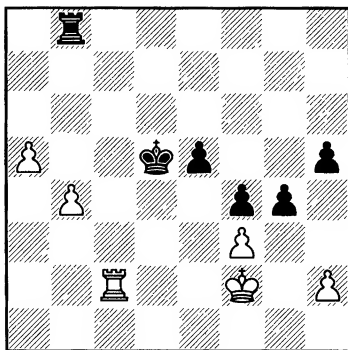
Botvinnik decided to go into an inferior rook ending. Perhaps somewhere I could have exploited my chances better, but even so this game was a blow to the lovers of 'closed' strategy.

31 ♘xc5 bxc5 32 ♙c3 ♙h6 33  
♜cd1 ♗f7 34 ♜fe1 ♙g7 35 ♙xa5  
♘d7 36 ♙c3

36...g5 37 ♙xg7 ♗xg7 38 ♚h1  
♘e5 39 ♜g1 ♚h6 40 ♘xe5 ♗xe5 41  
♗h3 ♜f6 42 ♜g2 ♜g8 43 ♜dg1 ♗d4  
44 ♜e1 ♜fg6 45 ♗f5 ♗d3 46 ♜f2  
♗d4 47 ♜g2 ♜f6 48 ♜d2 ♜xf5 49  
♜xd4 ♜e5 50 ♜d3



50...♖b8 51 b3 g4 52 ♙g2 ♙g5 53  
a5 ♜a8 54 ♜a1 ♜e7 55 ♜a3 ♜ea7 56  
e5 dxex5 57 d6 ♙f5 58 ♜d5 ♜d8 59  
♜a2 ♙e6 60 ♜xc5 ♜xd6 61 ♜ac2  
♜d5 62 ♜xd5 ♙xd5 63 b4 ♜a8 64  
♙f2 ♖b8



**Draw agreed**

**Game 33**

**White: David Bronstein**

**Black: Anatoly Lutikov**

*USSR Spartakiad*

*Moscow 1959*

For Black ...f7-f5 is a standard offensive move in the King's Indian, but it also weakens his control of e6.

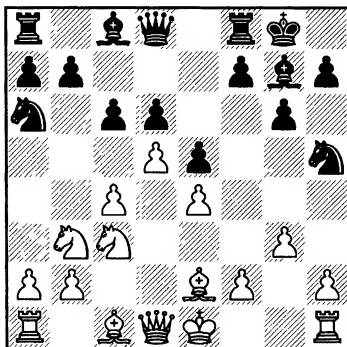
**1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♗c3 ♙g7 4 e4 d6  
5 ♗f3 0-0 6 ♙e2 e5 7 d5 ♗h5**

Black creates a weakening of the opponent's kingside, as the knight cannot be allowed to go to f4.

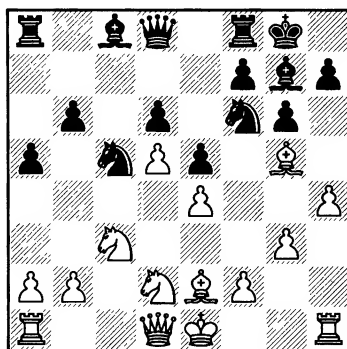
**8 g3 ♖a6 9 ♗d2 c6 10 ♗b3**

White in reply employs an unusual idea – he leaves his king in the centre and plans an attack on the kingside. Of course, he does not intend to take on h5, as it is bad in such positions to give up the light-square bishop. In the well-known game Szabo-Boleslavsky (Candidates Tournament, Budapest

1950) White risked winning such a pawn, but ran into problems (cf. Game A12). Here after 10 ♙xh5 gxh5 11 ♗xh5 ♗b4 followed by ...f7-f5 it would have been hard for him to defend the light squares.



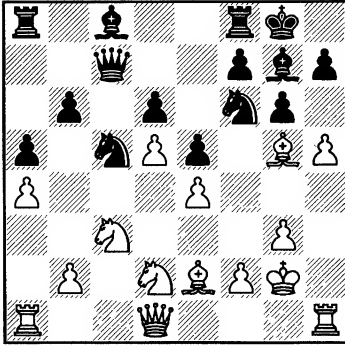
**10...♗f6 11 h4 cxd5 12 cxd5 b6 13  
♙g5 ♗c5 14 ♗d2 a5**



**15 h5**

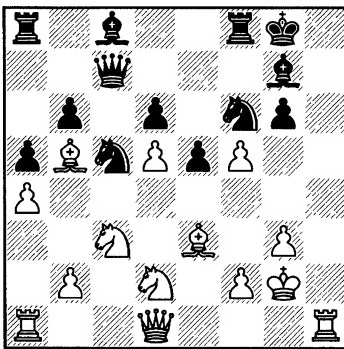
See also the game Bronstein-Gligoric, Zurich 1953 (A19) for this manoeuvre.

**15...♗c7 16 a4 ♙d7 17 ♖f1 ♙c8  
18 ♖g2**



Here a standard King's Indian idea is strikingly displayed – one white rook has remained at h1, the king has gone to g2, and then the other rook from a1 is free to move to the h-file. All this has been done without the slightest loss of time, which would not have been so if White had castled.

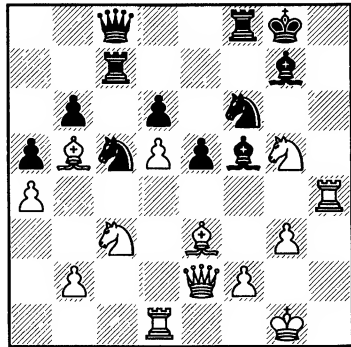
18...♖e8 19 ♖b5 f6 20 ♖e3 f5 21 hxg6 hxg6 22 exf5 ♖f6



Each side has carried out his plan. Black avoids recapturing with the bishop and sacrifices a pawn. A sharp game develops, but White's trumps

are higher – the h-file, more space and the light squares. As a result the black king is exposed, whereas the two pawns are sufficient for White's.

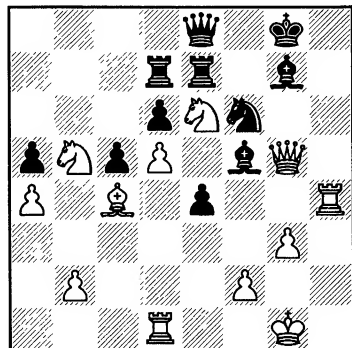
23 fxg6 ♖f5 24 ♖f3 ♖xg6 25 ♖g5 ♖f5 26 ♖h4 ♖ac8 27 ♖e2 ♖b7 28 ♖d1 ♖c7 29 ♖g1 ♖c8



30 ♖xc5

Eliminating one of the defenders of the e6 square, which is now protected only by bishop and queen.

30...bxc5 31 ♖d3 e4 32 ♖a6 ♖e8 33 ♖e6 ♖e7 34 ♖c4 ♖ff7 35 ♖b5 ♖d7 36 ♖d2 ♖fe7 37 ♖g5



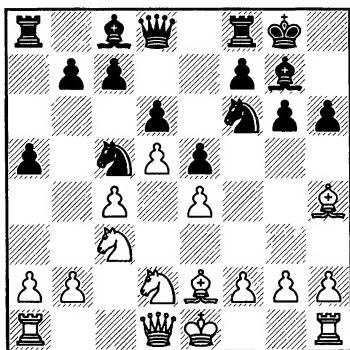
And in this difficult position **Black lost on time.**

Game 34  
**White: Alexander Tolush**  
**Black: David Bronstein**  
*Leningrad v. Moscow Match*  
*Moscow 1960*

These matches, usually double-round events on 40 boards, were invariably closely fought. Our game was played on board 2 (the top board pairing was Botvinnik-Korchnoi).

**1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♖c3 ♙g7 4 e4 d6 5 ♗f3 0-0 6 ♙e2 e5 7 d5 ♘bd7 8 ♙g5 h6 9 ♙h4 a5 10 ♖d2 ♗c5**

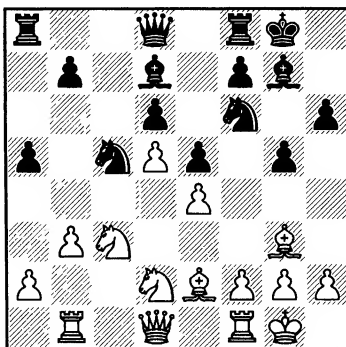
In this game, after White had closed the centre, Black gained a good post for his knight – c5. White played inaccurately; he should have played f2-f3 earlier, in order to free his knight at d2. The game also demonstrates that it is not essential for Black to play ...f7-f5.



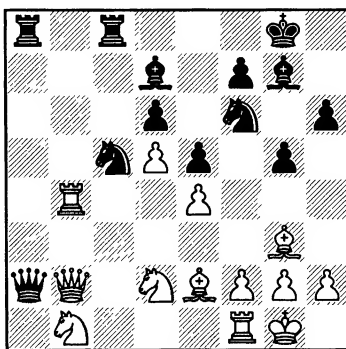
**11 0-0 c6 12 ♖b1 ♙d7 13 b3**

The black g-pawn restricts the white bishop. Play now switches to the queenside and then once again to the kingside, culminating in an interesting attack by the black pieces in the vicinity of the f2 and g2 squares.

**13...g5 14 ♙g3 cxd5 15 cxd5**



**15...b5 16 b4 axb4 17 ♖xb4 ♖a5 18 ♖b1 ♗a6 19 ♖b3 ♗c5 20 ♖b4 ♗a6 21 ♖b3 ♖fc8 22 ♖b2 b4 23 ♗cb1 ♗c5 24 ♖xb4 ♖xa2**



A position of dynamic balance – the black bishop at g7 can merely



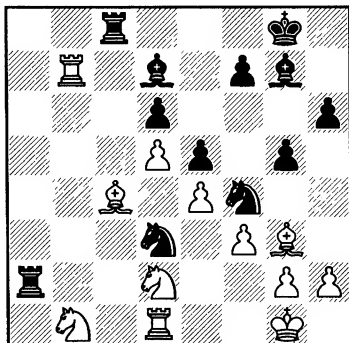
defend the d6 pawn. White dreams of regrouping ( $\text{♖b6}$ ,  $\text{♗c4}$  etc.), while Black transfers his knight to f4.

25  $\text{f3}$   $\text{♗h5}$  26  $\text{♙xa2}$   $\text{♞xa2}$  27  $\text{♞d1}$   
 $\text{♗f4}$  28  $\text{♙c4}$

Instead of this risky move, White would have done better to retreat his bishop to f1.

28... $\text{♗cd3}$

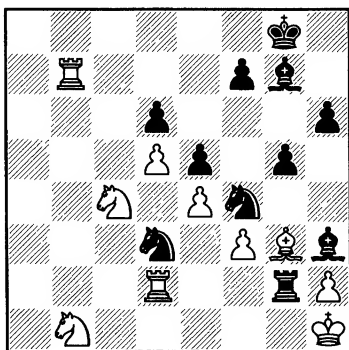
A typical manoeuvre.



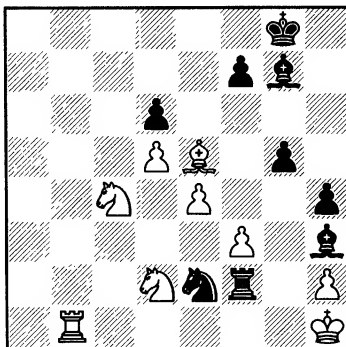
29  $\text{♞b7}$   $\text{♞xc4}$  30  $\text{♗xc4}$

This decision to win the exchange is bad. White should play 30  $\text{♞xd7}$ .

30... $\text{♞xg2+}$  31  $\text{♙h1}$   $\text{♙h3}$  32  $\text{♞d2}$



32... $\text{♗e2}$  33  $\text{♞xe2}$   $\text{♞xe2}$  34  $\text{♗bd2}$   
 $\text{h5}$  35  $\text{♞b3}$   $\text{♗f4}$  36  $\text{♙g1}$   $\text{♞g2+}$  37  
 $\text{♙h1}$   $\text{♗e2}$  38  $\text{♞b1}$   $\text{h4}$  39  $\text{♙xe5}$   $\text{♞f2}$



The culmination of Black's attack in this queenless middlegame.

White resigns

### Game 35

White: **Dietmar Kolbus**

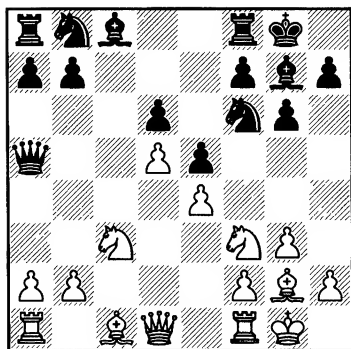
Black: **David Bronstein**

*Hastings Open 1994/5*

My first appearance in Hastings was back in 1953/4, when Alexander Tolush and I became the first Soviet players after the War to compete in the Premier Tournament.

1  $\text{c4}$   $\text{♗f6}$  2  $\text{♗c3}$   $\text{e5}$  3  $\text{g3}$   $\text{c6}$  4  $\text{♗f3}$   $\text{d6}$   
 5  $\text{♙g2}$   $\text{g6}$  6  $\text{0-0}$   $\text{♙g7}$  7  $\text{e4}$   $\text{0-0}$  8  $\text{d4}$   
 $\text{♙a5}$  9  $\text{d5}$   $\text{cxd5}$  10  $\text{cxd5}$

In this game Black exploited a chance opportunity. He experimentally brought out his queen to a5 before developing his knight at c5. Having started, he had to continue in the same vein, and so there followed



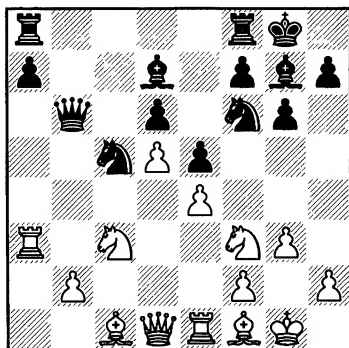
10...b5 11 ♖e1

White should have played 11 ♖d2 b4 12 ♖b3, which ensures him a slight advantage.

11...♗d7

But here Black 'returns the compliment'. He could have equalised immediately by 11...b4, e.g. 12 ♖a4 ♖xa4 13 ♖xa4 ♗d7 14 b3 ♖c8 15 ♗d2 ♗xa4 16 bxa4 ♖a6, or 12 ♖a4 ♗d7 13 b3 ♗b5.

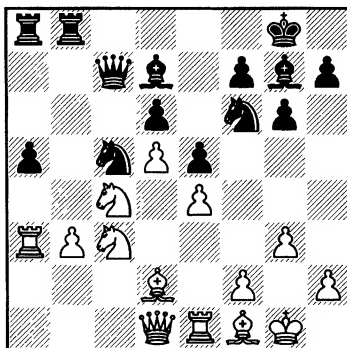
12 a3 b4 13 ♖a2 bxa3 14 ♖c3 ♖b6 15 ♖xa3 ♖a6 16 ♗f1 ♖c5



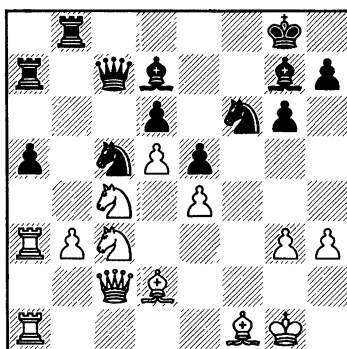
17 ♖d2 a5 18 ♖c4 ♖c7 19 b3

A tense situation has arisen – White has a weak pawn at b3, and Black has one at a5, which is harder to defend.

19...♖fb8 20 ♗d2



20...♗e8 21 ♖c2 f5 22 f3 ♖f6 23 ♖ea1 fxe4 24 fxe4 ♖a7 25 h3



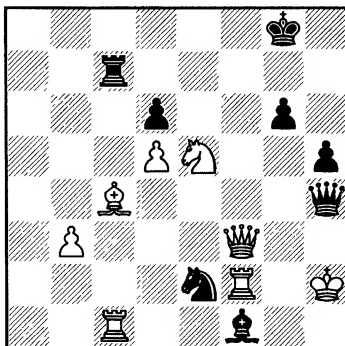
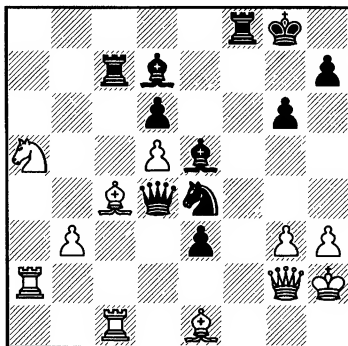
This covers the g4 square, but on the other hand it weakens the g3 pawn.

25...♖ab7

Each side has his trumps. White was clearly in too much of a hurry to win the a5 pawn, and as a consequence he came under a strong attack.

26 ♖xa5 ♗cxe4 27 ♙e1 ♚c5+ 28  
 ♗h2 ♜c7 29 ♙c4 ♗xc3 30 ♚xc3 e4  
 31 ♚d2 e3 32 ♚g2 ♚d4 33 ♜c1 ♗e4  
 34 ♜a2 ♜f8 35 ♙b4 ♙e5 36 ♙e1

36...h5 37 ♗h1 ♜f2 38 ♙xf2 exf2  
 39 ♚f3 ♙xh3 40 ♗c6 ♗xg3+ 41  
 ♗h2 ♚h4 42 ♜xf2 ♗e2+ 43 ♗xe5  
 ♙f1+



White resigns

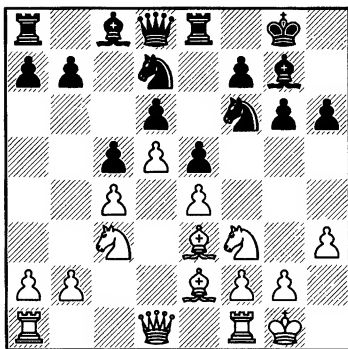
## Black pawns at e5 and c5

Game 36  
 White: **Gerald Abrahams**  
 Black: **David Bronstein**  
*Great Britain v. USSR Match*  
*London 1947*

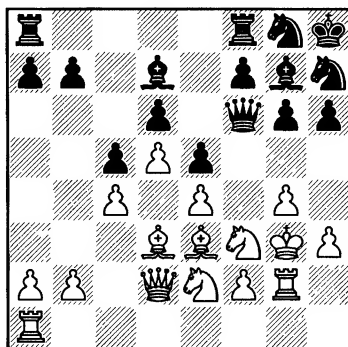
One of the highlights of this double-round event was the fine first round win by the 18-year-old Gordon Crown over Alexander Kotov, a game which

I have annotated in my book *The Modern Chess Self-Tutor*. Tragically, this highly talented young player was to die only a few weeks later, during a routine hospital operation.

1 ♗f3 ♗f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♗c3 ♙g7 4 e4  
 d6 5 d4 0-0 6 ♙e2 ♗bd7 7 0-0 e5 8  
 ♙g5 h6 9 ♙e3 c6 10 h3 ♜e8 11 d5  
 c5



12 ♖d2 ♗h7 13 g4 ♘g8 14 ♔h2  
 ♜f8 15 ♙d3 ♗h8 16 ♖g1 ♘h7 17  
 ♖g2 ♙d7 18 ♘e2 ♗f6 19 ♔g3 ♖f8



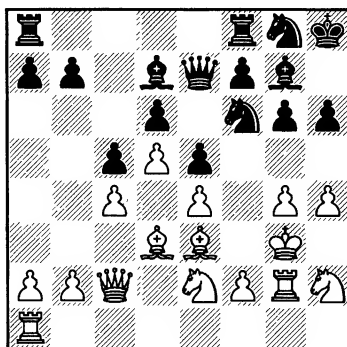
A game typical of the King's Indian, when White tries to attack not on the queenside, but on the kingside. He has closed the centre and set up a pawn chain: c4-d5-e4-f2-g4-h3. In reply Black has regrouped his pieces in unusual fashion (I think that at the time this was an innovation). He has made very economical use of the nine squares on the kingside, which are solidly occupied by pieces, the whole

set-up resembling a coiled spring.

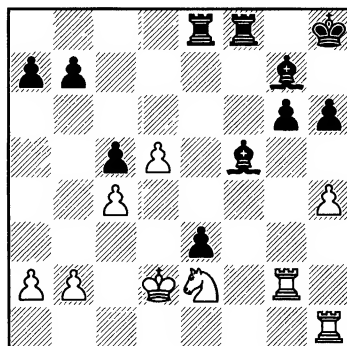
20 h4

This advance is premature – White clearly overrated his position. The spring uncoils; with a knight sacrifice at g4 Black releases his pawns, and his f-pawn advances decisively.

20...♗e7 21 ♖c2 ♘hf6 22 ♘h2



22...♘xg4 23 ♘xg4 f5 24 ♘xe5  
 dxe5 25 f4 ♘f6 26 ♖h1 fxh4 27 ♙xe4  
 ♘xe4+ 28 ♗xe4 exf4+ 29 ♔f3  
 ♗xe4+ 30 ♔xe4 ♖ae8+ 31 ♔d3  
 ♙f5+ 32 ♔d2 fxe3+



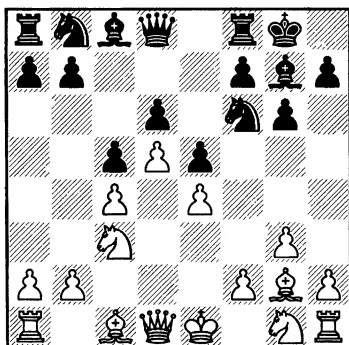
White resigns

## Game 37

White: **Georgy Ravinsky**Black: **David Bronstein***Moscow Championship 1953*

This game was from one of the Moscow Championships, where I played almost without a break for some 25-30 years. The present event was held in the summer before the Zurich Candidates Tournament.

1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 d6 3 ♖c3 g6 4 g3 ♕g7  
5 ♕g2 0-0 6 e4 e5 7 d5 c5



In the opening I played differently from usual – after the closing of the centre I immediately replied 7...c5. I was interested to see what would happen in this case.

8 ♖ge2 ♖bd7 9 0-0 a6

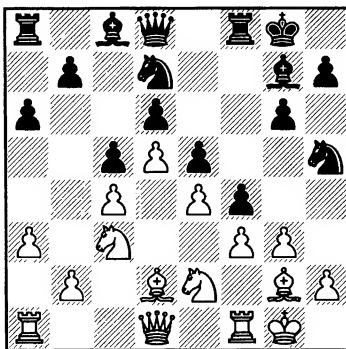
This move is necessary, to prevent the possible leap by the white knight to b5.

10 a3 ♖h5

The white knight at e2 for a long time prevents ...f5-f4 in the event of the standard piece set-up: ...♖e8 by

Black and ♕e3, ♖d2 f2-f3 etc. by White. Therefore I decided to play 10...♖h5 immediately.

11 ♕d2 f5 12 f3 f4



13 g4

An important moment. White has allowed ...f5-f4, which is psychologically unpleasant for him. He could have played 13 ♕e1, but Ravinsky made the reasonable move 13 g4. True, it allows Black to carry out the classic blow ...h7-h5.

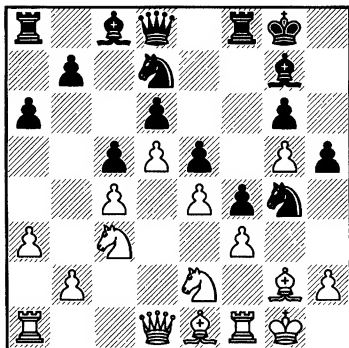
13...♖hf6 14 ♕e1 h5 15 g5

Why did White play this, rather than leave this pawn where it is, or else capture on h5?

If he leaves the pawn at g4, then he has to defend it by 15 h3. Then after 15...hxg4 16 hxg4 Black is free to play ...♖h7, ...♖g5, ...♖df6 and ...♕xg4.

And after 15 gxh5 he replies 15...g5 16 h3 (forced, in view of the threat of 16...g4) 16...♖e8, followed by ...♖xh5, ...♖h7, ...♖df6 and ...♕xh3.

15...♖g4

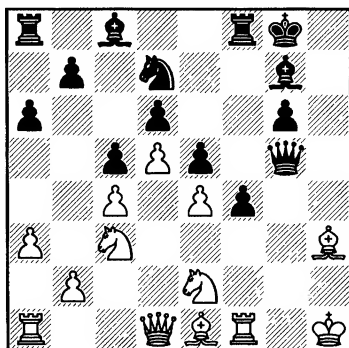


It is a good thing in chess that not all the pieces move in straight lines. The knight, for example, has the ability to perform pirouettes. Here we have just such a situation.

**16 fxg4 hxg4**

Black has made a piece sacrifice to launch a pawn attack 'à la Philidor'. Of course, White could several times have defended better, but I always had compensation for the piece.

**17 h4 gxh3 18 ♔xh3 ♖xg5+ 19 ♔h1**

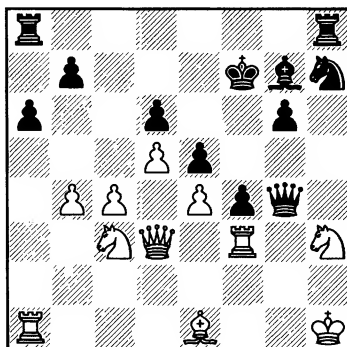


**19...♔f7**

The most difficult move in the game was this one by the king, making way for the rook.

**20 ♖d3 ♜h8 21 b4 ♘f6 22 ♘g1 cxb4 23 axb4 ♙xh3 24 ♘xh3 ♖g4 25 ♜f3 ♘h7**

But I myself like most of all this final knight move.



**White resigns**

Game 38

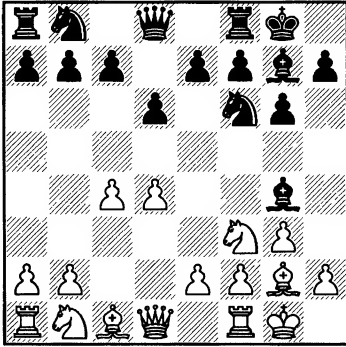
White: **Gideon Ståhlberg**

Black: **David Bronstein**

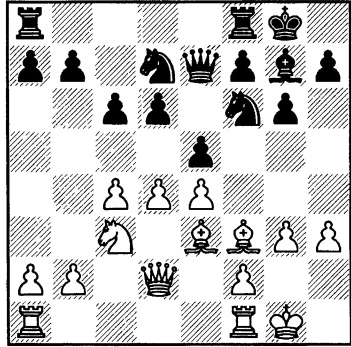
*Played by Telegraph 1955*

One feature of the King's Indian Defence both for White, and for Black, as I understand it, is that the two players normally develop their kingside and then castle, but do not move the rook from the a-file until the last moment. Also the bishops at c1 and c8 do not hurry to come into the game.

1 ♖f3 ♜f6 2 c4 g6 3 g3 ♙g7 4 ♙g2  
d6 5 d4 0-0 6 0-0 ♙g4



premature – Black was getting nervous. Perhaps it would have been better to advance the c-pawn: 12...c5.



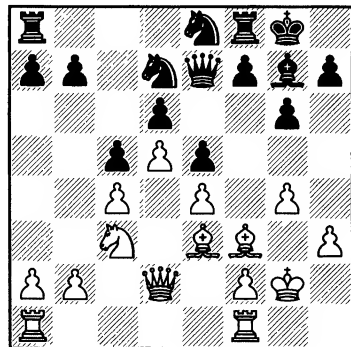
This game is interesting for the fact that Black developed his bishop early and confidently exchanged it for a knight. Do you know my theory of how Capablanca played? He always tried to exchange one bishop, so that he should have no problems about how to arrange his pawn chain. Then he exchanged one rook, if possible – then he had no problems about which rook to place on the only open file. And it only remained to exchange one knight, so that the remaining knight knew which weak square to control in the centre. Here I played like Capablanca, but taking account of my theory – in chess White occupies four ranks, Black sets up a defensive wall on three, and the 5th rank always remains free (a kind of neutral, no-man's-land).

7 ♘c3 c6 8 h3 ♙xf3 9 ♙xf3 e6 10 e4 ♜bd7 11 ♙e3 ♚e7 12 ♚d2 e5

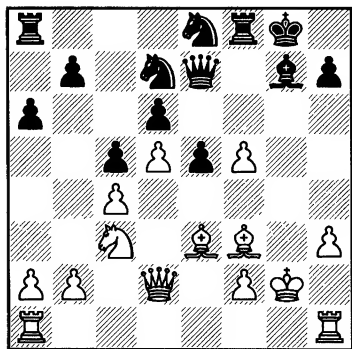
The point of chess is to cross the equator. This move is somewhat

13 d5 c5 14 ♙g2 ♜e8 15 g4

A curious situation has arisen. The light-square bishop is temporarily obstructed, but after Black plays ...f7-f5 it will be freed. On the other hand, he cannot stand still, as White will play his knight to g3 (♘c3-e2-g3), his rook to the h-file, and begin pressing on the kingside.



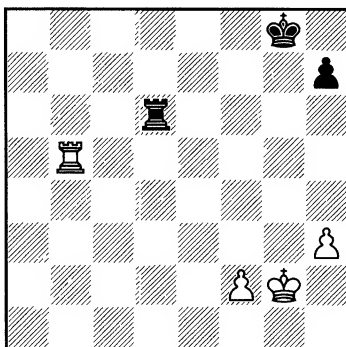
15...a6 16 ♜h1 f5 17 gxf5 gxf5 18 exf5



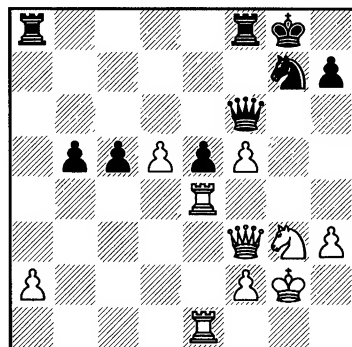
18...e4

An important and typical idea in the King's Indian – Black temporarily sacrifices two pawns, but his g7 bishop comes into play.

19 ♖xe4 ♗e5 20 ♜e2 ♘xf3 21 ♜xf3 b5 22 cxb5 axb5 23 ♘g3 ♙xb2 24 ♞ae1 ♙e5 25 ♙f4 ♘g7 26 ♙xe5 dxe5 27 ♞e4 ♜f6 28 ♞h1



Draw agreed



28...♘xf5 29 ♘xf5 ♜xf5 30 ♜xf5 ♞xf5 31 ♞xe5 ♞xe5 32 ♞xe5 ♞xa2 33 d6 ♞d2 34 ♞xc5 ♞xd6 35 ♞xb5

This game was played by telegraph, and we made two moves a week. I

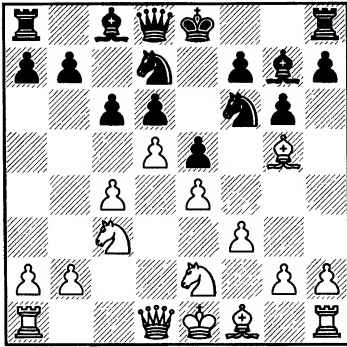
was at a tournament in Hungary; they would phone me from the editorial office of *Vechernaya Moskva* (the daily Moscow evening paper) and I had to make a move at once, in order to be in time for the next issue. When the game ended, I sent a telegram expressing my thanks to the Stockholm newspaper and received one in reply.

Game 39  
 White: **Tigran Petrosian**  
 Black: **David Bronstein**  
*USSR Team Championship*  
*Moscow 1974*

This very tense and difficult game is one of the best strategic achievements of Tigran Petrosian. It shows how hard it can be for Black to gain counterplay, if White does not hurry and observes necessary prophylaxis. Petrosian seemed to anticipate all my attempts to sharpen the play.

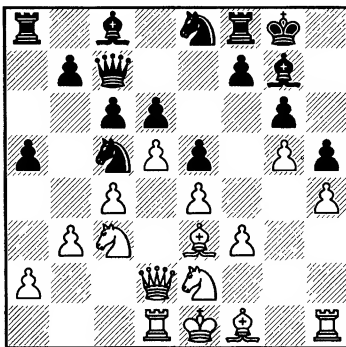


1 c4 ♖f6 2 ♗c3 g6 3 e4 d6 4 d4 ♙g7  
5 f3 e5 6 ♗ge2 c6 7 ♙g5 ♗bd7 8 d5



8...0-0 9 ♖d2 ♖b6 10 ♙e3 ♗c7  
11 g4 h5 12 g5 ♗e8 13 h4 a5 14 b3  
♗c5 15 ♖d1

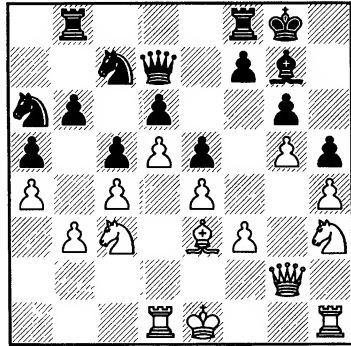
With this subtle move White nails down the backward d6 pawn, immobilises the knight at e8, and practically forces Black to block the position on the queenside by 16...c5. After this White begins 'large-scale manoeuvres' on the kingside.



15...♗a6 16 ♗a4 c5 17 ♗g1 b6 18  
♙h3

This is followed by the exchange of the light-square bishops, which Black is unable to avoid.

18...♙xh3 19 ♗xh3 ♖b8 20 ♗c3  
♖d7 21 ♖g2 ♗ec7 22 a4

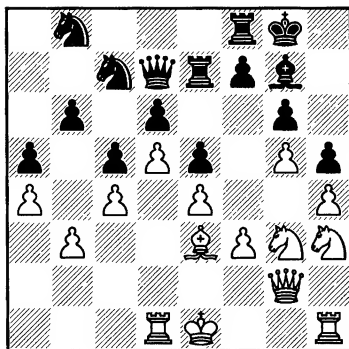


22...♖be8

However, the question arises: 'If Black had included in good time his knights in the defence of the kingside, would White's plan of attack succeeded?' Let us carry out a little analysis. Instead of the insignificant 22...♖be8 Black should have immediately embarked on a defensive re-grouping: 22...♗e8!, with the possible variation 23 ♗e2 ♗ac7 24 ♗g3 ♖b7 25 ♗f2 ♖a7 26 ♖g1 ♖b7 27 ♗fh1 ♖a7 28 ♗xh5 gxh5 29 ♗g3 f5 30 gxf6 ♗xf6! 31 ♗f5 ♗ce8 32 ♙h6 ♙h8 and the attack is parried, as 33 ♖g6 ♗g8 34 ♖xh5 ♙xh6 35 ♗xh6 is not dangerous in view of 35...♖h7 36 ♖g6 ♗g7 37 ♖g5 ♖xf3. Thus, although it is a dangerous and difficult defence, the King's Indian nevertheless holds!

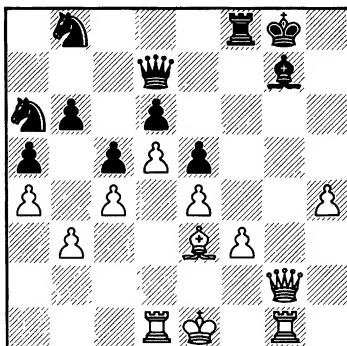
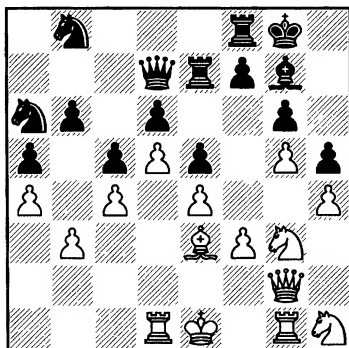
23 ♗e2 ♗b8 24 ♗g3 ♖e7

28 ♖xh5 gxh5 29 ♖g3 f5 30 gxf6  
 ♙xf6 31 ♖xh5+ ♜g7 32 ♖xg7 ♙xg7



A noteworthy position. Black's defences appear to be holding: the pawns are blocked right across the board, there are no invasion points in my position, and f3-f4 is clearly unfavourable for White. There is only one vulnerable point in the black fortress, its "Achilles' heel" – this is the h5 pawn. It is there that the wise Tigran directs his actions: he transfers his knight from h3 to h1, after which comes the sacrifice on h5.

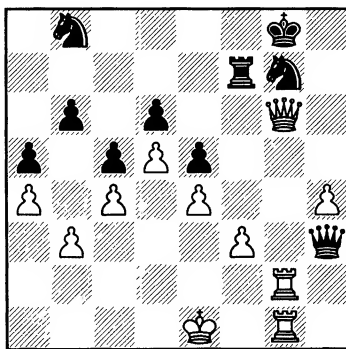
25 ♖f2 ♜fe8 26 ♜g1 ♖ca6 27 ♖fh1 ♜f8



33 ♙h6

White has a winning attack, but here, instead of the obvious advance of his pawn – 33 h5 ♙h8 34 ♙g5 and wins, he begins intensifying the pressure on g7. This allows me to bring up my reserves.

33...♜f7 34 ♜d2 ♖c7 35 ♜g6 ♖e8  
 36 ♜dg2 ♜h3 37 ♙xg7 ♖xg7

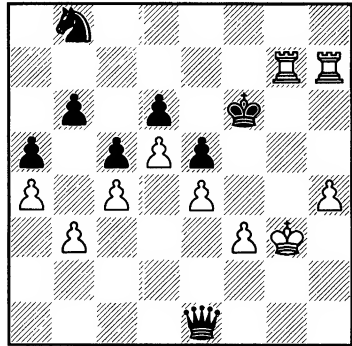
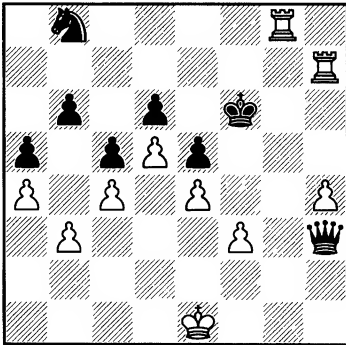


38 ♜xf7+

Even so, instead of this queen sacrifice, made just a couple of moves before the time control, White could have won by 38 ♖xd6, as 38...♗d7 is simply answered by 39 ♖h6.

38...♗xf7 39 ♜xg7+ ♗f8 40 ♜g8+ ♗f7 41 ♜1g7+ ♗f6 42 ♜g6+ ♗f7 43 ♜6g7+ ♗f6 44 ♜h7

44...♖h1+ 45 ♗f2 ♖h2+ 46 ♜g2 ♖f4 47 ♗e2 ♖c1 48 ♜gg7 ♖c2+ 49 ♗f1 ♖d1+ 50 ♗f2 ♖d2+ 51 ♗f1 ♖d1+ 52 ♗f2 ♖d2+ 53 ♗g3 ♖e1+ 54 ♗g2 ♖e2+ 55 ♗g3 ♖e1+ 56 ♗g2 ♖e2+ 57 ♗g3 ♖e1+



**Draw agreed**

# The central tension is maintained

Game 40

White: **Mikhail Botvinnik**

Black: **David Bronstein**

*World Championship (game 21)*

*Moscow 1951*

This game appealed to Max Euwe, and in a Dutch magazine he praised me for the moves 9...♘h5, 10...♙e7, 11...♖h8 and 12...a6. I think that it was I who first employed this new plan of play on the queenside, back in 1947 in a game with Flohr (Game A7). Now everyone plays this way.

This game is unique for the fact that Black succeeded in carrying out the attack ...b7-b5-b4, for perhaps the only time ever. Neither before this game, nor since, have I seen anyone playing this way. Black succeeded with his attack on the b2 pawn, thanks to the possibility of controlling the light squares on the queenside.

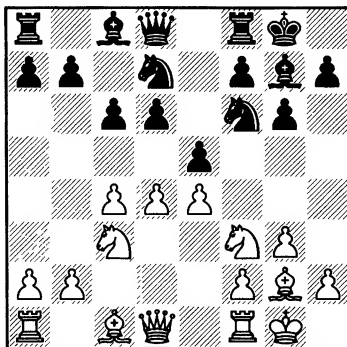
It seems to me that my opponent made one mistake – he thought for a long time after ...♘h5, evidently recalling our game in 1945, in which I had obtained good play.

In this game there was also an interesting psychological context. When you simply look at a position and evaluate it, you can play in several different ways, but if the fate of the historical development of chess can depend on your every move, you feel a terrible oppression, which greatly hinders your play.

1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 d6

At last! Twenty games of the match had gone by, and I had not once employed my favourite weapon – the King's Indian Defence, as I feared that Botvinnik would be well prepared for it.

3 ♖c3 e5 4 ♘f3 ♘bd7 5 g3 g6 6 ♗g2 ♗g7 7 0-0 0-0 8 e4 c6

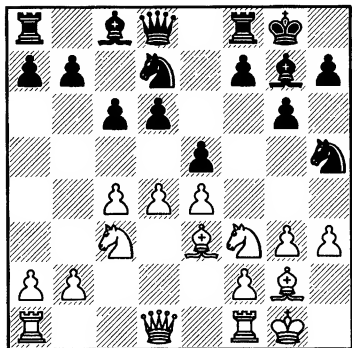


All these moves had already occurred in the game between the same players from the 14th USSR Championship, Moscow 1945 (cf. Game 32). There Botvinnik played 9 d5 but did not gain any advantage. On this occasion the World Champion chooses a different method of development.

9 h3 ♘h5

An interesting idea. Here Black usually plays 9...exd4 10 ♘xd4 ♖c5 followed by 11...a5.

10 ♗e3



Instead of this, 10 b3 came into consideration, in order after 10...♖e7 to develop the bishop at a3, and after other continuations – at b2.

**10...♖e7**

After the development of the bishop at e3, the queen is very comfortably placed at e7.

**11 ♘h2**

White prevents ...f7-f5, but at h2 the knight is very passively placed. 11 ♙e1 looks more natural, in order to continue developing with 12 ♖d2 and 13 ♙ad1. It is very dangerous for Black to play ...f7-f5.

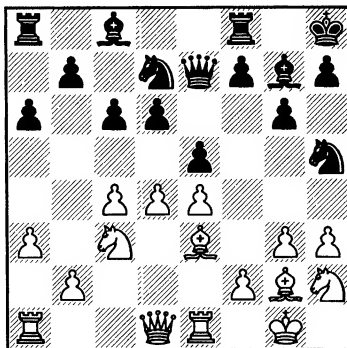
**11...♗h8 12 ♙e1 a6**

Having decided against exchanging on d4, Black avoids play in the centre. White has also forestalled the opponent's attacking ideas on the kingside. Only one possibility for Black remains – an offensive on the queenside.

**13 a3**

A bad move. White weakens his b3 and c4 squares, which Black energetically exploits. Correct was 13

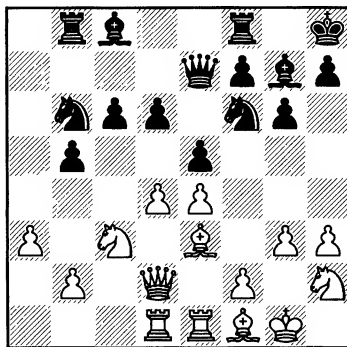
♙c1, preventing 13...b5, when there can follow 14 cxb5 axb5 15 d5.



**13...♙b8 14 ♗f1 ♘h6**

Preparing ...b7-b5, which if played immediately would have been met by 14...b5 15 cxb5 axb5 16 d5.

**15 ♖d2 b5 16 cxb5 axb5 17 ♙ad1 ♘b6**



**18 ♗h6**

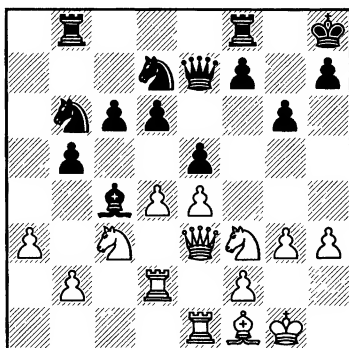
The bishop at g7 is passively placed, and there is no point in exchanging the e3 bishop for it. White

still does not have a bad position. He should have played 18 dxe5 dxe5 19 ♖d6 immediately or after the preparatory 19 b4 ♜fd7. After the move in the game the initiative passes completely to Black.

18...♙xh6 19 ♖xh6 ♙e6 20 ♜f3 ♙b3 21 ♜d2 ♜fd7

Preventing 22 ♜g5, after which Black's pieces on the kingside would have been tied down.

22 ♖e3 ♙c4



23 ♙g2

A poor move, since on g2 the bishop is passively placed. Botvinnik has just exchanged his active bishop for the passive one at g7, and now he does not want to exchange his 'bad' f1 bishop for the dangerous bishop at c4. He would have done better to play his rook to d1 or c2.

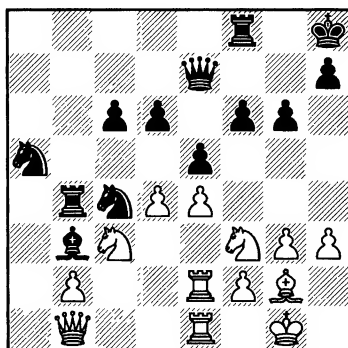
23...f6 24 ♜c2 ♙b3 25 ♜ce2 ♜c4 26 ♖d3 ♜a5 27 ♜d2

There is nothing that White can do. If 27 ♜d2 there could have followed 27...♙c4 28 ♜xc4 bxc4 29 ♖d1 ♜b3 with advantage to Black.

27...♜b6 28 ♖b1

Another knight aims for c4. White cannot exchange the queens, as after 28 dxe5 dxe5 29 ♖d6 ♖xd6 30 ♜xd6 Black wins a pawn by 30...♜bc4.

28...♜bc4 29 ♜de2 b4 30 axb4 ♜xb4



31 h4

In search of counterplay, Botvinnik tries to weaken the opponent's kingside.

31...♜b6

31...♜fb8 was even stronger.

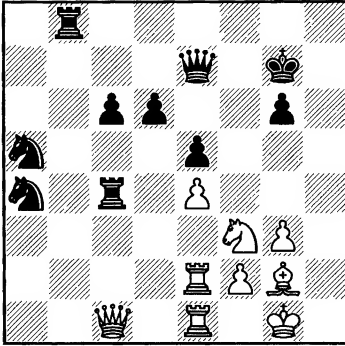
32 ♜a2 ♙xa2 33 ♖xa2 ♜bc4 34 h5 ♜fb8 35 hxg6 hxg6 36 ♖b1

36 ♜b1 is bad because of 36...♖b7, when Black threatens 37...♜b3 followed by 38...♜a8.

36...♙g7 37 dxe5 fxe5 38 ♖c1 ♜xb2 39 ♖c3 ♜a4 40 ♖c1 ♜c4

Both players were in time severe trouble, and this explains their inaccuracies. With 40...c5 Black could have won much more easily.

At this point the game was adjourned.



#### 41 ♖g5

The sealed move. White's alternatives were 41 ♖a3 and 41 ♖c2. After 41 ♖c2 the strongest reply is the exchange on c2, as if 41...♖cb4 White creates dangerous threats with 42 ♖h2. After 41 ♖a3 Black could have played 41...c5 and then transferred his knight from a5 to d4. In general, it is easier for Black to realise his advantage with the queens on, and therefore the exchange of queens carried out by Botvinnik is the strongest continuation.

#### 41...♗xg5 42 ♖xg5 ♖b3 43 f4

Now there is the danger of a white rook breaking through onto the 7th rank.

#### 43...♖d4 44 ♖a2 ♖b2

Black accurately realises his advantage. By exchanging rooks he simultaneously parries two threats: 45 ♖e1 and 45 ♗f1 followed by 46 ♖h2.

#### 45 ♖xb2 ♖xb2 46 ♖h2

The ending after 46 ♖a1 ♖c1+ 47 ♖xc1 ♖e2+ is hopeless for White, as

the two black knights successfully support the advance of the c-pawn.

#### 46...♖d3 47 ♖e3

This makes things easier for Black. Better defensive chances were offered by 47 ♖f1, e.g. 47...♖c2 48 ♖d1 (but not 48 f5 ♖f2), threatening if the knight moves from d3 to play 49 ♖a1. After 47 ♖f1 Black would have to reckon with the threat of f4-f5, whereas after the text move none of the white pieces has any future.

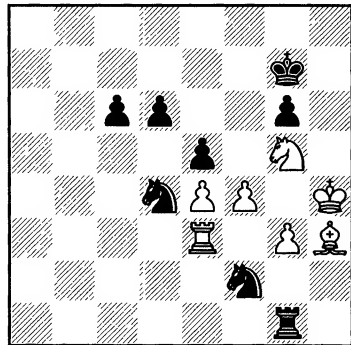
#### 47...♖c3

Threatening to consolidate the knight's position at d3 by ...c6-c5-c4. White's reply is forced.

#### 48 ♗f1 ♖c2+ 49 ♖h3

No better is 49 ♖g1 ♖c1 50 ♖a3 ♖ce2+, winning another pawn.

49...♖f2+ 50 ♖h4 ♖c1 51 ♗g2 ♖g1 52 ♗h3



#### 52...♖h1

The white king is in danger. Black is threatening, after moving his king, to play ...♖e6, winning a piece, against which White has no defence.

53 fxе5 dxе5 54 ♖a3 ♖f6 55

♖h7+ ♕e7 56 ♘g5 ♗d6

On the last move before the time control Black overlooks the immediate win by 56...♗e6, but a move later, having noticed it, he tries to return to the same position.

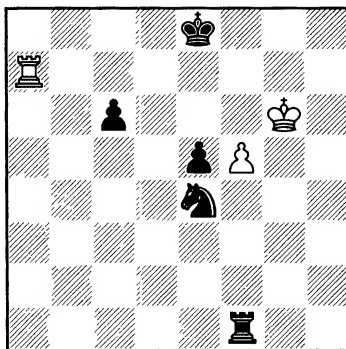
57 ♘f7+ ♕e7 58 ♗g5

Since the piece cannot be saved, Botvinnik gives it up voluntarily.

58...♗xf7 59 ♖a7+ ♕e8 60 ♗d7+ ♗d8 61 ♗xg6 ♘xe4 62 g4 ♖f1

Not 62...♗b5 63 ♖b7 ♘c5 64 ♗xc6 ♘xb7 65 ♗xh1.

63 ♗f5 ♘xf5 64 gxh5 ♕e8



White resigns



# Benoni set-ups

In this section we have grouped together a few games that are quite diverse in nature, but are characterised by the following pawn formation: Black plays ...c7-c5 and White replies d4-d5.

Game 41  
 White: **David Bronstein**  
 Black: **Oscar Panno**  
*Interzonal Tournament*  
*Gothenburg 1955*

This is a curious game. Panno was a very good King's Indian player. I lost many King's Indians as White, because I did not want to reveal the strongest way to play against it. I varied my play a great deal, and as a consequence I often ended up in inferior positions.

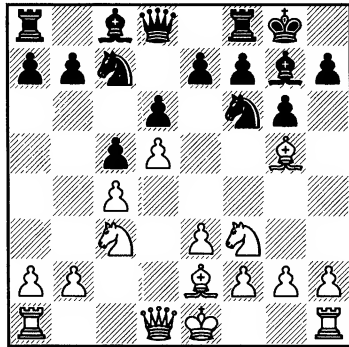
Things are quite different now – the top players compete in tournament after tournament and they invariably employ the best variations. But we were obliged to finish well up in every event, and the value of each point was very high.

1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♘c3 ♙g7 4 ♘f3 0-0 5 ♙g5 d6 6 e3 c5 7 d5 ♘a6 8 ♙e2

White has employed a quiet variation. I thought that, with my pawn at d5, I should be guaranteed a slight advantage.

8...♘c7

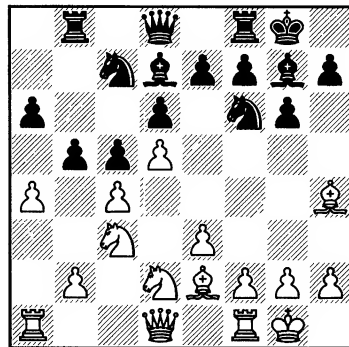
A typical knight manoeuvre to prepare ...b7-b5.



9 0-0 ♖b8 10 a4 a6 11 ♙h4

Instead I should have played 11 a5.

11...b5 12 ♘d2 ♙d7

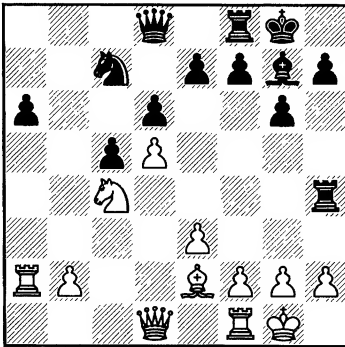


13 ♖a2

At the time I was very pleased with this move, but what I should have

played was 13 ♖c2. In fact White blundered away a pawn (a pure blunder!), although many thought that it was a sacrifice.

13...bxa4 14 ♖xa4 ♙xa4 15 ♖xa4 ♜b4 16 ♖d1 ♗fxd5 17 cxd5 ♜xh4 18 ♖c4



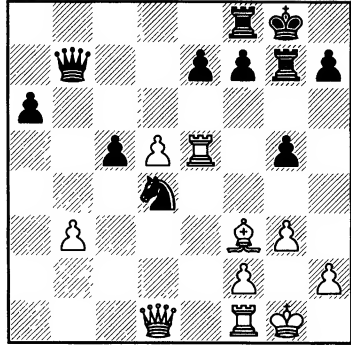
When the situation had clarified, I realised that, despite the loss of the pawn, White's position was not so bad – Black's rook is cut off and his light squares are weak. Later there was a kind of double play – I did not want to lose, and at the same time I had hopes of retaining winning chances.

18...g5 19 g3 ♜h6 20 e4 ♙d4 21 ♗a5 ♖d7 22 ♙g4 ♖b5 23 ♗c6 ♙f6 24 b3 ♙g6 25 ♜e2 ♙g7

A most unusual position for the queen's rook!

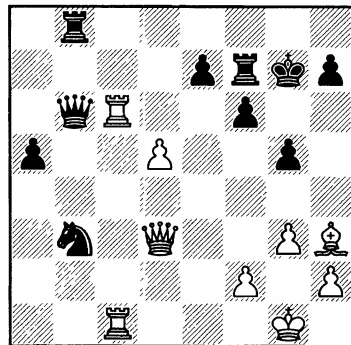
26 ♜e3 ♖b7 27 ♙f3 ♗b5 28 e5 dxe5 29 ♗xe5 ♙xe5 30 ♜xe5 ♗d4

White has allowed first the bishop, and now the knight to reach d4, but he is aiming at the e7 pawn.



On the whole the chances are equal, but Black underestimated the power of the white bishop in an open game.

31 ♙g2 f6 32 ♜e3 ♖a7 33 ♜fe1 a5 34 ♜c3 ♜b8 35 ♖d3 ♜f7 36 ♜ec1 ♙g7 37 ♙h3 ♖b6 38 ♜xc5 ♗xb3 39 ♜c6



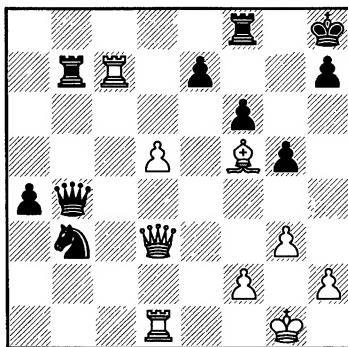
39...♖b4

From move 35 onwards there was a time scramble.

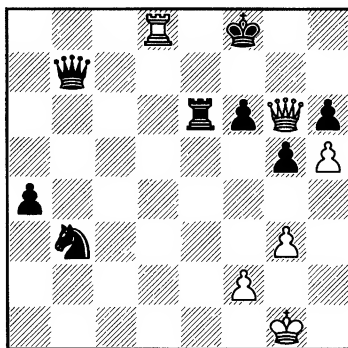
Of course, by now I would have been happy with a draw, but Panno

wrongly avoided 39...♖xc1, as he was evidently relying on the strength of his a-pawn.

40 ♖d1 a4 41 ♙e6 ♜ff8 42 ♜c7  
♙h8 43 ♙f5 ♜b7



44 d6 exd6 45 ♜xb7 ♙xb7 46  
♙xd6 ♙g7 47 h4 h6 48 h5 ♜f7 49  
♙e6 ♜e7 50 ♙d3 ♜xe6 51 ♙g6+ ♙f8  
52 ♜d8+



**Black resigns**

### Game 42

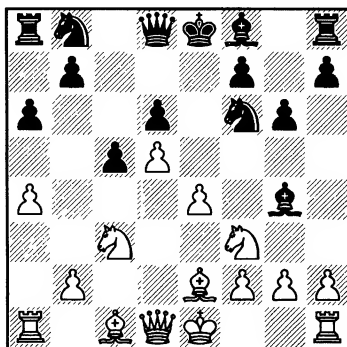
White: **Bernardo Wexler**

Black: **David Bronstein**

*Mar del Plata 1960*

This game is noteworthy for the fact that before it began I incautiously promised that I would sacrifice my queen, i.e. I wanted to say that I intended to play an interesting game. This was my first experience with the given variation.

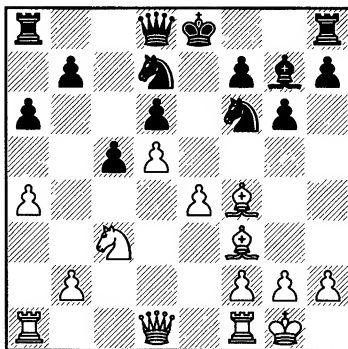
1 d4 ♖f6 2 c4 c5 3 d5 e6 4 ♖c3 exd5  
5 exd5 d6 6 e4 g6 7 ♖f3 a6 8 a4 ♙g4  
9 ♙e2



9...♙xf3

I was loathe to give up my light-square bishop, but at that time I was very much under the influence of the well-known game Nimzowitsch-Marshall, New York 1927, and I thought that it was essential to eliminate as soon as possible the f3 knight, which on no account should be allowed to go to c4.

10 ♖xf3 ♜bd7 11 0-0 ♙g7 12 ♙f4



12... ♗b8

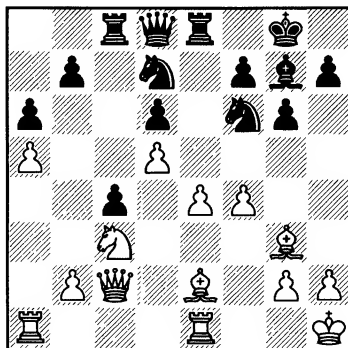
During the game this seemed to me to be a natural move, but then I read somewhere that it was a very important innovation. It turned out that in previous games Black had played ... ♗c7 or ... ♗e7, but after e4-e5 he had ended up in a bad position.

At that time Bernardo Wexler was the Champion of Argentina; he was 40 years old, a strong and experienced player. White chose the correct plan – that of exploiting the strength of his central pawns. I did not care for the prospect of him playing e4-e5, and as a reserve possibility I planned to play my knight to h5, in order to relieve the tension at the cost of spoiled pawns.

13 ♙e2 0-0 14 ♙g3 ♖e8 15 ♗c2 ♗c7 16 f4 c4 17 ♙h1 ♖ac8 18 a5 ♗d8 19 ♖fe1

This was the most interesting moment. The crafty retreat to d8 provokes White into playing 19 ♖a4, winning the c4 pawn, but then Black

has a tactical opportunity: 19... ♜c5 20 ♖xc4 ♜cxe4. White's best was 19 ♙h4 with the threat of ♖a4.



19... ♖c5 20 ♖a4 ♖xa5 21 ♖xc4 b5 22 ♖b4 ♗b6 23 ♙f3 ♗c5 24 ♖b3

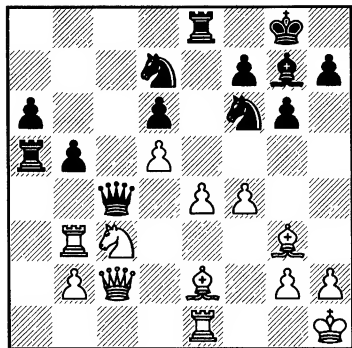
As the game went, Black acquired some play, but with the strong move 24 ♗b3 White had the opportunity to threaten the e4-e5 breakthrough. I would have had to play 24... ♜h5 with a tense position.

24... ♗c4

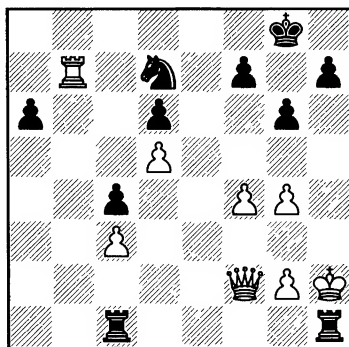
This move, with several threats (... ♜xd5, ... ♜c5 and others), proved to be decisive.

25 ♙e2

After this natural reply I was able to fulfil my promise to the USSR Ambassador in Argentina, Nikolai Borisovich Alekseev – to sacrifice my queen! Fifteen years later, when we accidentally met in Moscow, the first thing he asked me was: 'Look here, David, just how did that miracle happen?', and it was only then that he greeted me. He was very fond of chess.



25... ♖xe4 26 ♙xc4 ♜xg3+ 27  
 hxg3 ♗xe1+ 28 ♔h2 ♖aa1 29 g4  
 ♖ac1 30 ♜f2 bxc4 31 ♖b7 ♙xc3 32  
 bxc3 ♖h1+



White resigns

### Game 43

White: Leonid Shamkovich

Black: David Bronstein

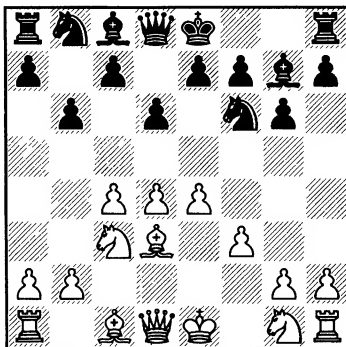
39th USSR Championship

Leningrad 1971

This game is unique, for the fact that in a King's Indian Defence Black

castled on the queenside! I was also very pleased with the final combination.

1 c4 g6 2 d4 ♜f6 3 ♜c3 ♙g7 4 e4 d6  
 5 f3 b6 6 ♙d3



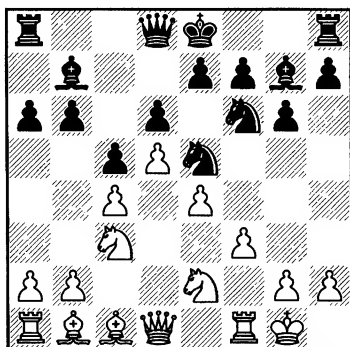
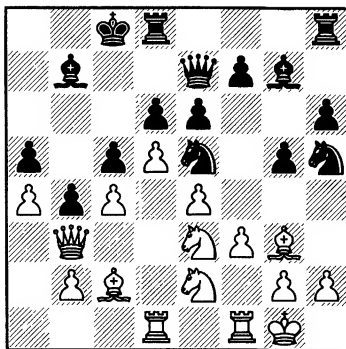
6... ♙b7

The move 6 ♙d3 is my invention. The point is that, if now Black routinely plays to undermine the white centre by 6...c5, then after 7 e5 he loses material. The first time this occurred was in a game of mine with Lutikov (A36), with the difference that Black castled on move 5 and only after 6 ♙e3 played 6...b6. That was back in 1959. More than 10 years later Leonid Shamkovich was trying to test my memory, about which I have no complaints even now!

7 ♜ge2 c5 8 d5 ♜bd7 9 0-0 ♜e5  
 10 ♙b1 a6

At first sight it seems that Black was wrong not to castle – now he would have been able to take the c4 pawn.

In fact, right from the start I had decided to try an innovative idea for Black – castling on the queenside. This has not been played either before, or since, although the plan is quite logical – on the queenside the pawns block the position, and on the kingside there is the chance of a breakthrough. In the present game that is what happened.



### 11 ♖b3

A poor move: White has no suspicion of his opponent's plans and makes it easier for him to carry them out. There is a very old truth in chess: each of the players must be able to hide his intentions and to guess those of his opponent.

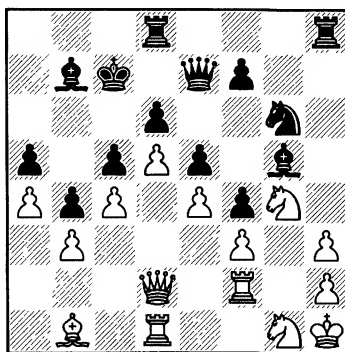
### 11...b5 12 a4

Of course, the line 12 cxb5 c4 13 ♖d1 ♖b6+ 14 ♖d4 ♗xd5! 15 ♗xd5 ♗xf3+ 16 ♖h1 ♗xd4 17 ♗xb6 ♗xe2 18 ♗xa8 ♖xa8 did not satisfy White.

12...b4 13 ♗d1 a5 14 ♖g5 h6 15 ♖h4 g5 16 ♖g3 ♗h5 17 ♗e3 e6 18 ♖c2 ♖e7 19 ♖ad1 0-0-0

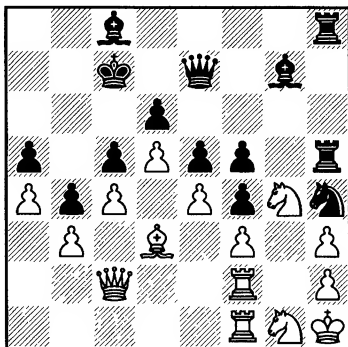
The question arises: can White, by going completely onto the defensive, defend against the mounting threats of the black pieces? However reluctant he was to do so, Shamkovich should have exchanged pawns on e6. It is true that this would have opened the f-file for Black, but later there would have been some hopes of opening up the black king.

20 ♖b1 ♗g6 21 ♖c2 ♗hf4 22 ♖d2 h5 23 b3 ♖h6 24 ♖h1 h4 25 ♖xf4 gxf4 26 ♗g4 h3 27 gxf3 ♖g5 28 ♗g1 e5 29 ♖f2 ♖c7



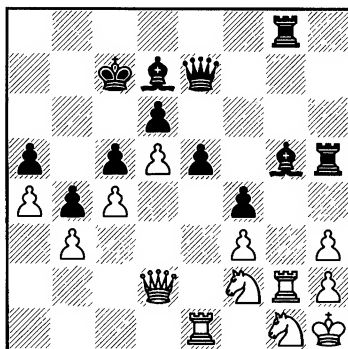
From this point White is completely obliged to 'swim with the tide' – he can only wait.

30 ♖d3 ♙h4 31 ♖g2 ♙c8 32 ♘e2  
 ♗h5 33 ♘g1 ♖dh8 34 ♗e2 ♙g5 35  
 ♗c2 ♙h6 36 ♖f1 ♙g7 37 ♖e2 ♘h4  
 38 ♖ef2 f5



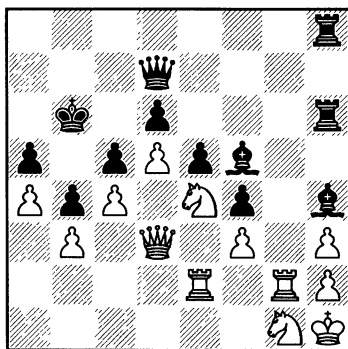
With his pieces completely mobilised, Black lands a blow in the centre (this would not have happened if White had exchanged on e6).

39 exf5 ♘xf5 40 ♗d2 ♙h6 41  
 ♙xf5 ♙xf5 42 ♖e2 ♖g8 43 ♖fe1 ♙d7  
 44 ♖g2 ♙g5 45 ♘f2

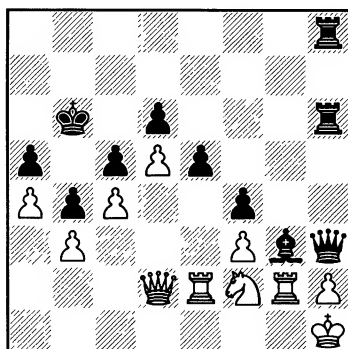


White's last hope was this desperate attempt to defend the h3 pawn with both of his knights, which serve as a kind of armour-plating on the h-file. Black managed to solve this problem with the help of the elegant manoeuvre ...♙g5-h4-g3, after which the h2 pawn could not be defended.

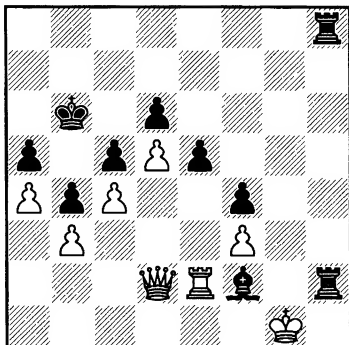
45...♙gh8 46 ♘e4 ♙h4 47 ♖d1  
 ♖5h6 48 ♗e2 ♙f5 49 ♖d2 ♖b6 50  
 ♗d3 ♗d7 51 ♖de2



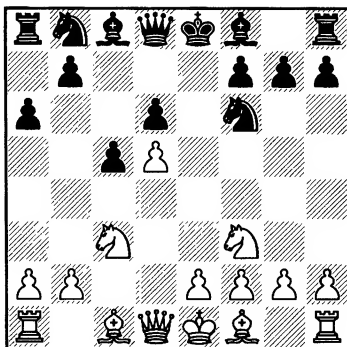
51...♙g3 52 ♗d2 ♙xh3 53 ♘xh3  
 ♗xh3 54 ♘f2



54... ♖xh2+ 55 ♜xh2 ♜xh2+ 56  
♔g1 ♕xf2+



White resigns



7 a4 g6 8 ♖g5 h6 9 ♕h4 ♖g7

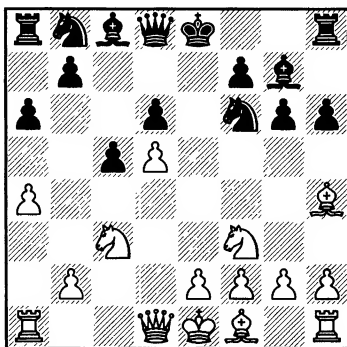
A significant element in this system is the development of Black's light-square bishop. The point is that the white d5 pawn seriously restricts this bishop, and so it aims to break out to g4, in order at any moment to exchange itself for the knight at f3. Therefore, when I play this system as White, I try not to allow Black's bishop to go to g4, and I play h2-h3.

Game 44  
White: **William Hartston**  
Black: **David Bronstein**  
*Tallinn 1979*

The moral of this game is that, when White in a semi-open position plays passively, his pieces may gradually become uncoordinated.

1 d4 ♘f6 2 ♘f3 e6 3 c4 c5 4 d5 exd5  
5 cxd5 d6 6 ♘c3 a6

I am not convinced that this is the most correct move. Black hopes that White will weaken his b4 square, and also that at the necessary moment he will not have the move a2-a3.



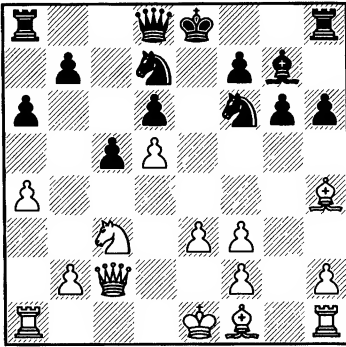
10 e3 ♖g4 11 ♗c2

If 11 ♕e2 I would have immediately exchanged on f3, otherwise ♘d2-



c4. 11 ♖c2 is slightly dubious; perhaps 11 ♖b3 would have been better.

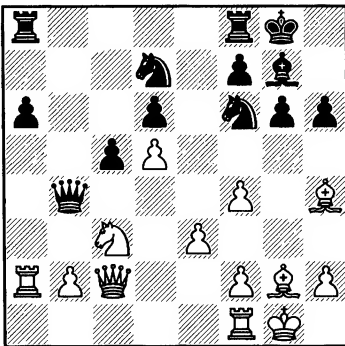
11...♙xf3 12 gxf3 ♘bd7



13 a5

A second element is that White was in too much of a hurry to make this move. It allowed his opponent to advance his b-pawn and open the file, which is usually to Black's advantage.

13...0-0 14 f4 b5 15 axb6 ♗xb6 16 ♖a2 ♗b4 17 ♙g2



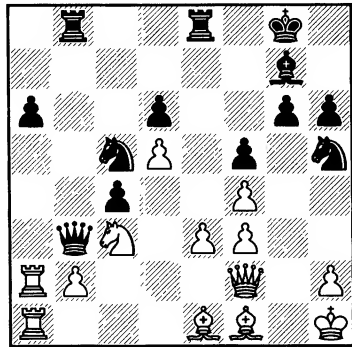
The curious move 16...♗b4 was made in the hope of 17 ♖a4 ♗b7, when White cannot play 18 ♙c4

because of 18...♘b6.

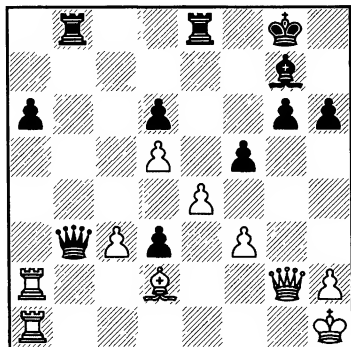
17...c4

The critical moment came after this move. White should not have begrudged giving up his dark-square bishop, and should have exchanged on f6. From this point the initiative passed completely to Black.

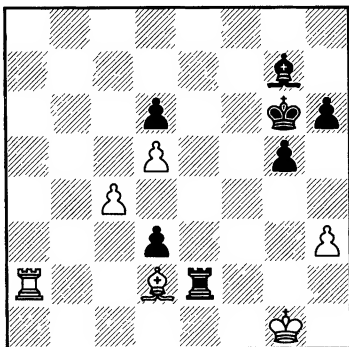
18 0-0 ♘c5 19 ♖d1 ♗fc8 20 ♙f1 ♖ab8 21 f3 ♘h5 22 ♙e1 f5 23 ♙h1 ♖e8 24 ♗f2 ♗b3 25 ♖da1



25...♘d3 26 ♙xd3 cxd3 27 e4 ♘xf4 28 ♙d2 ♘e2 29 ♗g2 ♘xc3 30 bxc3



30...♔xa2 31 ♖xa2 ♖b1+ 32 ♔g1  
 ♖xg1+ 33 ♘xg1 fxe4 34 fxe4 ♖xe4  
 35 ♖xa6 ♖e2 36 ♖a2 g5 37 c4 ♘f7 38  
 h3 ♘g6



White resigns

#### Game 45

White: **Alexander Cherepkov**

Black: **David Bronstein**

*USSR Championship Semi-Final  
 Yaroslavl 1982*

This game was played in the ancient Russian town of Yaroslavl, in a USSR Championship Semi-Final, where I played, on the whole, not badly, winning eight games. But I was slightly unlucky – I had an absolutely won position against Alexander Belyavsky, and in the event of a win I would have qualified for the final.

Then the Moscow Sports Committee, and ‘Dynamo’, and the Yaroslavl tyre factory, in which we played, all solicited on my behalf, but nevertheless I was not admitted. At that time in the USSR the spirit of competitive promise dominated, and a young (sometimes not very skilled) player was preferred to a distinguished veteran with an interesting creative style that appealed to the general public.

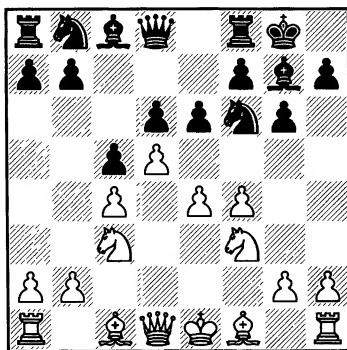
1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♘c3 ♖g7 4 e4 d6  
 5 f4 0-0 6 ♘f3

This position seems to be an ideal one for White – he controls the 5th rank (the line beyond the equator), and has brought out his knights towards the centre.

6...c5 7 d5

The undermining move ...c7-c5 is the natural reaction, but White is not obliged to close the centre. 7 ♖e2 cxd4 8 ♘xd4 ♘c6 9 ♖e3 etc. is satisfactory for him.

7...e6

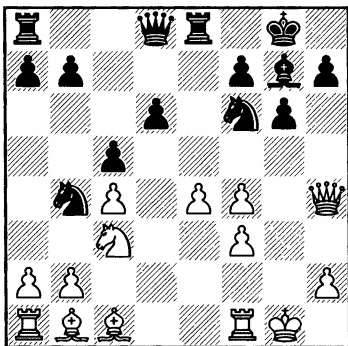


## 8 dxe6

Here there was a curious nuance: perhaps my opponent did not like 8  $\text{♙e2}$  because of 8... $\text{exd5}$  (there was also a new idea – to play 8... $\text{b5}$ !? immediately) 9  $\text{cxd5}$   $\text{♞e8}$ .

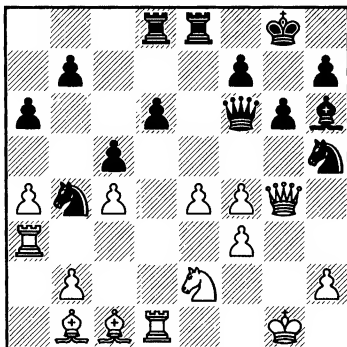
The main drawback for White of the exchange on e6 is that now Black's queen's knight acquires the good square c6.

8... $\text{♙xe6}$  9  $\text{♙d3}$   $\text{♙g4}$  10 0-0  $\text{♜c6}$   
11  $\text{♞e1}$   $\text{♞e8}$  12  $\text{♞h4}$   $\text{♜b4}$  13  $\text{♙b1}$   
 $\text{♙xf3}$  14  $\text{gxf3}$

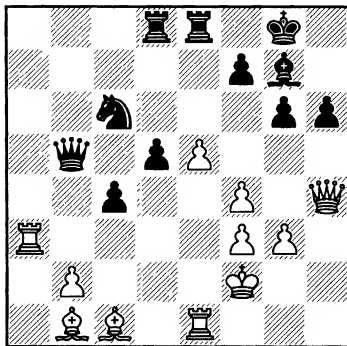


If 14  $\text{♞xf3}$ , then Black would have had both 14... $\text{d5}$ !? with a sharp and roughly equal game, as well as the complicated 14... $\text{b5}$ , e.g. 15  $\text{cxb5}$  (or the even more fantastic variation 15  $\text{f5}$   $\text{♜d7}$  16  $\text{♞xd8}$   $\text{♞axd8}$  17  $\text{♜xb5}$   $\text{♜e5}$  18  $\text{♞f1}$   $\text{♜xc4}$  19  $\text{f6}$   $\text{♙h8}$ ) 15... $\text{d5}$  16  $\text{e5}$   $\text{d4}$  17  $\text{exf6}$   $\text{♙xf6}$ . There was probably a more real explanation for why Cherepkov avoided taking on f3 with his rook. Black could have replied 14... $\text{♜d7}$ ! in order then to calmly put pressure on White's central pawns (... $\text{♜b6}$  etc.).

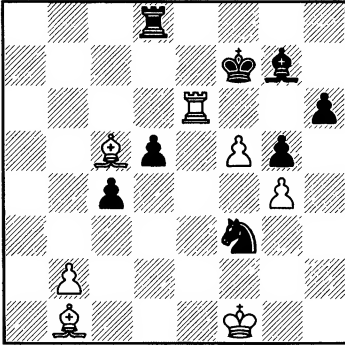
14... $\text{♜h5}$  15  $\text{♞g4}$   $\text{a6}$  16  $\text{a4}$   $\text{♞f6}$  17  
 $\text{♞d1}$   $\text{♙h6}$  18  $\text{♜e2}$   $\text{♞ad8}$  19  $\text{♞a3}$



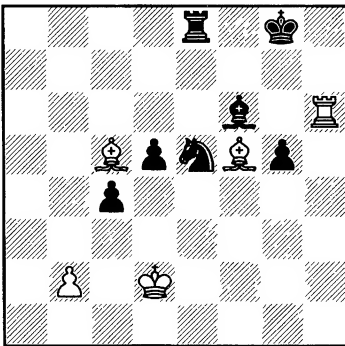
19... $\text{b5}$  20  $\text{axb5}$   $\text{axb5}$  21  $\text{cxb5}$   $\text{d5}$   
22  $\text{e5}$   $\text{♞b6}$  23  $\text{♜g3}$   $\text{♜xg3}$  24  $\text{hxg3}$   
 $\text{♞xb5}$  25  $\text{♞f2}$   $\text{♜c6}$  26  $\text{♞h4}$   $\text{♙g7}$  27  
 $\text{♞h1}$   $\text{h6}$  28  $\text{♞e1}$   $\text{c4}$



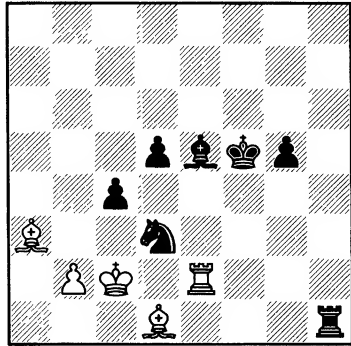
29  $\text{e6}$   $\text{♞b6+}$  30  $\text{♞f1}$   $\text{♜d4}$  31  $\text{f5}$   $\text{g5}$   
32  $\text{exf7+}$   $\text{♞xf7}$  33  $\text{♞h5+}$   $\text{♞f8}$  34  
 $\text{♞ae3}$   $\text{♞xe3}$  35  $\text{♙xe3}$   $\text{♞f6}$  36  $\text{g4}$   $\text{♜xf3}$   
37  $\text{♙c5+}$   $\text{♞g8}$  38  $\text{♞e6}$   $\text{♞f7}$  39  $\text{♞xf7+}$   
 $\text{♞xf7}$



40 ♖e7+ ♔g8 41 ♔e2 ♘h2 42 f6  
 ♙xf6 43 ♜b7 ♘xg4 44 ♙h7+ ♔h8  
 45 ♙f5 ♜e8+ 46 ♔d2 ♘e5 47 ♜h7+  
 ♔g8 48 ♜xh6



48... ♘f3+ 49 ♔c2 ♜e2+ 50 ♔b1  
 ♔f7 51 ♜h7+ ♙g7 52 ♙g4 ♜e1+ 53  
 ♔c2 ♘e5 54 ♙d1 ♔g6 55 ♜h2 ♘d3  
 56 ♙a3 ♙e5 57 ♜g2 ♜h1 58 ♜e2  
 ♔f5



### White resigns

The events that developed in this game after the 14th move were essentially merely a textbook illustration of how to convert a positional advantage: (a) weakened white pawns; (b) complete control by Black of the h8-a1 diagonal; (c) passive, uncoordinated white pieces. Of course, careful, efficient and strong play was still required of Black, but this is precisely what distinguishes a grandmaster from an ordinary amateur.

# White castles queenside

As regards the play in the middlegame, the relative placing of the kings is an even more important factor than the pawn formation. This section covers games where White castles on the queenside, and Black on the kingside, a situation which often leads to a fierce battle with mutual attacks on the kings.

## Game 46

White: **Vladimir Makogonov**

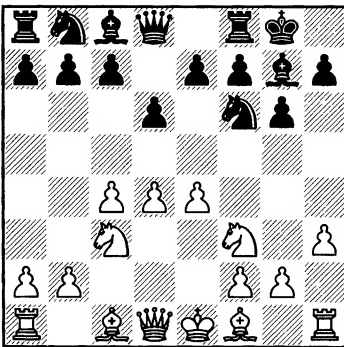
Black: **David Bronstein**

*Bolshevik Sports Society*

*Kiev 1944*

This game is interesting for the fact that Black tried to find a defence against the very strong system that Vladimir Makogonov often played – and to some extent he succeeded.

1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♘f3 ♕g7 4 ♖c3  
d6 5 e4 0-0 h3



It is this move that characterises the variation named after Makogonov.

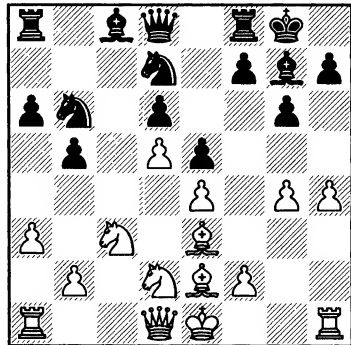
6...c6 7 ♕d3 e5 8 d5 cxd5 9 cxd5  
♗h5

Now, in order to make the planned advance of his pawn to g4, White has to go in for some rather unwieldy manoeuvres.

10 g3 ♖d7 11 ♗e3 a6 12 ♗e2 b5  
13 ♖d2 ♗hf6 14 a3 ♖b6

A notable feature of the opening is that, rather unusually, Black has obtained a strong-point for his knight at c4.

15 g4 ♗fd7 16 h4



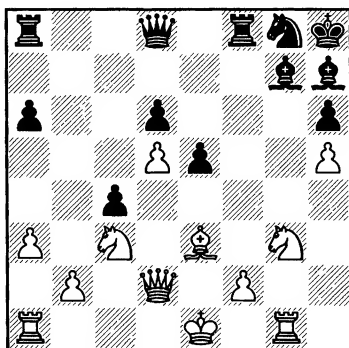
16...f5

Black is not afraid of opening the g-file for the opponent. It is more important to try and activate his pieces.

17 gxf5 gxf5 18 exf5 ♗f6 19 h5

Makogonov thought this was not the best move, because Black was able to play his light-square bishop to h7 and gain counterplay.

19...h6 20 ♖g1 ♔h8 21 ♗f1 ♕xf5  
22 ♜d2 ♗g8 23 ♗g3 ♕h7 24 ♕d3  
♗c4 25 ♕xc4 bxc4



White has eliminated the strong black knight, but now the b-file has been opened for the black rooks, and if he moves his knight from c3, he always has to reckon with the breakthrough ...c4-c3.

26 0-0-0 ♖b8 27 ♗ge4 ♖f7 28 ♖g3  
♗f6 29 ♗xf6 ♜xf6 30 ♖dg1 ♜f5

The intentions of the two sides are clear – White is attacking the g7 bishop, and Black the b2 pawn.

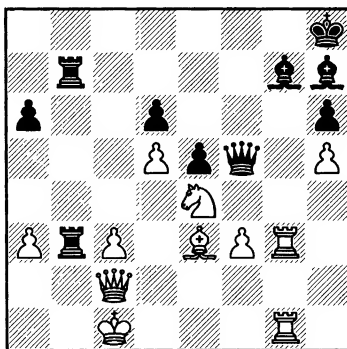
31 f3 ♖b3

In time trouble Black plays rather recklessly. The quiet 31...♖fb7 would have been better.

32 ♗e4 c3 33 bxc3 ♖fb7 34 ♜c2

Were this position to occur in a modern game, any grandmaster with Black would play 34...♕f8, parrying

White's threats while maintaining his own, and would easily realise his advantage.

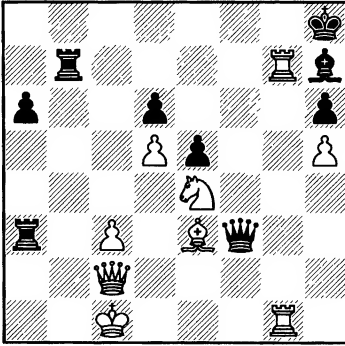


The enormous number of opening guides helps modern grandmasters to make some 15-20 theoretical moves within the space of a few minutes, leaving them a great reserve of time for the rest of the game. But at the time when this game was played only the Queen's Gambit and the Ruy Lopez had been thoroughly studied, and in all the other openings the correct plans had to be sought during the game itself. Thus the time allotted for 40 moves hardly sufficed for the opening alone, and in major tournaments it was a normal occurrence for players to have perhaps only a quarter of an hour left for their last 10-15 moves, or sometimes even less than 5 minutes.

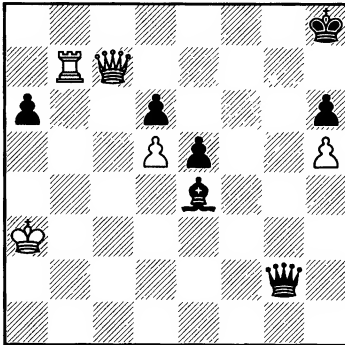
34... ♖xa3 35 ♖xg7 ♜xf3

With a few more seconds on his clock, Black would surely have found 35...♖a1+ 36 ♔d2, when 36...♖xg7 37

♖xg7 ♔xg7 38 ♜b2 ♜xf3 39 ♜xa1  
 ♜xe4 40 ♜xa6 ♜xd5+ 41 ♔e1 leads  
 to a draw, but he can also play more  
 strongly: 36...♖xg1 37 ♖xg1 ♜xf3,  
 retaining the initiative.



36 ♖xb7 ♜xe3+ 37 ♔b2 ♔e4 38  
 ♜c1 ♖xc3 39 ♜xc3 ♜xg1 40 ♜c8+  
 ♜g8 41 ♜c7 ♜g2+ 42 ♔a3



**Black resigns**

### Game 47

White: **Izak Aloni**

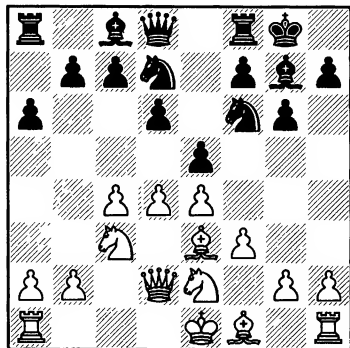
Black: **David Bronstein**

*Olympiad, Moscow 1956*

When the reader plays through this game, he may find it hard to understand the enormous tension of the occasion. Black's opening play was in the nature of an experiment, based on the simple belief that open lines are more important than material, and soon after the opening he found himself in desperate time trouble. All this took place in the World (Team) Championship, where a loss by one of the Soviet players was considered a disgrace.

1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♘c3 ♔g7 4 e4 d6  
 5 f3 e5 6 ♘ge2 0-0 7 ♔e3 ♘bd7 8  
 ♜d2 a6

With the idea that 9 0-0-0 can be met by 9...b5. However, if the opponent had replied 9 d5 and only then g2-g4, Black would have found it hard to obtain any play...



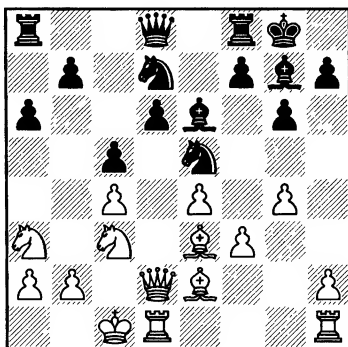
9 g4

But this wing attack, made before the centre is stabilised, is premature.

9...exd4 10 ♖xd4 c5

A typical King's Indian move: Black believes that the dynamic play he gains for his pieces will outweigh the static weaknesses he creates on the d-file.

11 ♗c2 ♜e5 12 ♙e2 ♙e6 13 ♜a3 ♜fd7 14 0-0



14...b5

All Black's actions are standard King's Indian moves! The advance of the queenside pawns has the aim of opening lines, setting White difficult problems.

15 cxb5 axb5 16 ♜cxb5 c4 17 ♜xd6 ♜a5

17...c3 18 ♜xc3 ♜a5 would have been better, as now White could have played 18 ♙d2, e.g. 18...c3 19 ♙xc3 ♜fc8 20 ♙b1 and it is not clear how Black continues the attack.

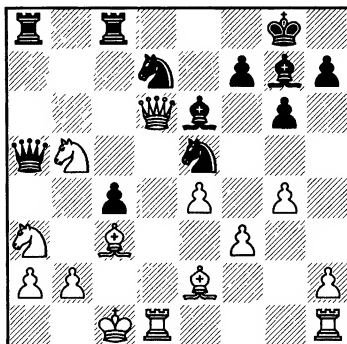
This was the one doubtful moment when Black might have lost the game. This is how the analysts reason – they

assume that you are playing an ideal opponent, as in a correspondence game. But in a practical game there is the clock ticking away, and the opponent is nervous, you are nervous...

18 ♙d4 ♜fc8

Now all the black pieces, without exception, are actively placed. White's forces are scattered, and are unable to organise a defence.

19 ♙c3



19...♜d3+ 20 ♙xd3 ♙xc3 21 ♜xc3 cxd3 22 ♜xd3 ♜e5

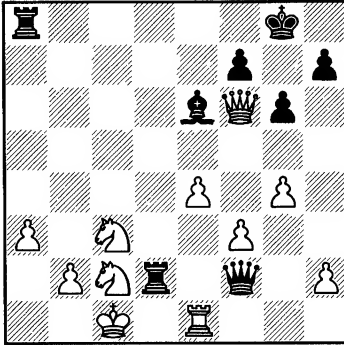
Would 22...♜c5 have been better? After 23 ♜e3 ♜a4 24 ♜ab1 it is a pity that 24...♜xb2 25 ♙xb2 ♜xa2+ does not work because of 26 ♙c1, but on the other hand 24...♙xa2 leaves White hard-pushed to find a defence.

23 ♜e3 ♜d8 24 ♜e7 ♜d7 25 ♜f6 ♜c5 26 ♜c2 ♜d3+ 27 ♜xd3 ♜xd3 28 a3

Instead of this, 28 ♜d1 would have given White some drawing chances.

28...♜f2 29 ♜e1 ♜d2





White resigns

#### Game 48

White: **Arthur Bisguier**

Black: **David Bronstein**

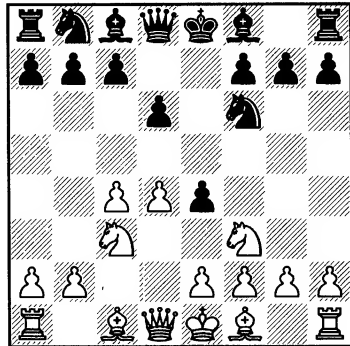
*Budapest 1961*

This game does not follow a strict King's Indian move order, but the position reached after a dozen moves is very much in keeping with our theme.

**1 d4 ♖f6 2 c4 d6 3 ♗c3 e5 4 ♗f3 e4**

With his fourth move White granted his opponent the possibility of advancing his central pawn with tempo, which is what I did. However, the well-known Yugoslav player Andrija Fuderer – he later gave up chess and became a professor of Chemistry in Antwerp – usually played the very interesting move 4...♗d7. He would then continue

...♗a6, ...c7-c6, ...♙e7, ...0-0, ...♗e8 and ...♙f8 (cf., for example, Game A25). At the same time, if Black plays 4...♗bd7, then 5 ♙g5 is unpleasant, as it is hard to get rid of the pin (cf. Game A50).



The move played by me is slightly risky; the white knight could also have gone to d2 or g5.

**5 ♗g1**

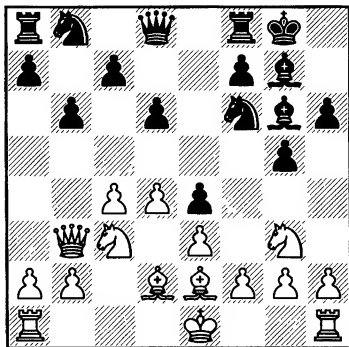
In the first case Black can sacrifice a pawn – 5 ♗d2 e3 with unclear consequences. If instead 5 ♗g5 ♙f5, then White has the interesting move 6 g4 when he has the more attractive position, with more space in the centre.

**5...h6 6 ♙f4 g5 7 ♙d2 ♙g7 8 e3 ♙f5 9 ♗ge2 ♙g6 10 ♗b3**

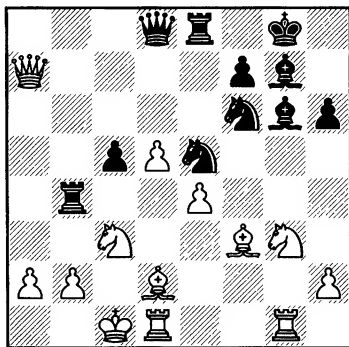
In this unusual position I very much wanted to give up my b7 pawn, and it was with difficulty that I restrained myself from doing so.

**10...b6 11 ♗g3 0-0 12 ♙e2**

White is ready to castle, so now is the moment to strike at the centre.



12...c5 13 dxc5 bxc5 14 f3 d5 15  
 cxd5 exf3 16 gxf3 ♘bd7 17 e4 ♞b8  
 18 ♚a3 ♞e8 19 0-0-0 g4 20 ♞hg1  
 ♞b4 21 ♚xa7 gxf3 22 ♙xf3 ♘e5



An outwardly very complicated position has arisen, but note that Black's pieces are more usefully placed – his knights have posts in the centre, his bishops are trained on White's weak points, and his rooks have half-open files.

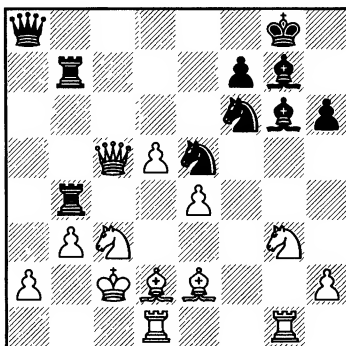
Somewhere around the 20-move mark, when it became quite

impossible to work out the variations, Arthur Bisguier, a highly intelligent man with a good sense of humour, decided to take everything that was going, and he was soon three (!) pawns up.

23 ♙e2 ♞e7 24 ♚xc5 ♞eb7 25 b3  
 ♚a8

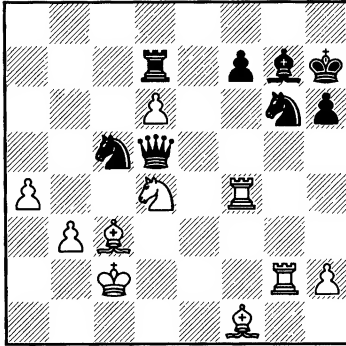
This is the move that I like best in this game. Some analyst may be able to find a defence, but during the game it was difficult even to understand what was threatened.

26 ♙c2



Black's heavy pieces are 'trained' directly on the white king's position, and simultaneously the two bishops are mounting a latent attack. The next move of the black rook immediately decides the outcome.

26...♞xe4 27 ♘gxe4 ♘xe4 28  
 ♞xg6 ♘xc5 29 ♞g2 ♞a7 30 a4 ♘g6  
 31 ♙c4 ♚c8 32 ♞f1 ♚h3 33 ♞ff2  
 ♘e5 34 ♙f1 ♚h4 35 ♞f4 ♚d8 36  
 ♞b4 ♙h7 37 ♘b5 ♞d7 38 d6 ♚f6  
 39 ♞f4 ♚e6 40 ♘d4 ♚d5 41 ♙c3  
 ♘g6



White resigns

#### Game 49

White: **David Bronstein**

Black: **Viktor Kupreichik**

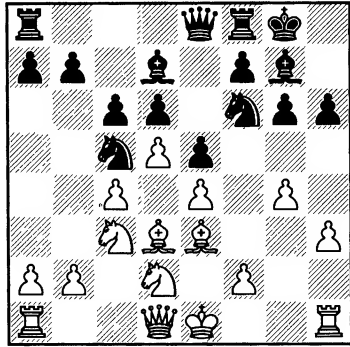
*USSR Championship Semi-Final  
Minsk 1983*

A difficult game for both sides. It is sufficient to say that White castled only on the 24th move – before that he simply did not have time. I employed, if it can be so expressed, the ‘improved Makogonov Variation’.

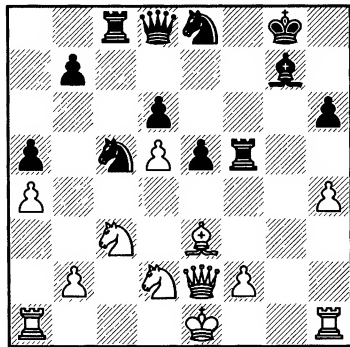
1  $\text{Nf3}$   $\text{Nf6}$  2  $\text{c4}$   $\text{d6}$  3  $\text{Nc3}$   $\text{g6}$  4  $\text{d4}$   
 $\text{g7}$  5  $\text{e4}$   $\text{0-0}$  6  $\text{h3}$   $\text{e5}$  7  $\text{d5}$   $\text{Na6}$  8  
 $\text{g5}$   $\text{h6}$  9  $\text{Qe3}$   $\text{We8}$  10  $\text{g4}$   $\text{Qd7}$  11  
 $\text{Qd3}$   $\text{c6}$  12  $\text{Nd2}$   $\text{Nc5}$

The point is that Black, after posting his knight at c5, began a battle for the centre. White kept his king in the centre, and at the necessary moment exchanged his dark-square bishop for this knight (Vladimir

Makogonov, as a rule, begrudged giving up this bishop, and preferred to give up his light-square bishop, for example, after the manoeuvre ... $\text{Nb8-d7-b6-c4}$ ).



13  $\text{Qc2}$   $\text{a5}$  14  $\text{a3}$   $\text{cxd5}$  15  $\text{cxd5}$   
 $\text{Kc8}$  16  $\text{a4}$   $\text{Wd8}$  17  $\text{We2}$   $\text{Ne8}$  18  $\text{h4}$   $\text{f5}$   
 19  $\text{gxf5}$   $\text{gxf5}$  20  $\text{exf5}$   $\text{Qxf5}$  21  $\text{Qxf5}$   
 $\text{Kxf5}$



22  $\text{Qxc5}$   $\text{Kxc5}$  23  $\text{Nde4}$

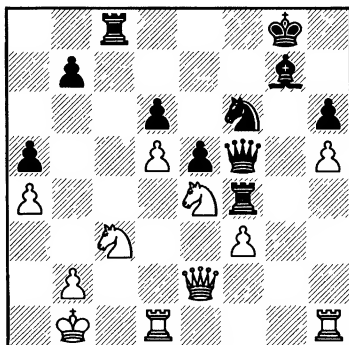
The white knight has taken up a strong post at e4, and the bishop at g7,

which usually plays an important role in Black's counterplay, in this case proves to be a passive piece.

23 ..♖c8 24 0-0-0 ♜f4 25 h5 ♘f6

Strategically this game was conducted almost ideally by White, but at this point Black was obliged to play better than in the game: 25...b5 26 axb5 a4 with definite counterplay.

26 ♔b1 ♚d7 27 f3 ♚f5



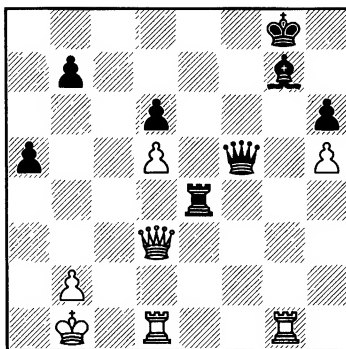
The white knight at e4 is holding up the advance of the black e-pawn. The black bishop at g7 is restricted by its own pawns and is passively placed. At the same time, the white rooks are ready to begin an attack on the g-file.

28 ♔a2 ♜xc3

This exchange sacrifice does not help.

29 ♘xc3 ♜b4 30 ♚d3 e4 31 fxe4 ♘xc4 32 ♘xe4 ♜xa4+ 33 ♔b1 ♜xe4 34 ♜hg1

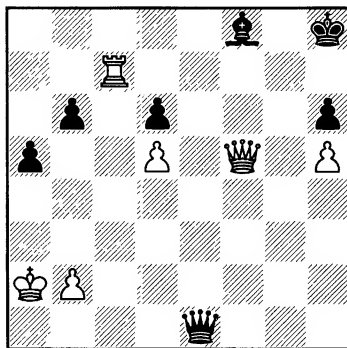
The decisive move, by which White nips in the bud the opponent's attacking pretensions, and himself launches a decisive attack.



34...♔h8 35 ♚c2 ♚e5 36 ♚c8+ ♚e8

Black is forced to block with his queen, as otherwise disaster awaits him: 36...♔h7 37 ♜xg7+ ♔xg7 38 ♜g1+ and wins.

37 ♜c1 b6 38 ♜c7 ♔f8 39 ♚f5 ♜e1+ 40 ♜xe1 ♚xe1+ 41 ♔a2



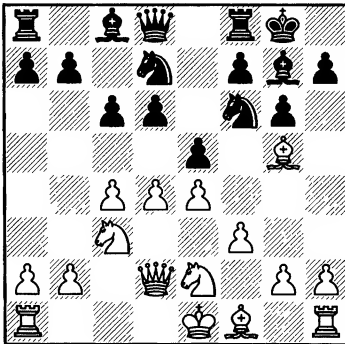
**Black resigns**

## Game 50

White: **Malcolm Pein**  
 Black: **David Bronstein**  
*London League 1997*

This short game is very instructive. In the Sämisch Variation Black must play very energetically. However, White in turn has learned to mount an attack with minimum risk.

1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♘c3 ♙g7 4 e4 d6  
 5 f3 0-0 6 ♘ge2 e5 7 ♙g5 c6 8 ♚d2  
 ♘bd7



This position has occurred on many occasions.

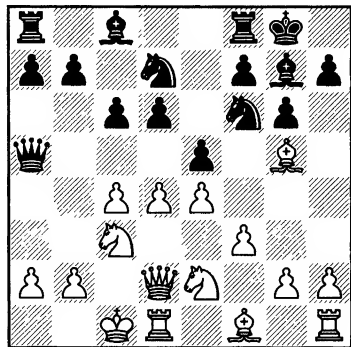
9 0-0-0

One of the most famous games in the history of Soviet chess continued 9 d5 c5 10 g4 a6 11 ♘g3 ♜e8 12 h4 ♚a5 13 ♙h6 ♘f8 14 h5 ♚c7 15 ♙d3 b5 16 0-0-0 bxc4 17 ♙b1 ♙h8 18 ♜dg1 ♜b8 19 ♘f5!! (Tal-Tolush, Moscow 1957). By winning it, the then 20-year-old student from Riga became the Champion of the USSR.

The following year he repeated his success, and he did not stop until 1960, when he became World Champion by defeating the great Botvinnik.

Players with White liked playing this position against the young Fischer. Once 9 d5 was played against him and White gained the advantage. After this Bobby refrained from ...♘bd7 and in a game with Pachman he played 8...♚a5, but after 9 d5 cxd5 10 ♘xd5! he ended up in an inferior position. This happened in 1958 at Portoroz. Many years later the Czech grandmaster was not averse to repeating this very variation in a game with me in 1994 at the Donner Memorial Tournament. However, I quickly exchanged on d4 and organised a break in the centre (cf. Game A61).

9...♚a5



My present opponent, Malcolm Pein, preferred to castle long. One of his games had continued 9...a6 10 ♘b1 b5. I decided to be a little crafty

and play 9...♙a5 immediately. Reckoning that for the moment the advance of the b-pawn was not threatened, White quickly replied

10 ♖h6

Of course, the move 10 ♖b1 was obligatory.

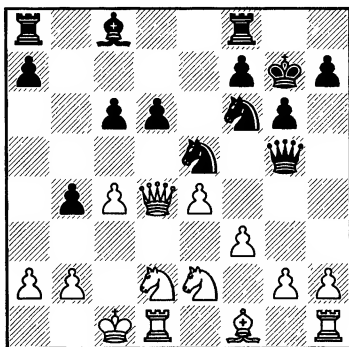
10...b5

This move nevertheless followed, and Black seized the initiative.

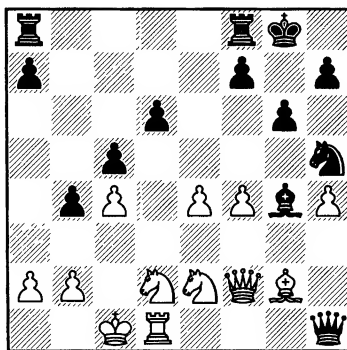
11 ♖xg7 ♔xg7 12 ♘g3 b4 13 ♘b1 exd4 14 ♙xd4 ♙g5+

This pretty, long queen check had already occurred in a similar position in the game Stoltz-Petrosian, Bucharest 1953 (cf. Game A16).

15 ♘d2 ♘e5 16 ♘e2



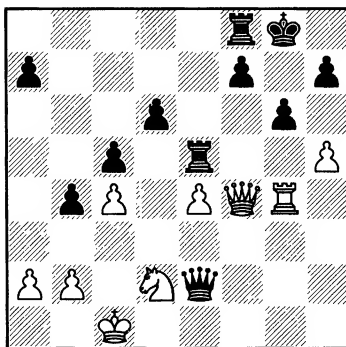
16...c5 17 h4 ♙xg2 18 ♙xe5 ♙xh1  
19 ♙g3 ♘h5 20 ♙f2 ♔g8 21 f4 ♖g4  
22 ♖g2



22...♘xf4

My opponent had been hoping to trap my queen, but this reply, planned in advance, made everything clear.

23 ♙xf4 ♙xg2 24 ♖g1 ♙xe2 25 ♖xg4 ♖ae8 26 h5 ♖e5



White resigns

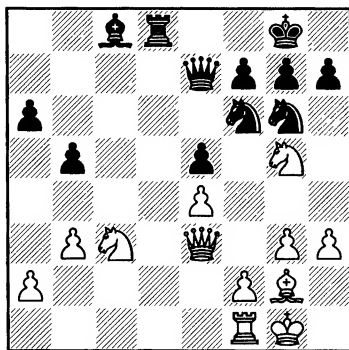
## 6 64 additional games

All these games feature either in the chapter on standard moves or in the tests, or are mentioned in the commentaries in the previous chapter. They are arranged in chronological order and numbered A1-A64.

**A1 B.Goldenov–D.Bronstein**  
*Ukrainian Championship*  
*Dnepropetrovsk 1939*

This early attempt with the Old Indian Defence, against a regular competitor in Ukrainian Championships, was played when the author was just 15 years old.

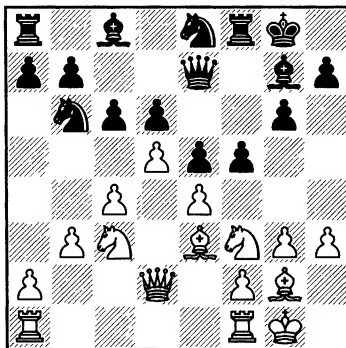
1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 d6 3 ♘c3 e5 4 ♘f3 ♘bd7 5 g3 ♙e7 6 ♙g2 c6 7 0-0 0-0 8 e4 ♖c7 9 b3 ♜d8 10 ♙a3 ♘f8 11 h3 a6 12 ♖c2 ♘g6 13 ♞ad1 ♙e6 14 ♞d2 b5 15 dxe5 dxe5 16 ♙xe7 ♖xe7 17 cxb5 ♞xd2 18 ♖xd2 ♞d8 19 ♖e3 cxb5 20 ♘g5 ♙c8



21 ♘d5 ♘xd5 22 exd5 f5 23 ♞d1 e4 24 h4 ♖d6 25 a4 ♘e7 26 axb5 axb5 27 ♙f1 ♘xd5 28 ♖a7 ♙e6 29 ♙xb5 e3 30 ♘xe6 ♖xe6 31 ♙c4 ♘f8 32 ♖xe3 1-0

**A2 A.Koblents–D.Bronstein**  
*USSR Championship Semi-Final*  
*Baku 1944*

1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 d6 3 ♘f3 ♘bd7 4 ♘c3 e5 5 g3 ♙g6 6 ♙g2 ♙g7 7 0-0 0-0 8 e4 c6 9 h3 ♘e8 10 ♙e3 ♖e7 11 ♖d2 f5 12 d5 ♘b6 13 b3

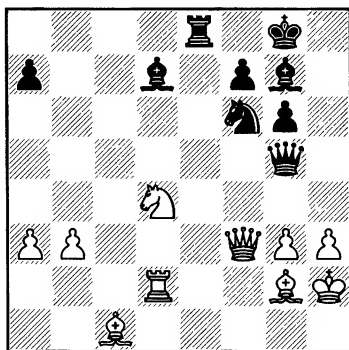


13...f4 14 gxf4 exf4 15 ♙d4 c5 16 ♙xg7 ♖xg7 17 e5 dxe5 18 ♞fel ♖h6 19 ♘h2 g5 20 ♘xe5 g4 21 ♘e4 ♙f5 22 ♞ad1 ♘g7 23 ♘xc5 ♞ac8 24 ♘cd3 ♙xd3 25 ♘xd3 ♘d7 26 ♞e4 ♖d6 27 f3 ♘f6 28 ♞e5 b5 29 ♞c1 bxc4 30 bxc4 ♘d7 31 ♞g5 ♖h6 32 ♞xg4 ♘f6 33 ♞xf4 ♘gh5 34 ♞c2 ♘xf4 35 ♖xf4 ♖g6 36 ♖d4 ♘h5 37 ♖g4 ♘f6 38 ♖xg6+ hxg6 39 f4 ♞fd8 40 ♘e5 ♘xd5 41 ♘xg6 ♘g7 42 ♙xd5 ♘xg6 43 ♞e2 ♞c5

44 ♖g3 ♜d6 45 ♖g4 ♜f6 46 f5 ♞a5 47  
 ♜f4 ♞a4 48 ♜e4 ♜da6 49 ♜g2 ♞xa2 50  
 ♜g6+ ♜e7 51 ♜g7+ ♜f6 52 ♜g6+ ♜e7  
 53 ♞xa6 ♞xa6 54 ♜e5 ♞h6 55 ♙e6 a5  
 56 c5 a4 57 c6 ½-½

**A3 A.Kotov–D.Bronstein**  
*14th USSR Championship*  
*Moscow 1945*

1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 d6 3 ♘c3 e5 4 ♘f3  
 ♘bd7 5 g3 g6 6 ♙g2 ♙g7 7 0-0 0-0 8  
 e4 c6 9 h3 exd4 10 ♘xd4 ♘b6 11 b3 d5  
 12 cxd5 cxd5 13 exd5 ♘bxd5 14 ♘xd5  
 ♘xd5 15 ♙b2 ♞a5 16 ♞f3 ♜d8 17  
 ♞fd1 h5 18 a3 ♞b6 19 ♜d2 h4 20 ♞ad1  
 ♘f6 21 ♜h2 ♞e8 22 ♞e2 ♞xe2 23  
 ♞xe2 ♙d7 24 ♞f3 ♞e8 25 ♞xb7 ♞d6  
 26 ♞f3 ♞e5 27 ♜d2 hxg3+ 28 fxg3  
 ♞g5 29 ♙c1

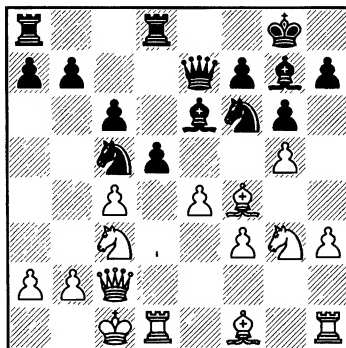


29...♘e4 (29...♘g4+ 30 hxg4 ♙xg4  
 followed by 31...♞h6+ would have  
 been stronger) 30 ♜d1 ♞d5 31 ♘c2  
 ♞c6 32 ♘b4 ♞c8 33 ♞d3 ♙f5 34 ♞c4  
 ♞xc4 35 bxc4 a5 36 ♘c6 ♘f2 37 ♜d8  
 ♞xd8 38 ♘xd8 ♘d3 39 ♙e3 a4 40 c5  
 ♙f8 41 ♘b7 ♙e6 42 ♘d6 f5 43 ♙c6 g5  
 44 ♙b5 f4 45 ♙d4 ♘e1 46 ♙c3 ♘c2

47 ♙xa4 ♘xa3 48 gxf4 gxf4 49 ♙b4  
 ♘b1 50 ♙c2 ♙a2 51 c6 ♘d2 52 c7  
 ♙e6 53 ♙xd2 ♙xd6 54 ♙b3 ♙xc7 55  
 ♙xe6+ ♜g7 56 ♜g2 ♜f6 57 ♙d7 ♙e5  
 58 ♜f3 ♜g5 59 ♙e1 ♙d6 60 h4+ ♜h6  
 61 ♜g4 ♜g6 62 h5+ ♜h6 63 ♙h4 ♙e5  
 64 ♙g5+ ♜g7 65 ♜f5 ♙c7 66 h6+ ♜h7  
 67 ♙e8 ♙d8 68 ♙g6+ 1-0

**A4 Yu.Solntsev–D.Bronstein**  
*Moscow Championship 1946*

1 d4 ♘f6 2 ♘f3 g6 3 c4 ♙g7 4 ♘c3 d6  
 5 e4 ♘bd7 6 h3 e5 7 ♙e3 exd4 8 ♘xd4  
 0-0 9 ♘de2 ♞e8 10 ♞c2 ♘c5 11 f3  
 ♞e7 12 0-0-0 c6 13 ♙f4 ♜d8 14 g4  
 ♙e6 15 ♘g3 d5 16 g5



16...d4 17 ♘a4

Or 17 gxf6 ♞xf6 18 ♘ce2 d3, with a  
 decisive breakthrough.

17...♘xa4 18 ♞xa4 ♘d7 19 ♞a5 b6  
 20 ♞a4 ♘e5 21 ♙d3 b5 22 cxb5 cxb5  
 23 ♙xb5 ♞c5+ 24 ♜b1 ♞ab8

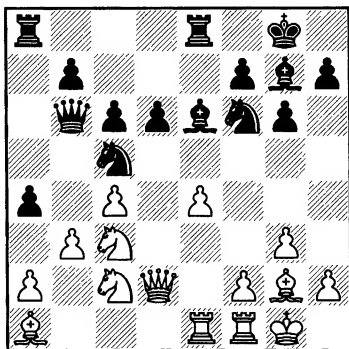
This is an ideal position for Black,  
 with all his pieces displaying great  
 energy.

25 ♙xe5 ♙xe5 26 f4 ♞xb5 27 ♘e2  
 ♞db8 28 ♜d2 ♞a5 0-1



**A5 V.Baturinsky–D.Bronstein**  
*Moscow Championship 1946*

1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 d6 3 ♘f3 ♖bd7 4 g3 g6 5  
 ♗g2 ♗g7 6 0-0 0-0 7 ♘c3 e5 8 e4 c6 9  
 b3 ♖e8 10 ♗b2 exd4 11 ♘xd4 ♖b6 12  
 ♗d2 ♘c5 13 ♖ae1 a5 14 ♘c2 ♗e6 15  
 ♗a1 a4



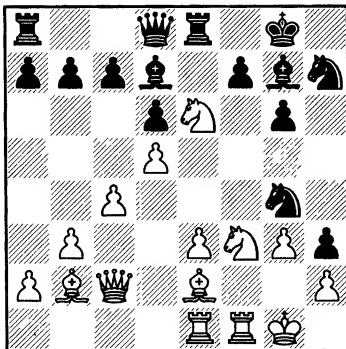
Standard play by Black. The d6 pawn is invulnerable. It can be taken, of course, but in return Black develops an irresistible attack. After ...a4-a3 he acquired a new target – the a2 pawn.

16 b4 ♘cd7 17 ♘e3 ♘e5 18 ♖b1  
 ♘xc4 19 ♘xc4 ♗xc4 20 ♖fc1 a3 21  
 ♗xd6 ♖ed8 22 ♗c5 ♗xc5 23 bxc5 ♘d7  
 24 ♖b4 ♗e6 25 ♖xb7 ♘xc5 26 ♖bb1  
 ♘d3 27 ♖c2 ♖ab8 28 ♖xb8 ♖xb8 29  
 ♗f1 ♘b4 30 ♖d2 ♘xa2 31 ♘xa2 ♗xa1  
 32 ♗d3 ♖d8 33 ♖d1 ♗b2 0-1

**A6 K.Opočenský–D.Bronstein**  
*Prague v. Moscow 1946*

1 ♘f3 ♘f6 2 b3 d6 3 d4 g6 4 ♗b2 ♗g7  
 5 ♘bd2 ♘bd7 6 e3 0-0 7 c4 e5 8 ♗e2  
 ♖e8 9 0-0 e4 10 ♘e1 ♘f8 11 ♘c2 ♗f5  
 12 d5 h5 13 ♘d4 ♗d7 14 ♗c2 h4 15

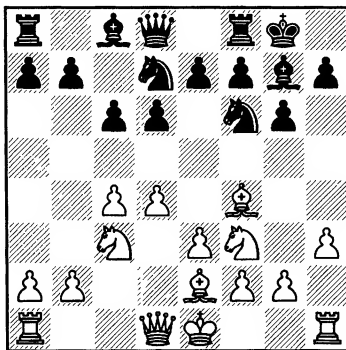
♖ae1 h3 16 g3 ♘h7 17 f4 exf3 18  
 ♘2xf3 ♘g4 19 ♘e6



19... ♘xe3 20 ♗d3 ♗xe6 21 ♗xg7 ♗f5  
 22 ♗c3 f6 23 ♗h6 ♘xf1 24 ♗xf1 ♗d7  
 25 ♘d4 ♘g5 0-1

**A7 S.Flohr–D.Bronstein**  
*15th USSR Championship*  
*Leningrad 1947*

1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 d6 3 ♘f3 ♘bd7 4 ♗f4 g6  
 5 ♘c3 ♗g7 6 h3 0-0 7 e3 c6 8 ♗e2

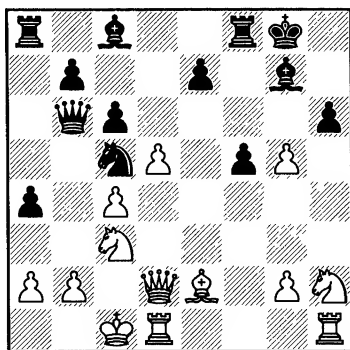


8...a6 9 0-0 b5 10 ♘d2 ♘b6 11 ♗h2  
 ♗e6 12 b3 h6 13 ♗c2 ♘fd7 14 a4 b4

15 ♖a2 a5 16 ♖ad1 ♜c8 17 ♖c1 ♖d8  
 18 ♖f3 ♖f8 19 ♖d3 ♜b7 20 ♖e2 ♖d7  
 21 e4 ♖e8 22 ♜c1 ♖bd7 23 ♖f4 ♖h7  
 24 ♖c2 e5 25 dxe5 dxe5 26 ♖e3 ♖e6  
 27 ♖d6 ♖dc5 28 ♖fd1 ♜e7 29 ♖xd8  
 ♖xd8 30 ♖xd8 ♜xd8 ½-½

**A8 D.Bronstein–I.Boleslavsky**  
*Training Tournament, Parnu 1947*

1 c4 ♖f6 2 ♖f3 g6 3 ♖c3 ♖g7 4 e4 d6  
 5 d4 0-0 6 ♖g5 h6 7 ♖h4 g5 8 ♖g3  
 ♖h5 9 d5 c6 10 ♖e2 ♖xg3 11 hxg3  
 ♜b6 12 ♜d2 ♖d7 13 ♖h2 ♖c5 14 f3 f5  
 15 0-0-0 a5 16 e5 dxe5 17 f4 exf4 18  
 gxf4 a4 19 fxg5

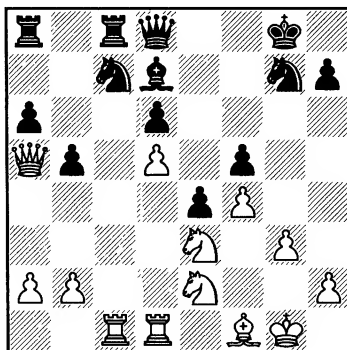


19...a3 20 ♖b1 ♜xb2+ 21 ♜xb2 axb2  
 22 ♖c2 hxg5 23 ♖f3 ♖e4 24 ♖b1 g4  
 25 ♖h4 ♖d7 26 ♖g6 cxd5 27 ♖xe7+  
 ♖f7 28 ♖h7 ♖a4+ 0-1

**A9 S.Flohr–D.Bronstein**  
*Training Tournament, Parnu 1947*

1 d4 ♖f6 2 c4 d6 3 ♖f3 ♖bd7 4 ♖c3  
 e5 5 e4 c6 6 ♖e2 g6 7 0-0 ♖g7 8 d5  
 cxd5 9 cxd5 0-0 10 ♖d2 ♖e8 11 ♖c4  
 ♜e7 12 ♖e3 f5 13 exf5 gxf5 14 f4 e4

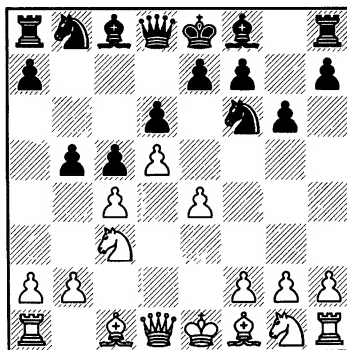
15 ♖d4 ♖df6 16 ♖c1 ♖d7 17 ♜b3 b6  
 18 ♜a3 b5 19 ♖e3 ♖c7 20 ♜a5 ♖fc8  
 21 ♖fd1 ♜d8 22 g3 ♖fe8 23 ♖xg7  
 ♖xg7 24 ♖f1 a6 25 ♖e2



25...♖ce8 26 ♜xd8 ♖xd8 27 ♖d4 ♖f7  
 28 ♖h3 ♖f6 29 ♖f2 h5 30 ♖f1 ♖dc8  
 31 ♖e2 ♖f7 32 h3 ♖f6 ½-½

**A10 D.Bronstein–E.Lundin**  
*Interzonal Tournament*  
*Salsjöbaden 1948*

1 d4 ♖f6 2 c4 c5 3 d5 d6 4 ♖c3 g6 5 e4  
 b5 (cf. also Game A17).



6 cxb5 ♖g7 7 ♗e2 a6 8 ♜f3 0-0 9 bxa6  
 ♗xa6 10 ♗xa6 ♜xa6 11 0-0 ♜d7 12  
 ♗g5 ♜b8 13 ♞d2 ♞e8 14 ♞ab1 ♞a5 15  
 ♞fc1 ♜c7 16 ♗h6 ♗f6 17 a3 ♜b3 18  
 ♞c2 ♞eb8 19 ♜d2 ♞3b7 20 ♜c4 ♞a6  
 21 ♞a4 ♞xa4 22 ♜xa4 ♜b5 23 b4 ♜d4  
 24 ♜f1 ♗g7 25 ♗e3 ♞a8 26 bxc5 ♞xb1  
 27 ♞xb1 dxc5 28 ♜ab6 ♞b8 29 a4  
 ♜xb6 30 ♞xb6 ♞xb6 31 ♜xb6 ♜b3 32  
 ♜e2 ♗c3 33 ♜d3 ♗a5 34 ♜c4 1-0

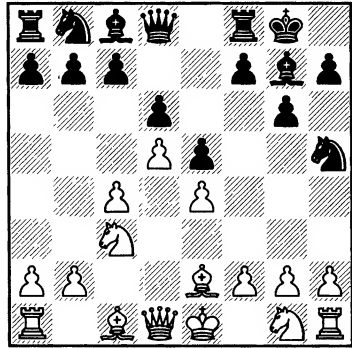
♜g8 35 ♞a6 h5 36 ♞a5 h4 37 ♗xg6  
 ♞xh2+ 38 ♜xh2 ♗xg3+ 39 ♞xg3  
 hxg3+ 40 ♜xg3 fxg6 0-1

A12 L.Szabo–I.Boleslavsky  
 Candidates Tournament  
 Budapest 1950

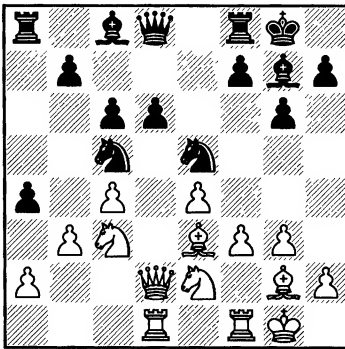
1 c4 ♜f6 2 ♜c3 g6 3 ♜f3 ♗g7 4 d4 0-0  
 5 e4 d6 6 ♗e2 e5 7 d5 ♜h5 8 ♜g1

A11 A.Kotov–E.Geller  
 17th USSR Championship  
 Moscow 1949

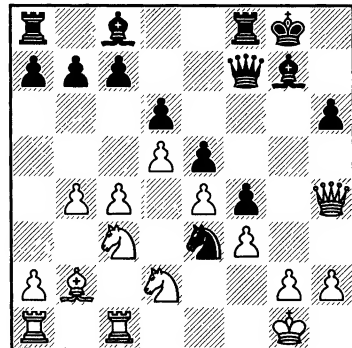
1 d4 ♜f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♜c3 ♗g7 4 g3 0-0 5  
 ♗g2 d6 6 ♜f3 ♜bd7 7 0-0 e5 8 e4 exd4  
 9 ♜xd4 ♜c5 10 f3 ♜fd7 11 ♗e3 c6 12  
 ♞d2 a5 13 ♞ad1 ♜e5 14 b3 a4 15  
 ♜de2



8...♜d7 9 ♗xh5 gxh5 10 ♞xh5 ♜c5 11  
 ♜f3 f5 12 0-0 f4 13 b4 ♜d7 14 ♗b2  
 ♞e7 15 ♜g5 ♜f6 16 ♞h4 h6 17 ♜f3  
 ♞f7 18 ♜d2 ♜g4 19 f3 ♜e3 20 ♞fc1



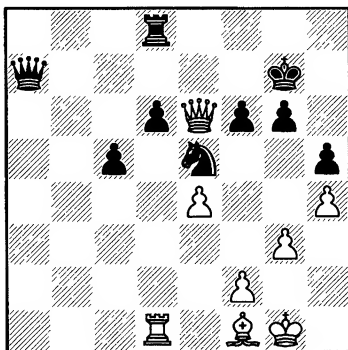
15...axb3 16 ♗xc5 ♜xc4 17 ♞c1 bxa2  
 (17...b2 18 ♞c2 dxc5 19 ♞xd8 ♞xd8  
 was possible) 18 ♜xa2 ♞a5 19 ♞xc4  
 ♗e6 20 ♞c1 dxc5 21 ♜ac3 b5 22 ♜b1  
 b4 23 ♜f4 ♗b3 24 ♞d6 c4 25 ♞xc6 c3  
 26 ♜d5 ♗xd5 27 exd5 ♞xd5 28 f4  
 ♞d4+ 29 ♜h1 ♞a2 30 ♗f3 ♞b2 31 f5  
 ♗e5 32 ♞e1 ♞d8 33 ♗e4 ♜g7 34 f6+



20...♖h7 21 ♘d1 ♙f6 22 ♗f2 ♖g8 23  
 ♘xe3 fxe3 24 ♗xe3 ♙g5 25 ♗e2 ♙xd2  
 26 ♗xd2 ♙h3 27 g3 ♗xf3 28 ♖c3  
 ♗xe4 29 c5 ♖g7 30 ♗c2 ♗xc2 31 ♖xc2  
 ♖f8 32 ♖f2 ♖g7 33 ♖xf7+ ♖xf7 34  
 cxd6 cxd6 35 ♖e1 ♖f3 36 ♙c1 ♖d3 37  
 ♙e3 a6 38 ♖f2 ♖xd5 39 ♖c1 ♖g6 40  
 ♖c7 ♖b5 41 ♖c4 ♙e6 42 ♖h4 h5 43 a4  
 ♖d5 44 h3 ♙d7 45 a5 ♖d3 46 ♖e2 0-1

**A13 D. Bronstein–I. Boleslavsky**  
*Candidates Play-Off Match (11)*  
 Moscow 1950

1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 d6 3 ♘c3 e5 4 ♘f3  
 ♘bd7 5 g3 g6 6 ♙g2 ♙g7 7 0-0 0-0 8  
 e4 ♖e8 9 ♙e3 ♘g4 10 ♙g5 f6 11 ♙d2  
 ♘h6 12 ♖c1 ♘f8 13 b4 ♘f7 14 ♙e3  
 ♙g4 15 h3 ♙xf3 16 ♙xf3 a5 17 a3  
 exd4 18 ♙xd4 axb4 19 axb4 ♙h6 20  
 ♘d5 ♘e5 21 ♙e3 ♙xe3 22 ♘xe3 c6 23  
 ♙g2 ♖a3 24 ♗d2 ♖d3 25 ♗a2 ♗a8 26  
 ♗e2 ♗a3 27 ♘g4 ♘xg4 28 ♗xg4  
 ♗xb4 29 ♖b1 ♖b3 30 ♖bd1 ♖g7 31 h4  
 h5 32 ♗e2 ♘d7 33 ♖d4 ♘e5 34 ♗d1  
 ♖d8 35 c5 ♗xc5 36 ♗xb3 ♗xd4 37  
 ♗xb7+ ♖d7 38 ♗c8 ♗a7 39 ♙h3 ♖f7  
 40 ♖d1 ♖f8 41 ♙e6 c5 42 ♙f1 ♖d8



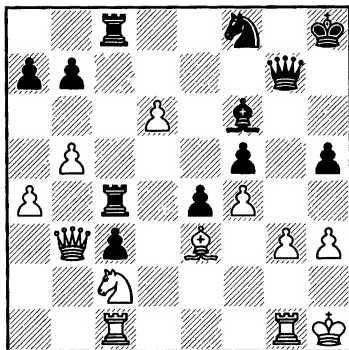
It is tempting to take the black pawn, but after 43 ♖xd6 ♖xd6 44 ♗xd6 c4 it is hardly possible to parry both threats – ...♘g4 and the pawn advance ...c4-c3-c2-c1=♗.

43 ♙e2 ♗d7 44 ♗b3 ♗c6 45 ♖d5 c4  
 46 ♗c3 ♗b6 47 ♖g2 ♖a8 48 ♗d2 ♗c6  
 49 ♖xd6 ♗xe4+ 50 f3 ♗b7 51 ♖f4  
 ♗e7 52 ♖d2 c3 53 ♖c2 ♗c5 54 ♗e4  
 ♖c8 55 f4 ♘g4 56 ♙xg4 hxg4 57 ♗e6  
 ♖b8 58 ♗xg4 ♖b2 59 ♗e2 ♗c6+ 60  
 ♖f2 ♗b6+ 61 ♖f3 ♗b7+ 62 ♖e3 ♗b3  
 63 ♖d3 ♗b5+ 64 ♖e3 ♗xe2+ 65 ♖xe2  
 c2 0-1

**A14 D. Bronstein–I. Boleslavsky**  
*Candidates Play-Off Match (13)*  
 Moscow 1950

1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 d6 3 ♘c3 e5 4 ♘f3  
 ♘bd7 5 g3 g6 6 ♙g2 ♙g7 7 0-0 0-0 8  
 e4 ♖e8 9 ♙e3 ♘g4 10 ♙g5 f6 11 ♙d2  
 ♘h6 12 h3 ♘f7 13 ♙e3 ♘f8 14 ♗d2  
 ♘e6 15 d5 ♘f8 16 ♖ae1 c5 17 a3 ♙d7  
 18 b4 ♗c8 19 bxc5 dxc5 20 ♖h2 ♘d6  
 21 ♗d3, ♗c7 22 ♘d2 f5 23 f4 h5 24  
 ♖h1 ♘h7 25 ♘b5 ♙xb5 26 cxb5 c4 27  
 ♗c2 c3 28 exf5 gxf5 29 ♘f3 e4 30 ♘d4  
 ♘f8 31 a4 ♖ac8 32 ♖c1 ♗f7 33 ♖fd1  
 ♙f6 34 ♗b3 ♖h8 35 ♙f1 ♖c7 36 ♙e2  
 ♗g6 37 ♖g1 ♖ec8 38 ♗d1 ♗f7 39 ♗b3  
 ♗g7 40 ♘c2 ♘c4 41 ♙xc4 ♖xc4 42 d6

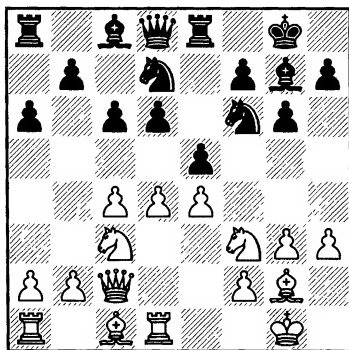
After 42 d6 the game was adjourned for one and a half hours. On the resumption I found the only way, which was to allow two black pawns to queen. In a time scramble, with three queens on the board (and two had already been exchanged!), the game ended in a draw. I no longer remember for what reason the good move 43 ♙b6 did not appeal to me.



42...a5 43 ♔a7 ♚h7 44 ♘e3 ♜b4 45 ♚d5 ♜xa4 46 ♜c2 ♜b4 47 ♘xf5 a4 48 ♜d1 a3 49 ♔d4 ♔xd4 50 ♜xd4 a2 51 ♚e5+ ♘g8 52 ♜xb4 a1 ♚+ 53 ♘h2 ♚d1 54 ♜g2 c2 55 ♘e7+ ♚xe7 56 dxe7 c1 ♚ 57 exf8 ♚+ ♜xf8 58 ♚g5+ ½-½

**A15 E.Terpugov–D.Bronstein**  
19th USSR Championship  
Moscow 1951

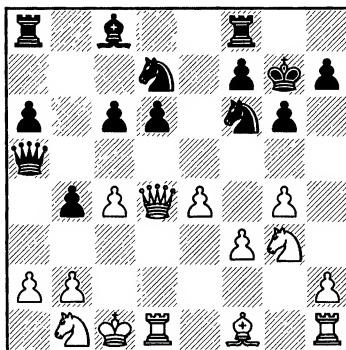
1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♘f3 d6 4 g3 ♔g7 5 ♔g2 0-0 6 0-0 ♘bd7 7 ♚c2 e5 8 ♜d1 ♜e8 9 ♘c3 c6 10 e4 a6 11 h3



11...b5 12 dxe5 dxe5 13 ♔e3 ♚e7 14 cxb5 axb5 15 a4 ♔b7 16 ♘d2 b4 17 ♘a2 ♔f8 18 ♘c4 ♚e6 19 ♘c1 ♔a6 20 b3 ♔xc4 21 bxc4 ♔c5 22 ♔xc5 ♘xc5 23 a5 ♜eb8 24 ♘b3 ♘fd7 25 f4 ♚e7 26 f5 ♜b7 27 ♘h2 ♜ba7 28 ♜db1 ♜b7 29 ♚d2 ♘a6 30 ♜b2 ♘dc5 31 ♘xc5 ♚xc5 32 f6 ♘c7 33 ♜a4 ♘a6 34 ♚h6 ♚f8 35 ♚g5 ♘c5 36 ♜a1 h6 37 ♚e3 ♘h7 38 ♜d2 ♘e6 39 a6 ♜ba7 40 ♜da2 c5 41 h4 ♚d6 42 h5 g5 43 ♚f2 ♘d4 44 ♜d2 ♘g8 45 ♜da2 ♜xa6 0-1

**A16 I.Stoltz–T.Petrosian**  
Bucharest 1953

1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 d6 3 ♘c3 g6 4 e4 ♔g7 5 f3 e5 6 ♘ge2 0-0 7 ♔e3 ♘bd7 8 ♚d2 c6 9 0-0-0 a6 10 ♔h6 b5 11 ♔xg7 ♘xg7 12 g4 ♚a5 13 ♘g3 exd4 14 ♚xd4 b4 15 ♘b1

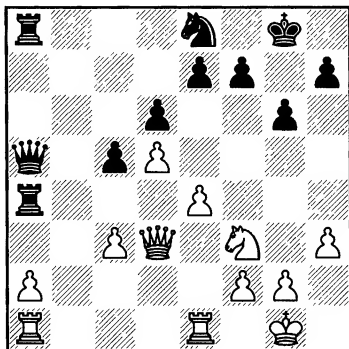


15...♚g5+ 16 ♚d2 ♚xd2+ 17 ♜xd2 ♘e8 18 f4 ♘c5 19 ♔e2 a5 20 ♔d1 ♜a7 21 h3 ♜e7 22 ♔c2 a4 23 b3 axb3 24 axb3 f5 25 gxf5 gxf5 26 ♜g2 fxe4 27 ♘xe4+ ♘h8 28 ♘xc5 dxc5 29 ♜g5 ♜xf4 30 ♜hg1 ♜g7 31 ♘d2 ♔xh3 32 ♔xh7 ♜xg5 33 ♜xg5 ♘xh7 34 ♜h5+

♖g6 35 ♜xh3 ♜d6 36 ♜e3 ♜f6 37 ♜f3  
 ♜e5 38 ♜e3+ ♜f6 39 ♜f3 ♜f5 40 ♜h3  
 ♜e5 41 ♜c2 ♜f5 42 ♜d3 ♜g4 43 ♜f3  
 ♜d4+ 44 ♜e2 ♜d8 45 ♜h3 ♜d4+ 46  
 ♜e3 ♜f5+ 47 ♜e2 ♜f4 48 ♜f3+ ♜g4  
 49 ♜d3 ♜d4+ 50 ♜f2 ♜f8+ 51 ♜e1  
 ♜e8+ 52 ♜f2 ♜f4 53 ♜f1 ♜e3 54 ♜xe3  
 ♜xe3 55 ♜e1 ♜d3 0-1

**A17 M.Taimanov–D.Bronstein**  
*Candidates Tournament*  
 Zurich 1953

1 d4 ♜f6 2 c4 c5 3 d5 g6 4 ♜c3 d6 5 e4  
 b5 (see also game A10, where the  
 author had White in this position) 6  
 cxb5 ♜g7 7 ♜f3 0-0 8 ♜e2 a6 9 bxa6  
 ♜xa6 10 0-0 ♜c7 11 ♜e1 ♜bd7 12  
 ♜xa6 ♜xa6 13 ♜e2 ♜fa8 14 h3 ♜b6 15  
 ♜g5 ♜e8 16 ♜d2 ♜a4 17 ♜xa4 ♜xa4  
 18 ♜c3 ♜xc3 19 bxc3 ♜a5 20 ♜d3

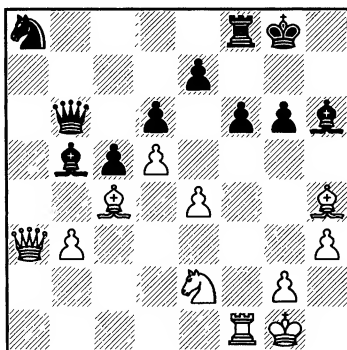


20... ♜a6 21 ♜d2 ♜xa2 22 ♜xa2 ♜xa2  
 23 e5 ♜xd2 24 ♜xd2 dxe5 25 ♜xe5  
 ♜f8 26 ♜b3 c4 27 ♜c5 ♜a1+ 28 ♜h2  
 ♜f6 29 ♜e4 ♜d7 30 ♜g5 ♜a2 31 ♜g4  
 f5 32 ♜f4 ♜b6 33 ♜g5 ♜xd5 34 ♜d4  
 ♜b6 35 ♜d8+ ♜g7 36 f4 h6 37 ♜e6+  
 ♜f7 38 ♜d4 ♜a4 39 ♜c8 ♜xc3 40

♜xc4 ♜d5 41 ♜f3 ♜xg2+ 42 ♜h1 ♜f2  
 0-1

**A18 D.Bronstein–M.Najdorf**  
*Candidates Tournament*  
 Zurich 1953

1 d4 ♜f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♜c3 ♜g7 4 e4 d6 5  
 ♜g5 c5 6 d5 ♜a6 7 ♜d3 ♜c7 8 ♜ge2  
 a6 9 a4 ♜b8 10 0-0 0-0 11 ♜c2 ♜d7 12  
 h3 b5 13 f4 ♜fe8 14 axb5 axb5 15 ♜a7  
 bxc4 16 ♜xc4 ♜a8 17 ♜xa8 ♜xa8 18  
 ♜b3 f6 19 ♜h4 ♜b6 20 ♜a3 ♜ec7 21  
 b3 ♜b5 22 ♜xb5 ♜xb5 23 f5 ♜h6 24  
 fxg6 hxg6

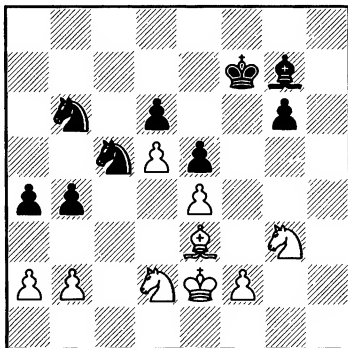


25 e5 ♜xc4 26 bxc4 dxe5 27 ♜d3 ♜h7  
 28 ♜c3 ♜b3 29 ♜b1 e4 30 ♜xb3 exd3  
 31 ♜b7 ♜g8 32 ♜f2 ♜f4 33 ♜f3 ♜b8  
 34 ♜xb8+ ♜xb8 35 ♜a4 ♜d6 36 ♜f2  
 ♜f7 37 ♜e3 ♜c7 38 ♜xd3 ♜a6 39 ♜e4  
 f5+ 40 ♜f3 e6 41 ♜b6 ½-½

**A19 D.Bronstein–S.Gligoric**  
*Candidates Tournament*  
 Zurich 1953

1 d4 ♜f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♜c3 ♜g7 4 e4 d6 5  
 h3 0-0 6 ♜e3 e5 7 d5 ♜bd7 8 g4 ♜c5 9

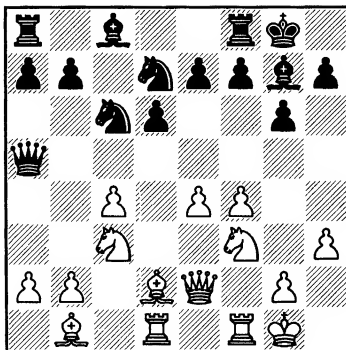
♖c2 c6 10 ♘ge2 cxd5 11 cxd5 ♔a5 12  
 ♘g3 ♙d7 13 ♙d2 ♜fc8 14 ♚b1 ♗d8 15  
 ♗d1 a5 16 ♗f3 ♚ab8 17 g5 ♘e8 18 h4  
 f6 19 ♙e2 ♘c7 20 ♗f1 ♗e7 21 gxf6  
 ♗xf6 22 ♗xf6 ♙xf6 23 h5 ♜f8 24 hxg6  
 hxg6 25 ♗g2 ♙g7 26 ♙e3 b5 27 ♜bc1  
 ♘7a6 28 ♘d1 ♜fc8 29 ♘c3 a4 30 ♜cd1  
 b4 31 ♘b1 ♙b5 32 ♙xb5 33 ♗f3  
 ♜b7 34 ♗e2 ♗bc7 35 ♜c1 ♘d7 36  
 ♜xc7 ♜xc7 37 ♜c1 ♜xc1 38 ♙xc1  
 ♘ac5 39 ♙e3 ♗f7 40 ♘d2 ♘b6



41 ♙xc5 dxc5 42 ♗d3 ♗f6 43 ♘c4  
 ♘d7 44 ♘f1 ♗g5 45 ♗e3 ♙h6 46 ♘h2  
 ♗f6+ 47 ♗e2 ♙f4 48 ♘g4+ ♗e7 49  
 ♗d3 ♗d8 50 ♘d6 ♗c7 51 ♘f7 a3 52  
 bxa3 bxa3 53 ♗c4 ♗b6 54 ♗b3 ♗a5 55  
 ♘d6 ♙c1 56 ♘c4+ ♗b5 57 ♘gxe5 1-0

**A20 P.Keres–D.Bronstein**  
*Candidates Tournament*  
 Zurich 1953

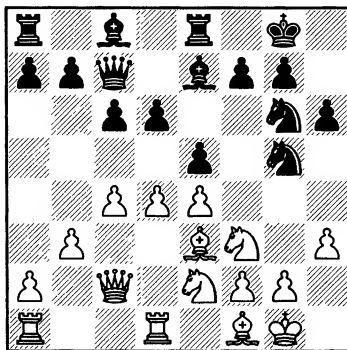
1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♘c3 ♙g7 4 e4 d6 5  
 f4 c5 6 dxc5 ♔a5 7 ♙d3 ♗xc5 8 ♘f3  
 0-0 9 ♗e2 ♘c6 10 ♙e3 ♗h5 11 h3  
 ♘g4 12 ♙d2 ♘f6 13 0-0 ♘d7 14 ♜ad1  
 ♗a5 15 ♙b1



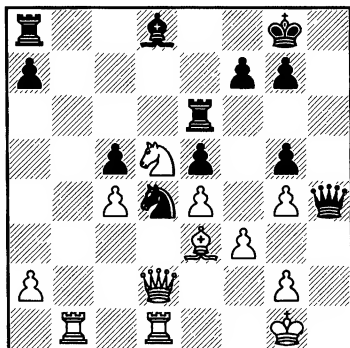
15... ♗b4 (although this puts the queen  
 in a dangerous position, it is the only  
 way to maintain the balance) 16 ♙e3  
 ♘b6 17 ♘d5 ♗xb2 18 ♗xb2 ♙xb2 19  
 ♘xb6 axb6 20 ♜f2 ½-½

**A21 M.Najdorf–D.Bronstein**  
*Match Argentina v. USSR*  
 Buenos Aires 1954

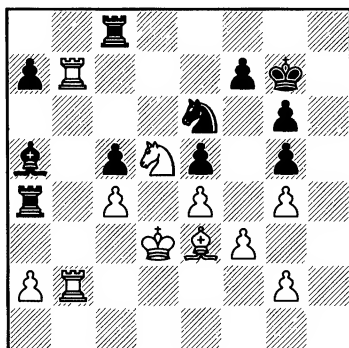
1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 d6 3 ♘c3 ♘bd7 4 ♘f3  
 c6 5 e4 e5 6 ♙e2 ♙e7 7 0-0 0-0 8 ♗c2  
 ♜e8 9 ♜d1 ♗c7 10 b3 ♘f8 11 h3 ♘g6  
 12 ♙e3 h6 13 ♙f1 ♘h7 14 ♘e2 ♘g5



15 ♖xg5 hxg5 16 ♜g3 c5 17 dxc5 dxc5  
 18 ♗e2 ♜f4 19 ♜c3 ♖c6 20 ♗d5 ♗d8  
 21 ♗e2 ♗e6 22 ♗g4 ♗d4 23 ♖d2  
 ♗xg4 24 hxg4 ♖h6 25 b4 b6 26 bxc5  
 bxc5 27 ♖ab1 ♖e6 28 f3 ♖h4



29 ♖f2 (29 ♗f2!) 29... ♖xf2+ 30 ♗xf2  
 ♖a6 31 ♖b2 ♖a4 32 ♖c1 ♗e6 33 ♗e2  
 ♖c8 34 ♗d3 g6 35 ♖c3 ♗g7 36 ♖cb3  
 ♗a5 37 ♖b7

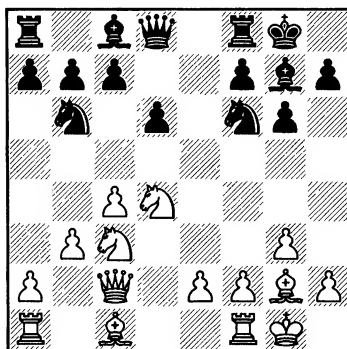


37... ♗b6 38 ♗c3 ♗d4 39 ♗d2 ♗a5+  
 40 ♗d1 ♖h8 41 ♗xd4 exd4 42 ♖xa7 d3  
 43 ♖xa5 ♖xa5 44 ♗d2 ♖h1 45 ♗c3  
 ♖a3 46 ♖b3 ♖xb3 47 axb3 ♗f6 48 ♗a4  
 ♗e5 49 ♗xd3 ♖d1+ 50 ♗e3 ♖e1+ 51

♗f2 ♖b1 52 ♗xc5 ♗d4 53 ♗b7 ♖xb3  
 54 ♗d6 f6 55 ♗e8 ♖b2+ 56 ♗g3 ♗e5  
 57 ♗c7 ♖c2 58 ♗d5 ♖xc4 59 ♗h2 ♖c1  
 60 ♗e3 ♗d4 61 ♗d5 f5 62 gxh5 gxh5  
 63 ♗e7 fxe4 64 ♗f5+ ♗e5 65 fxe4 ♖c3  
 66 ♗g3 ♖d3 67 ♗h1 g4 68 ♗g3 ♗f4  
 69 ♗h5+ ♗xe4 70 ♗g3+ ♗e5 71 ♗e2  
 ♖e3 72 ♗g3 ♗f4 73 ♗h5+ ♗g5 74  
 ♗g3 ♖e1 75 ♗h1 ♗f4 76 ♗g3 ♖e5 77  
 ♗f1 ♖h5+ 78 ♗g1 g3 79 ♗d2 ♖d5 80  
 ♗f1 ♖d1 81 ♗h1 ♖xf1# 0-1

A22 **A.Dake–D.Bronstein**  
*Match USA v. USSR*  
*New York 1954*

1 d4 ♗f6 2 c4 d6 3 ♗c3 g6 4 ♗f3 ♗g7  
 5 g3 0-0 6 ♗g2 ♗bd7 7 0-0 e5 8 ♖c2  
 exd4 9 ♗xd4 ♗b6 10 b3



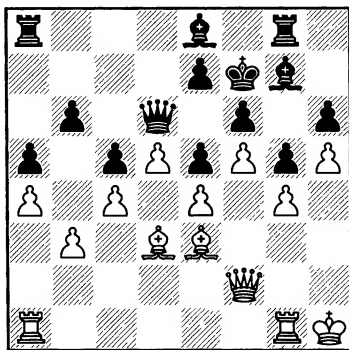
10...c5 11 ♗db5 a6 12 ♗a3 ♗f5 13  
 ♖d2 d5 14 ♗b2 d4 15 ♗d1 ♗e4 16  
 ♖a5 ♖e8 17 ♗b1 ♖c7 18 ♗d2 ♗xd2  
 19 ♖xd2 ♖ad8 20 ♖e1 ♗c8 21 ♗d5  
 ♗e7 22 ♗g2 ♗c6 23 f3 ♗b4 24 g4  
 ♗e6 25 a3 ♗c6 26 ♖b1 b5 27 ♗f2 bxc4  
 28 bxc4 ♗a5 29 ♗e4 ♗xc4 30 ♖g5  
 ♗xb2 31 ♖xb2 c4 32 ♗f6+ ♗xf6 33  
 ♖xf6 ♖a5 34 ♖e1 ♖xa3 35 ♖b7



♖e3+ 36 ♖h1 d3 37 exd3 cxd3 38 ♖c3  
♙d5 0-1

**A23 D. Bronstein–H. Pilnik**  
*Belgrade 1954*

1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♘c3 ♙g7 4 e4 d6 5  
♙e2 0-0 6 ♙g5 c5 7 d5 a6 8 a4 ♘bd7 9  
♘f3 ♘e8 10 0-0 ♘e5 11 ♘d2 f6 12  
♙e3 ♖b8 13 f4 ♘f7 14 ♖c2 b6 15 ♖fb1  
a5 16 ♘f3 ♘c7 17 ♖e1 ♘a6 18 ♖d2  
♘b4 19 ♘a2 ♘xa2 20 ♖xa2 ♙d7 21 b3  
♖c7 22 ♙d3 ♖be8 23 f5 ♘e5 24 ♘xe5  
dxe5 25 h4 ♘f7 26 ♖f2 ♖a8 27 ♙e2  
♖g8 28 ♖h1 ♘f8 29 g4 ♖d6 30 ♖aa1  
♙e8 31 ♖g1 h6 32 ♙d3 g5 33 h5 ♘f7



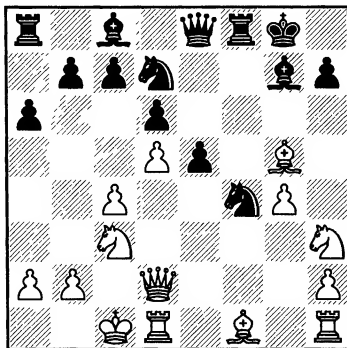
This game should not really have been included in the book, except as a text-book example of a breakthrough on the queenside. Black accidentally played his knight to e5 and promptly realised that he had shut his bishop out of the game. So that in the diagram position White effectively has an extra piece.

34 b4 axb4 35 a5 ♖c8 36 axb6 ♖xb6  
37 ♖a2 ♙d7 38 ♖a7 ♖d6 39 ♖gb1 ♖c7  
40 ♖a6 ♖b8 41 ♙c2 ♙f8 42 ♙b3 ♘g7  
43 ♘g2 ♙c8 44 ♖a2 ♙d7 45 ♖f2 ♖b6

46 ♖a8 ♖a6 47 ♖a1 ♖a3 48 ♖1xa3 bxa3  
49 ♖xa3 ♖b6 50 ♖a2 ♖b7 51 ♘f3 ♖b8  
52 ♙d1 ♖b4 53 ♙d2 ♖b1 54 ♖xb1  
♖xb1 55 ♘e2 ♘f7 56 ♙e3 ♖b8 57  
♙xc5 ♖c8 58 ♖a5 ♘e8 59 ♘d3 e6 60  
♙xf8 exf5 61 gxf5 ♘xf8 62 c5 ♙e8 63  
♘c4 ♖b8 64 ♙a4 ♙xh5 65 c6 g4 66 c7  
♖c8 67 d6 g3 68 ♙b5 ♙e8 69 ♖a3 1-0

**A24 L. Szabo–D. Bronstein**  
*Hungary v. USSR*  
*Budapest 1955*

1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♘c3 ♙g7 4 e4 d6 5  
f3 e5 6 d5 ♘h5 7 ♙e3 0-0 8 ♖d2 f5 9  
exf5 gxf5 10 0-0-0 a6 11 ♙g5 ♖e8 12  
♘h3 ♘d7 13 g4 fxg4 14 fxg4 ♘f4



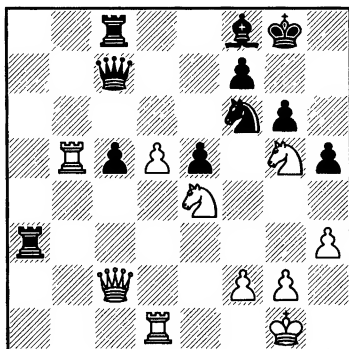
The black bishop at g7 is blocked by the e5 pawn, but it is helped by the strong position of the knight at f4. White will have to exchange the knight, and then the bishop will begin to display its full power.

15 ♘e4 b5 16 ♙xf4 exf4 17 ♘hg5  
♘e5 18 ♖c2 ♙xg4 19 ♖g1 ♙f5 20 ♘e6  
♙xe6 21 dxe6 ♖xe6 22 cxb5 axb5 23  
♘g5 ♖g6 24 ♙d3 ♘xd3+ 25 ♖xd3 ♖a4  
26 ♖b3+ ♖c4+ 27 ♘d2 c5 28 a3 ♘h8

29 ♖f3 ♜e8 30 ♜e1 ♜e4 31 ♜xd6 c4 32 ♜d1 ♙xb2 33 ♙c2 ♙g7 34 ♜d8 ♜g6 35 ♜xf8+ ♙xf8 36 ♙b2 c3+ 37 ♙a1 ♜a4 38 ♜e2 ♜xa3+ 39 ♜a2 c2 0-1

**A25 D.Bronstein–A.Fuderer**  
*Interzonal Tournament*  
*Gothenburg 1955*

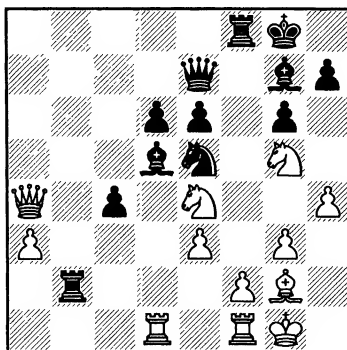
1 d4 ♖f6 2 c4 d6 3 ♖c3 e5 4 ♖f3 ♖fd7 (a favourite idea of my opponent in this variation) 5 e4 c6 6 ♙e2 ♙e7 7 0-0 0-0 8 ♙e3 a5 9 ♜c2 ♖a6 10 ♜ad1 ♜c7 11 b3 ♜e8 12 h3 ♙f8 13 d5 ♖dc5 14 ♖h2 a4 15 bxa4 ♖b4 16 ♜b1 ♜a5 17 ♙d2 ♖ba6 18 ♜c2 ♖b8 19 ♜b1 ♖xa4 20 ♖d1 ♜d8 21 ♙g4 ♖d7 22 ♖e3 ♖f6 23 ♙xc8 ♜xc8 24 ♖hg4 ♖d7 25 ♙b4 ♜a6 26 ♜fd1 h5 27 ♖h2 ♖ac5 28 ♖f3 ♜a8 29 a3 ♜a7 30 ♖f5 ♖f6 31 ♙xc5 ♜xc5 32 ♜xb7 cxd5 33 exd5 g6 34 ♖g3 ♜xa3 35 ♜b5 ♜c7 36 ♖g5 ♜c8 37 c5 dxc5 38 ♖3e4



38... ♖e8 39 ♜b2 c4 40 d6 ♖xd6 41 ♜c5 ♜e7 42 ♜xc8 ♖xc8 43 ♜d7 c3 44 ♜c2 f5 45 ♜xe7 ♙xe7 46 ♖xc3 ♙xg5 47 ♖b1 ♜a8 48 ♜b3+ 1-0

**A26 D.Bronstein–B.Spasky**  
*Candidates Tournament*  
*Amsterdam 1956*

1 d4 ♖f6 2 c4 g6 3 g3 ♙g7 4 ♙g2 0-0 5 ♖c3 d6 6 ♖f3 ♖c6 7 0-0 a6 8 d5 ♖a5 9 ♖d2 c5 10 ♜c2 ♜b8 11 b3 e5 12 dxе6 fxе6 13 ♙b2 b5 14 cxb5 axb5 15 ♖ce4 ♙b7 16 ♙xf6 ♙xf6 17 ♜ad1 ♙g7 18 ♖f3 ♙d5 19 ♖fg5 ♖c6 20 e3 ♜e7 21 h4 c4 22 bxc4 bxc4 23 a3 ♜b2 24 ♜a4 ♖e5

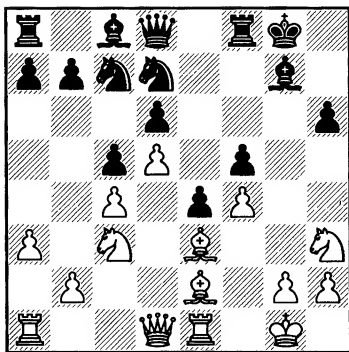


25 ♜xd5 exd5 26 ♖c3 ♙h8 27 ♖xd5 ♜e8 28 ♜xe8 ♜xe8 29 f4 ♖g4 30 ♖f7+ ♙g8 31 ♖xd6 ♜xe3 32 ♖xc4 ♜xg3 33 ♖xb2 ♙xb2 34 ♜f3 ½-½

**A27 D.Bronstein–T.Petrosian**  
*Candidates Tournament*  
*Amsterdam 1956*

1 c4 g6 2 ♖c3 ♙g7 3 ♖f3 d6 4 d4 ♖f6 5 e4 0-0 6 ♙e2 e5 7 0-0 ♖bd7 8 ♜e1 c6 9 d5 c5 10 a3 ♖e8 11 ♙g5 f6 12 ♙d2 f5 13 ♖g5 ♖c7 14 exf5 gxf5 15 f4 e4 16 ♙e3 h6 17 ♖h3

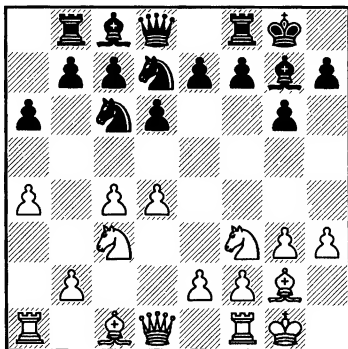
Here Black came up with an original decision.



17... ♗xc3 18 bxc3 ♜f6 19 a4 ♖h8 20 ♜f2 ♖g8 21 ♖h1 ♗e8 22 ♖g1 ♗g6 23 ♗d2 ♗d7 24 g3 ♖ae8 25 a5 ♖e7 26 ♖ab1 ♗c8 27 ♖g2 ♖eg7 28 ♖bg1 ♜ce8 29 h3 h5 ½-½

**A28 D. Bronstein–H. Pilnik**  
Candidates Tournament  
Amsterdam 1956

1 ♜f3 ♜f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♜c3 ♗g7 4 d4 d6  
5 g3 0-0 6 ♗g2 ♜c6 7 0-0 ♖b8 8 h3 a6  
9 a4 ♜d7



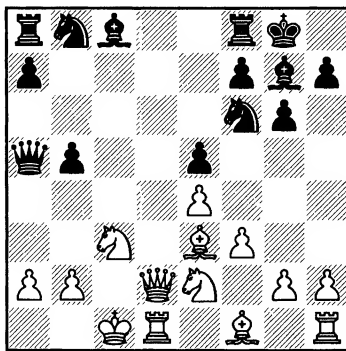
A typical mistake, allowing the

blocking of the queenside. Black should have played 9...a5.

10 a5 e5 11 d5 ♜e7 12 e4 b6 13 axb6  
cxb6 14 b4 a5 15 bxa5 bxa5 16 ♗a3  
♜c5 17 ♗xc5 dxc5 18 ♗a4 ♖b4 19  
♗xa5 ♖xc4 20 ♖fc1 ♗xa5 21 ♖xa5 f5  
22 ♗f1 ♖b4 23 d6 ♜c6 24 ♖xc5 ♗h6  
25 ♖xc6 ♗xc1 26 ♜d5 ♖b8 27 ♖xc1  
fxe4 28 ♜e7+ ♖g7 29 ♜g5 ♗d7 30  
♜xe4 1-0

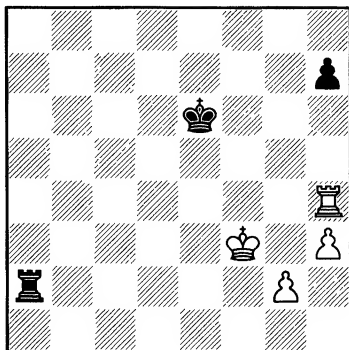
**A29 D. Bronstein–O. Panno**  
Candidates Tournament  
Amsterdam 1956

1 c4 ♜f6 2 ♜c3 g6 3 d4 ♗g7 4 e4 d6 5  
f3 e5 6 ♜ge2 c6 7 ♗e3 0-0 8 ♗d2 ♗a5  
9 0-0-0 b5 10 cxb5 cxb5 11 dxe5 dxe5



12 ♜d5 ♗xd2+ 13 ♖xd2 ♜xd5 14 exd5  
b4 15 ♜g3 f5 16 ♗g5 ♜d7 17 ♗b5  
♖b8 18 ♗c6 ♖f7 19 ♖c2 ♗f6 20 ♗xf6  
♖xf6 21 ♖d1 ♖d8 22 ♜f1 ♜b6 23 ♖c5  
♗b7 24 ♜e3 ♖bc8 25 ♜c2 ♗xc6 26  
dxc6 ♖xd1+ 27 ♖xd1 ♜a4 28 ♖a5  
♜xb2+ 29 ♖c1 ♜d3+ 30 ♖d2 e4 31  
fxe4 ♜e5 32 ♖xa7 ♜xc6 33 ♖a6 ♖e5  
34 exf5 gxf5 35 ♖b6 f4 36 ♖e2 ♖e4 37  
♖f2 ♖c7 38 h3 ♖d5 39 ♜xb4+ ♜xb4

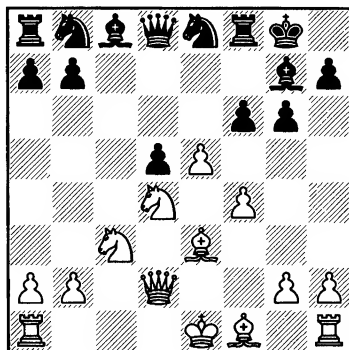
40 ♖xb4 ♗c2+ 41 ♜f3 ♗xa2 42 ♗xf4  
 ♜e6 43 ♗h4



43...♗a7 44 ♗h6+ ♜f5 45 h4 ♗a3+ 46  
 ♜f2 ♜f4 47 ♗xh7 ♗a2+ 48 ♜f1 ♗a1+  
 49 ♜e2 ♗a2+ 50 ♜d3 ♗xg2 51 ♗f7+  
 ½-½

**A30 D.Bronstein–E.Vasyukov**  
*Moscow Championship 1956*

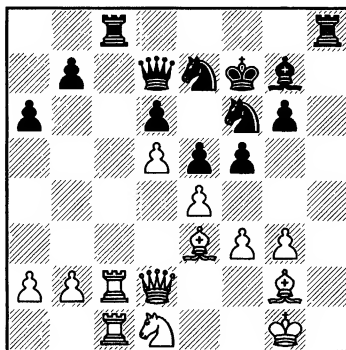
1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♘c3 ♙g7 4 e4 d6 5  
 f3 e5 6 ♘ge2 c6 7 ♙e3 0-0 8 ♗d2 exd4  
 9 ♘xd4 d5 10 cxd5 cxd5 11 e5 ♘e8 12  
 f4 f6



13 ♙b5 fxe5 14 fxe5 ♙xe5 15 ♘f3  
 ♙g7 16 0-0 ♘c7 17 ♙c5 ♗f5 18 ♙d3  
 ♗f6 19 ♙c4 ♘c6 20 ♘d5 ♘d5 21  
 ♘g5 ♙f5 22 g4 ♙d3 23 ♙xd3 ♘b6 24  
 ♗e3 ♗xf1+ 25 ♗xf1 ♙d4 26 ♙xd4  
 ♗xd4 27 ♗xd4 ♘d4 28 ♙e4 ♗b8 29  
 ♜g2 ♘c6 30 ♗c1 ♗d8 31 ♙xc6 ♗d2+  
 32 ♜g3 bxc6 33 ♗xc6 ♗xb2 34 ♗c7 h6  
 35 ♘e6 ♗xa2 36 ♗g7+ ♜h8 37 ♗xg6  
 ♜h7 38 ♗g7+ ♜h8 39 ♗b7 ♘d5 40 h4  
 ♗a3+ 41 ♜f2 ♘f6 42 ♗b8+ ♜h7 43  
 ♗b7+ ♜h8 ½-½

**A31 V.Korchnoi–D.Bronstein**  
*24th USSR Championship*  
*Moscow 1957*

1 d4 ♘f6 2 ♘f3 g6 3 g3 ♙g7 4 ♙g2 0-0  
 5 c4 d6 6 0-0 ♙d7 7 ♘c3 ♗c8 8 e4  
 ♙g4 9 ♙e3 ♘c6 10 ♗d2 ♙xf3 11  
 ♙xf3 h5 12 ♘d5 ♘h7 13 ♙g2 e6 14  
 ♘c3 e5 15 d5 ♘e7 16 c5 h4 17 cxd6  
 cxd6 18 ♗fc1 hxg3 19 hxg3 ♗d7 20  
 ♗c2 f5 21 ♙h3 ♘f6 22 f3 ♜f7 23 ♗ac1  
 ♗h8 24 ♙g2 a6 25 ♘d1 ♗ac8



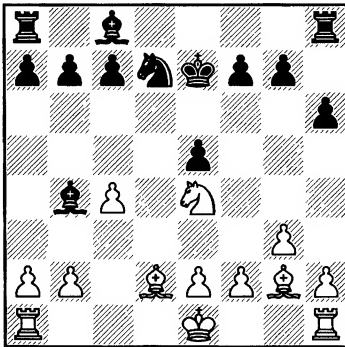
Although presently quiet, the white  
 bishops require the closest attention. If  
 all the heavy pieces are exchanged, the

light-square bishop may find a way through to the c8 square.

26 ♖f2 ♜xc2 27 ♜xc2 ♜c8 28 ♗h3 ♗h7 29 ♜xc8 ♗xc8 30 ♜b4 ♖f6 31 ♖f1 ♗e7 32 ♖g2 ♖g7 33 ♜c4 ♜c8 34 ♜xc8 ♗xc8 35 ♖d3 fxe4 36 fxe4 ♖d8 37 ♖e2 ♗b6 38 b3 ♗d7 39 ♖g4 ♖b6 40 ♖xd7 ♖xe3 41 ♖f3 ♖c1 42 ♖c8 ♗g5+ 1/2-1/2

**A32 V.Tarasov–D.Bronstein**  
24th USSR Championship  
Moscow 1957

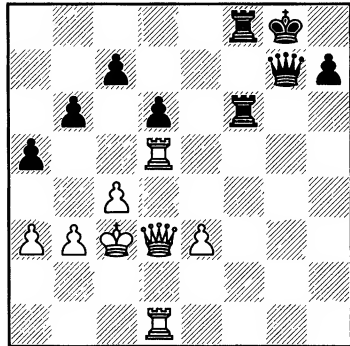
1 d4 ♗f6 2 c4 d6 3 ♗c3 e5 4 dxe5 dxe5 5 ♜xd8+ ♖xd8 6 ♗f3 ♗bd7 7 g3 ♖c5 8 ♗g5 ♖e7 9 ♖g2 h6 10 ♗ge4 ♗xe4 11 ♗xe4 ♖b4+ 12 ♖d2



12...a5 13 ♗c3 c6 14 0-0 ♗b6 15 b3 ♖d8 16 ♖e1 ♖c5 17 ♗e4 ♖d4 18 ♜c1 ♖f5 19 e3 ♖b2 20 ♜b1 ♖a3 21 ♖c3 f6 22 ♜bd1 ♜d1 23 ♜d1 ♗d7 24 f4 ♖g4 25 ♖e1 ♖b4 26 ♜c1 ♖xc3 27 ♜xc3 ♖f5 28 c5 ♖xe4 29 ♖xe4 exf4 30 gxf4 ♖e6 31 ♖f2 g5 32 a3 f5 33 ♖f3 ♗f6 34 ♖d3 ♖e7 35 ♖d2 ♖d8 36 ♖e2 g4 37 ♖g2 ♜xd2+ 38 ♖xd2 ♖e6 39 ♖d3 h5 40 ♖d4 h4 41 h3 0-1

**A33 F.Zita–D.Bronstein**  
European Team Ch., Vienna 1957

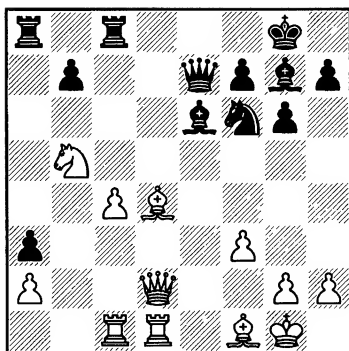
1 ♗f3 ♗f6 2 b3 d6 3 d4 g6 4 ♖b2 ♖g7 5 e3 0-0 6 ♖e2 b6 7 0-0 ♖b7 8 ♗bd2 ♗bd7 9 c4 e6 10 ♜c2 ♜e7 11 ♜fd1 a5 12 ♗b1 ♗e4 13 ♗fd2 ♗xd2 14 ♗xd2 e5 15 dxe5 ♗xe5 16 ♗f3 ♗xf3+ 17 ♖xf3 ♖xf3 18 gxf3 ♜g5+ 19 ♖h1 ♜h5 20 ♖g2 ♖xb2 21 ♜xb2 ♜ae8 22 ♖d5 f5 23 h3 ♜e6 24 a3 ♜h4 25 f4 g5 26 ffg5 ♜xg5+ 27 ♖f1 ♜h5 28 ♜e2 ♜xh3+ 29 ♖e1 f4 30 ♖d2 ♜g2 31 ♖d3 fxe3 32 fxe3 ♜g6+ 33 ♖d2 ♜ef6 34 ♗d3 ♜g2+ 35 ♖c3 ♜g7 36 ♖d1



36...c6 37 ♖d4 c5 0-1

**A34 M.Udovcic–D.Bronstein**  
Gotha 1957

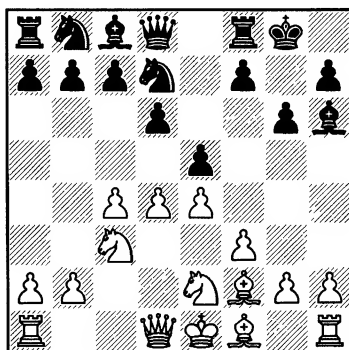
1 d4 ♗f6 2 c4 d6 3 ♗c3 g6 4 e4 ♖g7 5 f3 e5 6 ♗ge2 ♗bd7 7 ♖e3 a6 8 ♜d2 0-0 9 ♗c1 exd4 10 ♖xd4 c6 11 ♗b3 a5 12 ♖e3 a4 13 ♗d4 a3 14 b3 d5 15 exd5 cxd5 16 ♖e2 dxc4 17 bxc4 ♗e5 18 0-0 ♗c6 19 ♜fd1 ♜e8 20 ♖f2 ♗xd4 21 ♖xd4 ♖e6 22 ♗b5 ♜e7 23 ♖f1 ♜ec8 24 ♜ac1



24... ♖h5 25 ♙xg7 ♜xg7 26 ♜c3 ♜f5  
 27 ♜c1 ♜c5+ 28 ♜h1 ♜a5 29 ♜b3 ♜f2  
 30 ♜d2 ♜h4 31 ♜g1 h5 32 ♜c3 b6 33  
 ♜xa3 ♜ca8 34 g3 ♜e7 35 ♜d3 h4 36 g4  
 ♜c5+ 37 ♜h1 ♜d6 38 ♜d4 ♜xc4 39  
 ♜xc5 bxc5 40 ♜b5 ♜e5 0-1

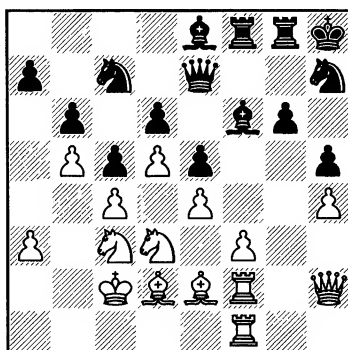
**A35 D.Bronstein–N.Krogius**  
*25th USSR Championship*  
*Riga 1958*

1 d4 ♜f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♜c3 ♙g7 4 e4 d6 5  
 f3 e5 6 ♜ge2 ♜fd7 7 ♙e3 ♙h6 8 ♙f2  
 0-0



9 h4 c5 10 d5 ♜e8 11 g4 ♜a6 12 g5  
 ♙g7 13 ♜g3 ♜c7 14 ♙e3 ♜f8 15 ♜c2  
 ♜b8 16 a3 b6 17 b4 f5 18 gxf6 ♙xf6 19  
 ♜h2 h5 20 b5 ♜h7 21 ♜a2 ♜h8 22 ♜f2  
 ♜e7 23 ♙d3 ♙d7 24 ♜d2 ♜g8 25  
 ♜ge2 ♜be8 26 ♜hf1 ♜f7 27 ♜c2 ♙c8  
 28 ♜c1 ♜ef8 29 ♙e2 ♙d7 30 ♙d2 ♜e7  
 31 ♜d3 ♙e8

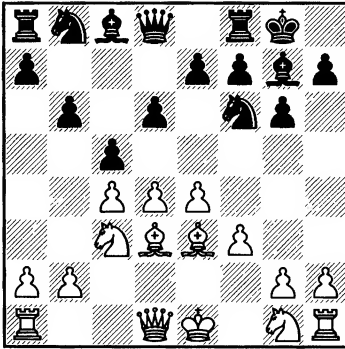
The naïve move 7... ♙h6 put Black  
 in a difficult position, and all his efforts  
 to repair the damage have been in vain.  
 With logical play White has prepared,  
 and now carries out, a decisive storming  
 of the citadel at e5.



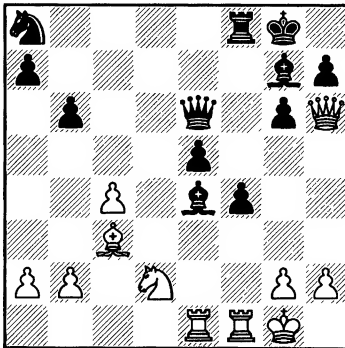
32 f4 ♙f7 33 fxe5 dxe5 34 ♜d1 a6 35  
 ♙c3 ♜e8 36 a4 ♜gf8 37 ♜g1 ♙g7 38  
 ♙xh5 axb5 39 axb5 ♜xb5 40 cxb5 c4  
 41 ♜b4 gxh5 42 ♜xg7 ♜xg7 43 ♜c6  
 ♜d6 44 ♜xe5 ♜f6 45 ♜xf6 ♜xf6 46  
 ♜d7 1-0

**A36 D.Bronstein–A.Lutikov**  
*26th USSR Championship*  
*Tbilisi 1959*

1 d4 ♜f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♜c3 ♙g7 4 e4 d6 5  
 f3 0-0 6 ♙e3 b6 7 ♙d3 c5



8 e5 ♖e8 9 ♙e4 ♜c7 10 ♙xa8 ♜xa8  
 11 ♜ge2 cxd4 12 ♜xd4 dxe5 13 ♜b3  
 ♜e8 14 ♜c1 ♙a6 15 ♜d5 ♜c6 16 ♜d2  
 e4 17 fxe4 ♜e5 18 ♙d4 e6 19 ♜b4  
 ♙b7 20 ♜d3 ♜xd3+ 21 ♜xd3 ♜d7 22  
 ♜e3 e5 23 ♙c3 ♜g4 24 0-0 ♙xe4 25  
 ♜g3 ♜e6 26 ♜cel f5 27 ♜d2 f4 28  
 ♜h4 ♙f6 29 ♜wh6 ♙g7



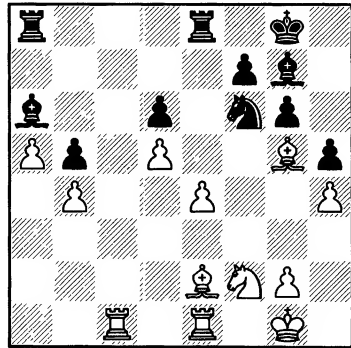
After Black had mistakenly given up rook for bishop, White decided to return the gift. His next move looks strong, but Black defended splendidly.

30 ♜xg7+ ♜xg7 31 ♜xe4 ♜g8 32 ♜xe5 ♜c6 33 ♜e4 ♜c7 34 ♜d1 ♜e8 35

b3 ♜f5 36 ♜e7 ♜f7 37 ♜e5 ♜f5 38 ♜e7 ♜f7 1/2-1/2

**A37 D. Bronstein–I. Boleslavsky**  
 28th USSR Championship  
 Moscow 1961

1 d4 ♜f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♜c3 ♙g7 4 e4 d6 5 f3 0-0 6 ♙e3 ♜bd7 7 ♜h3 c5 8 d5 ♜e5 9 ♜f2 e6 10 ♙e2 exd5 11 cxd5 a6 12 0-0 b5 13 a4 b4 14 ♜b1 ♜e8 15 a5 ♙b7 16 ♜e1 ♜c8 17 ♜d2 c4 18 f4 c3 19 fxe5 cxd2 20 ♜xd2 ♜xe5 21 ♜xb4 ♜e7 22 ♙f3 ♜d7 23 ♙f4 ♜d8 24 ♜ac1 h6 25 h4 h5 26 ♙g5 ♜ee8 27 ♙d1 ♜b5 28 ♜xb5 axb5 29 ♙e2 ♜a8 30 b4 ♙a6

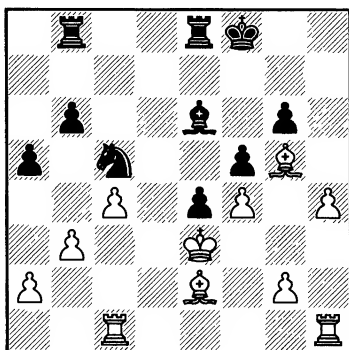


31 ♜c6 ♜xe4 32 ♜xa6 ♙d4 33 ♜xa8 ♙xf2+ 34 ♜f1 ♜xa8 35 ♙xb5 ♙xe1 36 ♜xe1 ♜xg5 37 hxg5 ♜f8 38 ♙c6 ♜a7 39 ♜d2 ♜e7 40 ♜c3 f6 41 gxf6+ ♜xf6 42 ♜c4 ♜e5 43 ♜b5 g5 44 ♜b6 ♜f7 45 a6 g4 46 a7 ♜f8 47 ♙d7 ♜f4 48 b5 h4 49 ♙xg4 ♜xg4 50 ♜c6 1-0

**A38 P. Hoad–K. Neat**  
 National Club Championship 1961

1 c4 ♜f6 2 ♜c3 g6 3 e4 d6 4 d4 ♙g7 5

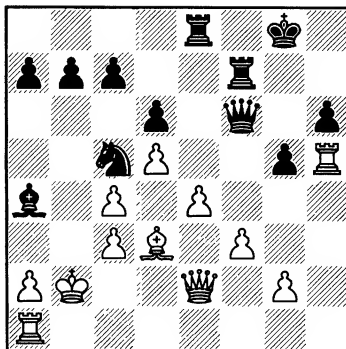
♖e2 0-0 6 ♗g5 e5? 7 dxe5 dxe5 8  
 ♜xd8 ♞xd8 9 ♜d5 ♜bd7 10 ♞d1 ♞f8  
 11 ♜xc7 ♞b8 12 ♜f3 h6 13 ♖e3 b6 14  
 ♜d5 ♜c5 15 ♜xf6+ ♖xf6 16 ♖xh6  
 ♞e8 17 ♜g5 ♖xg5 18 ♖xg5 ♜xe4 19  
 ♖e3 ♖e6 20 f3 ♜c5 21 b3 a5 22 ♜f2  
 ♞ec8 23 ♞c1 ♜f8 24 h4 f5 25 ♖g5 e4  
 26 ♜e3 ♞e8 27 f4



27...a4 28 b4 ♜d3 29 ♖xd3 exd3 30  
 ♜xd3 ♞b7 31 h5 ♞d7+ 32 ♜c3 ♞c8 33  
 ♜b2 ♞d2+ 34 ♞c2 ♞xc2+ 35 ♜xc2  
 ♞xc4+ 36 ♜d3 gxh5 37 a3 b5 38 ♞xh5  
 ♞e4 39 ♞h3 ♖c4+ 40 ♜c3 ♞e2 ½-½

**A39 A.Slomson–K.Neat**  
*British Under-18 Champions*  
*Aberystwyth 1961*

1 d4 ♜f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♜c3 ♖g7 4 e4 d6 5  
 ♖e2 0-0 6 ♜f3 e5 7 d5 ♜bd7 8 ♖g5 h6  
 9 ♖h4 g5 10 ♖g3 ♜h5 11 ♜xe5?  
 ♜xg3 12 ♜xf7 ♞xf7 13 hxg3 ♜f6 14  
 ♞f1 ♜c5 15 ♜c2 ♜e7 16 ♖d3 ♖xc3+  
 17 bxc3 ♖d7 18 ♜e2 ♞e8 19 f3 ♜e5 20  
 ♜d2 ♜xg3 21 ♞h1 ♜f4+ 22 ♜c2 ♜f6  
 23 ♞h5 ♖a4+ 24 ♜b2

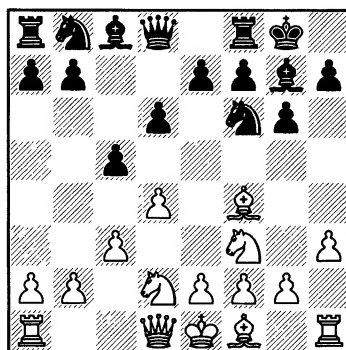


24...b5 25 cxb5 ♞b8 26 ♞ah1 ♜xd3+  
 27 ♜xd3 ♖xb5 28 ♜e3 ♖d3+ 0-1

**A40 D.Bronstein–V.Korchnoi**  
*Budapest 1961*

1 d4 ♜f6 2 ♜f3 g6 3 c3 ♖g7 4 ♖f4 d6  
 5 h3 0-0 6 ♜bd2 c5

It is better to preface this with 6...b6,  
 or to play 6...♜c6 and ...♜e8 followed  
 by ...e7-e5.



7 dxc5 dxc5 8 e4 b6 9 ♖c4 ♜c6 10 0-0  
 ♜a5 11 ♖e2 ♖b7 12 ♜c2 ♞c8 13 ♞ad1  
 ♜e8 14 ♜e5 ♜c6 15 ♜g4 ♜xg4 16

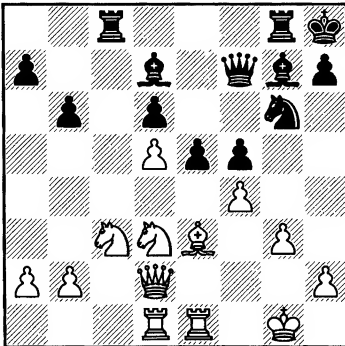


♖xg4 ♜d8 17 ♙c7 ♜a8 18 ♜c4 ♙c8 19  
 ♙e2 ♙e6 20 ♙g3 ♜c8 21 a4 ♜d8 22  
 ♜xd8 ♜xd8 23 ♜d1 ♜c8 24 ♜e3 ♜b7  
 25 ♜d5 ♜c8 26 ♜d3 ♜d8 27 ♜a6 ♜xa6  
 28 ♙xa6 ♜f8 29 ♙c7 ♜d7 30 ♙b5  
 ♙xd5 31 exd5 ♜xc7 32 dxc6 e6 33  
 ♜d8+ ♜e7 34 ♜a8 ♙h6 ½-½

**A41 G.Kluger–D.Bronstein**  
*Budapest 1961*

1 d4 ♜f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♜c3 ♙g7 4 e4 d6 5  
 ♜f3 0-0 6 ♙e2 e5 7 0-0 ♜c6 8 d5 ♜e7  
 9 ♜e1 ♜d7 10 ♜d3 f5 11 exf5 gxf5 12  
 f4 ♜g6 13 ♙e3 ♜f6 14 ♜c1 ♜h8 15 c5  
 ♙h6 16 g3 ♜e7 17 cxd6 cxd6 18 ♜h1  
 ♙d7 19 ♜e1 b6 20 ♙h5 ♜xh5 21 ♜xh5  
 ♙g7 22 ♜d1 ♜ac8 23 ♜d2 ♜f7 24  
 ♜g1 ♜g8 25 ♜cd1

Note Black's economic use of space on the kingside. He has avoided advancing the e-pawn until there is a concrete threat.



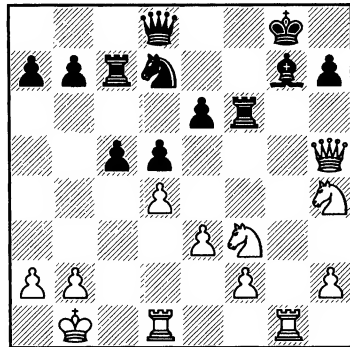
25...e4 26 ♜b4 ♜h4 27 ♜f1 ♜f3+ 28  
 ♜xf3 exf3 29 ♜f1 a5 30 ♜c2 ♜c4 31 a3  
 b5 32 ♜xf3 b4 33 axb4 axb4 34 ♜e2  
 ♜xc2 35 ♜xc2 ♜xd5 36 ♜f2 ♙c6 37  
 ♜f1 ♜e8 38 ♜d4 ♜h1+ 0-1

**A42 D.Bronstein–Yu.Kots**  
*29th USSR Championship*  
*Baku 1961*

1 d4 ♜f6 2 ♜f3 g6 3 c3 ♙g7 4 ♙f4 0-0  
 5 ♜bd2 ♜h5 6 ♙e5 f6 7 g4 fxe5 8 gxh5  
 exd4 9 cxd4 gxh5

It is dangerous to expose the king in this way.

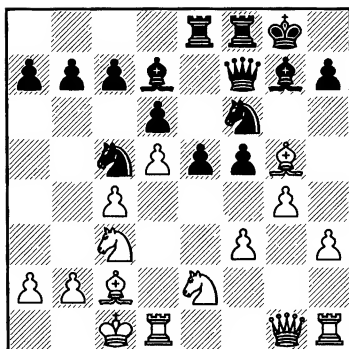
10 e3 d5 11 ♙d3 ♙f5 12 ♙xf5 ♜xf5  
 13 ♜h4 ♜f6 14 ♜xh5 e6 15 ♜g1 c5 16  
 ♜df3 ♜d7 17 0-0-0 ♜c8 18 ♜b1 ♜c7



19 ♜xg7+ ♜xg7 20 ♜g1+ ♜h8 21 ♜e5  
 ♜xe5 22 dxe5 ♜f5 23 ♜xf5 exf5 24  
 ♜xf5 ♜g7 25 ♜d1 ♜g5 26 ♜f4 ♜g6 27  
 h4 ♜b6 28 ♜f7 d4 29 e6 ♜g8 30 ♜f6+  
 ♜g7 31 ♜d8+ ♜g8 32 e7 ♜e6 33 ♜g1  
 1-0

**A43 M.Haygarth–K.Neat**  
*National Club Championship 1962*

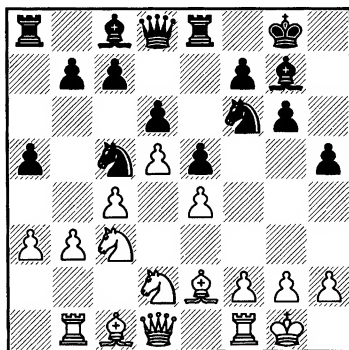
1 d4 ♜f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♜c3 ♙g7 4 e4 d6 5  
 f3 0-0 6 ♙e3 e5 7 d5 ♜h5 8 ♜d2 ♜h4+  
 9 ♜f2 ♜e7 10 ♙d3 ♜a6 11 0-0-0 ♙d7  
 12 ♜ge2 f5 13 exf5 gxf5 14 ♜g1 ♜f6  
 15 h3 ♜ae8 16 ♙g5 ♜c5 17 ♙c2 ♜f7  
 18 g4



18...e4 19 gxf5 ♗xf5 20 ♖g3 ♗g6 21  
fxe4 ♖fxe4 22 ♜f1 ♖f2 23 ♖ce4?  
♖cxe4 24 ♖xe4 ♗xe4 25 ♗h6 ♗xh1  
26 ♜xf2 ♜e1+ 0-1

**A44 V.Antoshin–D.Bronstein**  
*USSR Team Championship*  
*Moscow 1963*

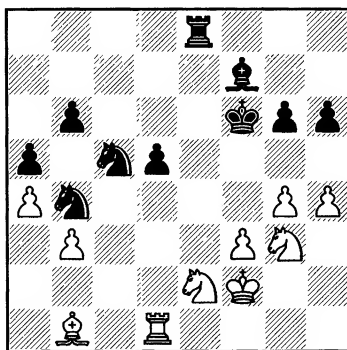
1 d4 ♖f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♖c3 ♗g7 4 e4 d6 5  
♗e2 ♖bd7 6 ♖f3 e5 7 0-0 0-0 8 ♜b1  
♜e8 9 d5 ♖c5 10 ♖d2 a5 11 b3 h5 12  
a3



12...♗h6 13 ♜c2 b6 14 b4 ♖b7 15  
♖b3 ♗xc1 16 ♜xc1 a4 17 ♖a1 ♜e7 18  
♖c2 ♜f8 ½-½

**A45 D.Bronstein–L.Evans**  
*Interzonal Tournament*  
*Amsterdam 1964*

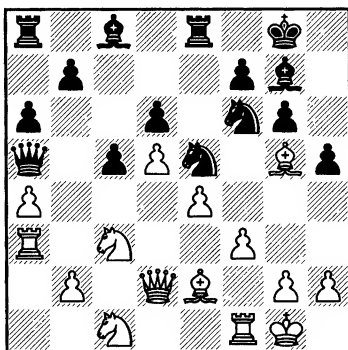
1 d4 ♖f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♖c3 ♗g7 4 e4 d6 5  
f3 c6 6 ♗e3 a6 7 a4 a5 8 ♗d3 e5 9  
♖ge2 ♖a6 10 ♜d2 ♖b4 11 ♜d1 ♜e7  
12 ♗b1 0-0 13 0-0 exd4 14 ♗xd4 ♗e6  
15 b3 d5 16 cxd5 cxd5 17 e5 ♖d7 18  
♜e3 f6 19 exf6 ♗xf6 20 ♖f4 ♗f7 21  
♜e7 ♗xe7 22 ♜fe1 ♜fe8 23 ♗f2 ♗c5  
24 ♖b5 ♗xf2+ 25 ♗xf2 ♖c5 26 ♜xe8+  
♜xe8 27 ♖d4 ♗g7 28 ♜c1 b6 29 h4 h6  
30 ♜d1 ♗f6 31 g4 ♜e5 32 ♖g2 ♜e8 33  
♖f4 ♜e5 34 ♖fe2 ♜e8 35 ♖g3 ♖e6 36  
♖de2 ♖c5



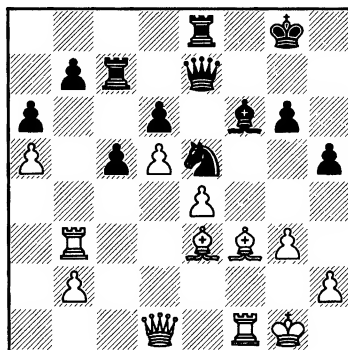
37 f4 ♖xb3 38 g5+ hxg5 39 hxg5+ ♗e7  
40 f5 gxf5 41 ♖xf5+ ♗d7 42 ♖f4 ♖c5  
43 ♖h6 ♖e4+ 44 ♗xe4 ♜xe4 45 ♗f3  
♗e8 46 ♖f5 ♗d7 47 ♖e3 ♗c6 48 ♜h1  
♗c5 49 ♖f5 b5 50 axb5 a4 51 b6 ♗xb6  
52 ♖d6 ♗g8 53 ♖xe4 dxe4+ 54 ♗xe4  
a3 55 ♗d4 a2 56 ♗c3 ♗c5 57 g6 ♖c6  
1-0

**A46 D.Bronstein–B.Larsen**  
*Belgrade 1964*

1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 c5 3 d5 d6 4 ♖c3 g6 5 e4  
 ♗g7 6 f3 0-0 7 ♗g5 e6 8 ♖d2 exd5 9  
 cxd5 a6 10 a4 ♖a5 11 ♖a3 ♗bd7 12  
 ♗ge2 ♖e8 13 ♗c1 ♗e5 14 ♗e2 h5 15  
 0-0



15... ♗h7 16 ♗e3 f5 17 ♗b3 ♖c7 18  
 ♖e1 fxe4 19 ♗xe4 ♗f5 20 ♗bd2 ♗f7  
 21 ♖b3 ♗f6 22 ♗xf6+ ♗xf6 23 ♗e4  
 ♗e5 24 a5 ♗xe4 25 fxe4 ♖e7 26 ♖d2  
 ♖ac8 27 ♗f3 ♗f6 28 ♖d1 ♖c7 29 g3  
 ♗e5



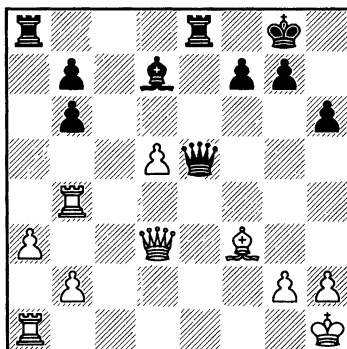
30 ♗e2 ♖f8 31 ♗f4 ♗f7 32 ♖c2 ♗d4+  
 33 ♗g2 ♗e5 34 h4 ♖f7 35 ♖a3 ♖e8 36  
 ♖a1 ♖d7 37 ♖a1 ♖c8 38 b3 ♗h7 39  
 ♖d2 ♗g4 40 ♗d3 ♖e8 41 b4 ♖ef8 42  
 bxc5 ♗xc5 43 ♗e2 ♗e5 44 ♖a1 ♗g4  
 45 ♖ac1 ♗a7 46 ♗f3 ♗g8 47 ♖e2  
 ♖xf4 48 gxf4 ♖xf4 49 ♗g3 ♗d4 50  
 ♖d2 ♗e5 51 ♖xf4 ♗xf4+ 52 ♗xf4  
 ♗e5 53 ♗g3 ♗xf3 54 ♗xf3 ♖h3+ 55  
 ♗e2 ♖xh4 56 ♗e3 ♖d8 57 e5 ♖g5+ 0-1

**A47 V.Mikenas–D.Bronstein**  
*33rd USSR Championship*  
*Tallinn 1965*

1 d4 ♗f6 2 c4 d6 3 ♖c3 c6 4 e4 e5 5 d5  
 ♗e7 6 ♗e2 0-0 7 ♗f3 ♗a6 8 0-0 ♗d7 9  
 ♗e1 ♖c8 10 ♗d3 ♗d8

The manoeuvre ... ♖c8 and ... ♗d8  
 looks rather awkward, but Black has  
 time for this, as White has played passively.  
 The finish is well known.

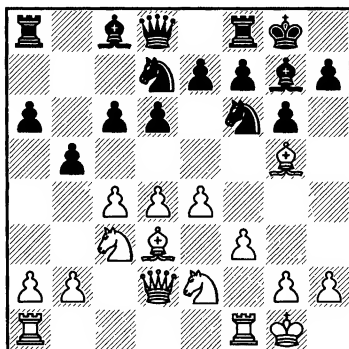
11 f4 cxd5 12 cxd5 ♗c5 13 fxe5  
 ♗fxe4 14 ♗xe4 ♗xe4 15 ♗e3 ♗b6 16  
 ♗xb6 axb6 17 ♖f4 ♗c5 18 exd6 ♗xd3  
 19 ♖xd3 ♖c5+ 20 ♗h1 ♖xd6 21 ♖h4  
 h6 22 a3 ♖fe8 23 ♗f3 ♖e5 24 ♖b4



24... ♖xa3 0-1

**A48 L.Szabo–D.Bronstein**  
*Krems 1967*

1 c4 g6 2 d4 ♖g7 3 ♜c3 d6 4 e4 ♜f6 5  
f3 c6 6 ♖g5 a6 7 ♗d3 b5 8 ♜ge2 ♜bd7  
9 0-0 0-0 10 ♗d2

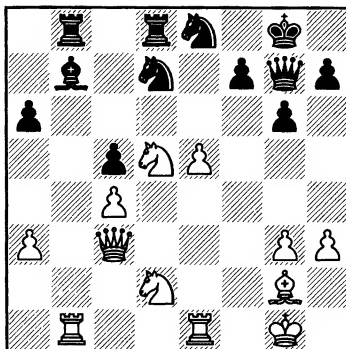


10...e5 11 d5 b4 12 ♜d1 cxd5 13 cxd5  
♜c5 14 ♜f2 ♖b8 15 ♗c4 a5 16 ♜c1  
♗e8 17 ♜b3 ♜b7 18 ♜c1 ♜c5 19 ♜b3  
♜b7 20 ♜c1 ½-½

**A49 D.Marovic–D.Bronstein**  
*Amsterdam 1968*

When asked after the game how I had managed to save myself in such severe time trouble, I replied that it was very easy: firstly, I tried not to worsen my position, and secondly, more important, I did not endeavour to improve it.

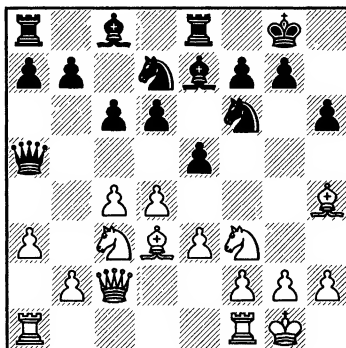
1 d4 ♜f6 2 c4 g6 3 g3 ♖g7 4 ♖g2 0-0  
5 ♜f3 d6 6 0-0 ♜bd7 7 ♜c3 e5 8 e4 c6  
9 h3 a6 10 ♗c2 b6 11 ♗e3 ♗e7 12  
♖ad1 ♗b7 13 ♖fe1 ♖fe8 14 a3 ♖ad8 15  
b4 exd4 16 ♗xd4 c5 17 bxc5 bxc5 18  
♜d5 ♗f8 19 ♗c3 ♖b8 20 ♜d2 ♖ec8 21  
♖b1 ♜e8 22 f4 ♗xc3 23 ♗xc3 ♖d8 24  
e5 dxe5 25 fxe5 ♗g7



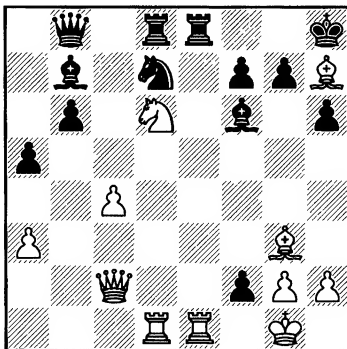
26 ♖xb7 ♖xb7 27 ♜e7+ ♜f8 28 ♗xb7  
♜xe7 29 ♗e3 ♜c7 30 ♗g5+ ♜e8 31  
♗d5 h6 32 ♗f4 ♜e7 33 ♜f3 g5 34 ♗e3  
♗g6 35 h4 ♖b8 36 hxg5 hxg5 37 ♜xg5  
♖b1 38 ♖xb1 ♗xb1+ 39 ♜h2 ♜xd5 40  
cxd5 ♗a2+ 41 ♜h3 ½-½

**A50 I.Platonov–D.Bronstein**  
*39th USSR Championship*  
*Leningrad 1971*

1 c4 ♜f6 2 ♜c3 e5 3 ♜f3 d6 4 d4  
♜bd7 5 ♖g5 ♗e7 6 e3 c6 7 ♗c2 ♗a5 8  
♗d3 h6 9 ♗h4 0-0 10 0-0 ♖e8 11 a3



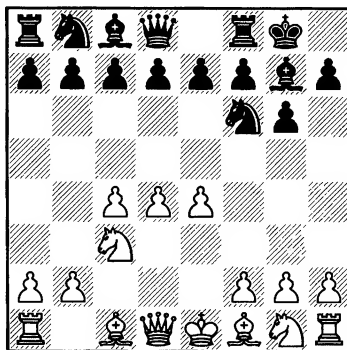
11... ♖c7 12 b4 b6 13 ♖ad1 a5 14 b5  
 ♙b7 15 ♘d2 ♖ad8 16 ♗f1 cxb5 17  
 ♘xb5 ♗b8 18 ♘e4 exd4 19 ♘xf6+  
 ♙xf6 20 ♙g3 dxe3 21 ♙h7+ ♗h8 22  
 ♘d6 exf2+



23 ♗xf2 ♖f8 24 ♘xf7+ ♖xf7 25 ♙xb8  
 ♙h4+ 26 ♗g1 ♙xe1 27 ♖xe1 ♖xb8 28  
 ♙g6 ♖f6 29 ♖e8+ ♖xe8 30 ♙xe8 ♘c5  
 31 ♙g6 ♙c8 32 ♗d2 ♙xg6 1/2-1/2

**A51 D. Bronstein–B. Rytov**  
*Tallinn 1973*

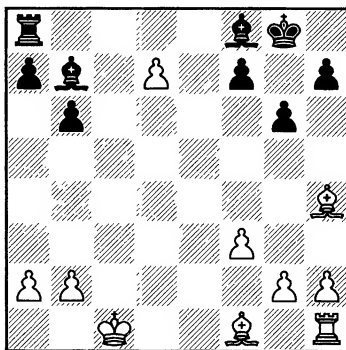
1 c4 ♘f6 2 ♘c3 g6 3 d4 ♙g7 4 e4 0-0



5 e5 ♘e8 6 ♙f4 d6 7 h3 ♘d7 8 ♘f3 c5  
 9 dxc5 dxe5 10 ♙xe5 ♙xe5 11 ♘xe5  
 ♗c7 12 ♘xd7 ♙xd7 13 ♗d4 ♙c6 14  
 ♘d5 ♙xd5 15 cxd5 ♘g7 16 ♙e2 ♖fd8  
 17 ♖c1 ♘f5 18 ♗e4 e6 19 dxe6 ♖d4 20  
 exf7+ ♗f8 21 ♗e6 ♖d2 22 ♗xd2 ♖d8+  
 23 ♗e1 ♗f4 24 ♖d1 ♘d4 25 g3 1-0

**A52 D. Bronstein–M. Dvoretsky**  
*USSR Zonal Tournament*  
*Vilnius 1975*

1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♘c3 ♙g7 4 e4 d6 5  
 f3 0-0 6 ♙e3 c5 7 dxc5 dxc5 8 ♗xd8  
 ♖xd8 9 ♙xc5 ♘c6 10 ♘d5 ♘xd5 11  
 cxd5 b6 12 ♙a3 ♘d4 13 0-0-0 e6 14  
 ♘e2 ♘b5 15 ♙e7 ♖d7 16 ♙h4 exd5 17  
 ♘f4 ♘c7 18 ♘xd5 ♘d5 19 ♖xd5  
 ♖xd5 20 exd5 ♙b7 21 d6 ♙f8 22 d7



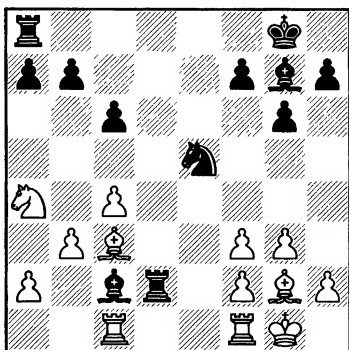
This theoretical duel drew the attention of all the participants in the tournament, who left their games and gathered around the board. The two players made their moves instantly, and it was only around move 30, after spending just a minute each, that they came to a halt. White supposedly employed a new

move, but I do not remember which it was.

22...♙h6+ 23 ♖b1 g5 24 ♙f2 ♙c6  
25 ♙e3 ♙xd7 26 ♙d3 ♙e8 27 ♙c1 ♙e6  
28 ♙f5 ♙d6 29 ♙xd7 ♙xd7 30 h4 ♙e7  
31 hxg5 ♙f8 32 ♙d1 ♙e2 33 ♙d8 ♙xg2  
34 ♙f4 ♙g7 35 ♙e5+ f6 36 ♙xf6+ ♙f7  
37 f4 h5 38 gxh6 ♙xh6 39 ♙e5 ♙g4 40  
♙d6 ♙h4 41 ♙c2 ♙e7 42 f5 ♙f4 43 f6+  
1-0

**A53 B.Cafferty–K.Neat**  
*British Championship*  
*Morecambe 1975*

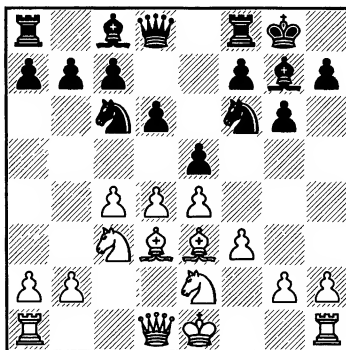
1 ♖f3 ♖f6 2 g3 g6 3 b3 ♙g7 4 ♙b2 0-0  
5 ♙g2 d6 6 d4 c6 7 c4 ♖bd7 8 0-0 e5?  
9 dxe5 ♖g4 10 ♙xd6 ♖dxe5 11 ♙xd8  
♙xd8 12 ♖c3 ♖xf3+ 13 exf3 ♖e5 14  
♙ad1 ♙f5 15 ♖a4 ♙c2 16 ♙c1 ♙d2 17  
♙c3



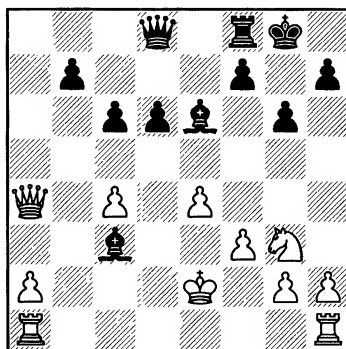
17...♙ad8!? 18 ♙xd2 ♙xd2 19 ♖c5 f5  
20 h3 ♙f8 21 f4 ♖xc4 22 ♖xb7 ♖b2  
23 ♙xc6 ♖d3 24 ♙d5+ ♙h8 25 ♙xc2  
♙xc2 26 a4 ♙g7 27 ♙c4? ♖xf2 28  
♖d8 ♖xh3+ 29 ♙h1 ♙d4 30 ♙b1  
♖f2+ 31 ♙g2 ♖g4+ 32 ♙f1 ♙f2+ 0-1

**A54 E.Larusson–K.Neat**  
*Durham Co. Team Tournament 1977*

1 d4 ♖f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♖c3 ♙g7 4 e4 d6 5  
f3 0-0 6 ♙e3 ♖c6 7 ♙d3 e5 8 ♖ge2



8...♖g4 9 ♙d2 exd4 10 ♖d5 ♖ce5 11  
♙b3 ♖xd3+ 12 ♙xd3 ♖e5 13 ♙b3 c6  
14 ♖df4 d3 15 ♖g3 a5 16 ♖xd3 a4 17  
♙c2 a3 18 ♖xe5 axb2 19 ♙xb2 ♙xe5  
20 ♙c3 ♙e6 21 ♙b4 ♙a4 22 ♙xa4  
♙xc3+ 23 ♙e2

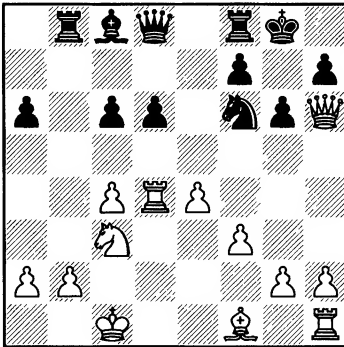


23...b5 24 cxb5 cxb5 25 ♙a7 ♙c4+ 26  
♙f2 ♙a5 27 ♙b7 ♙b6+ 28 ♙e1 ♙d4  
29 ♙c1 ♙a5+ 30 ♙d1 ♙a4+ 31 ♙e1

♖b4+ 32 ♕d1 ♙e3 33 ♗f1 ♙xf1 34  
♗d5 ♙xg2 0-1

**A55 N.Littlewood–K.Neat**  
*British Championship Qualifier 1979*

1 d4 ♗f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♗c3 ♙g7 4 e4 d6 5  
f3 0-0 6 ♙e3 ♗c6 7 ♗ge2 a6 8 ♗d2  
♙b8 9 ♙h6 ♙xh6 10 ♗xh6 e5 11 d5  
♗d4 12 0-0-0 c5 13 dxc6 bxc6 14  
♗xd4 exd4 15 ♙xd4

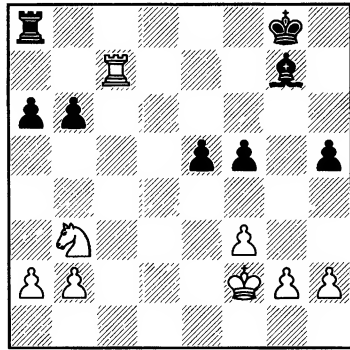


15...♙xb2 16 c5 ♙b8 17 cxd6 ♗a5 18  
♗d2 ♗a3+ 19 ♕d1 ♙b2 20 ♗c1 ♙e6  
21 ♙d3 ♙fb8 22 ♗a4 c5 23 ♗xc5  
♗xa2 24 ♗xb2 ♙xb2 25 ♙c2 ♗a1+ 26  
♕e2 ♗xh1 27 ♙d2 ♗xg2+ 28 ♕d3  
♗xf3+ 29 ♗e3 ♗f1+ 30 ♗e2 ♗a1 31  
♕e3 ♗g1+ 32 ♕d3 ♗c5 0-1

**A56 M.Petursson–K.Neat**  
*Manchester 1979*

1 ♗f3 ♗f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♗c3 ♙g7 4 e4 d6  
5 d4 0-0 6 ♙e2 e5 7 dxe5 dxe5 8 ♗xd8  
♙xd8 9 ♙g5 ♙e8 10 ♗d5 ♗xd5 11  
cxd5 c6 12 ♙c4 cxd5 13 ♙xd5 ♗d7 14  
♗d2 h6 15 ♙e3 ♗f6 16 ♙b3 ♙f8 17 f3

b6 18 ♙c1 ♙e6 19 ♙xe6 ♙xe6 20 ♕e2  
♗d7 21 ♗b3 f5 22 ♙c7 ♗f6 23 exf5  
gxf5 24 ♙hc1 ♗d5 25 ♙d7 ♗xe3 26  
♕xe3 h5 27 ♙cc7 ♙h6+ 28 ♕f2 a6 29  
♙e7 ♙xe7 30 ♙xe7 ♙g7 31 ♙c7

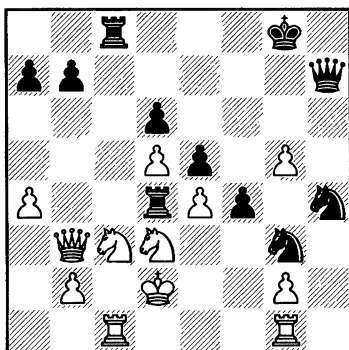


31...e4 32 fxe4 ♙xb2 33 ♙c6 fxe4 34  
♙xb6 ♙c8 35 ♙xa6 ♙c2+ 36 ♕g3 ♙e5+  
37 ♕h3 ♕f7 38 ♙a5 ♙f6 39 ♙a4 e3 40  
♗d4 ♙xd4 41 ♙xd4 ♙xa2 42 ♕g3 e2  
43 ♙e4 h4+ 44 ♕f3 h3 45 g4 e1 ♗46  
♙xe1 ♙xh2 47 ♕g3 ♙a2 48 ♕xh3 ♙a6  
49 ♕h4 ♕g6 50 ♙e8 ♙b6 51 ♙g8+ ♕h7  
52 ♙g5 ♕h6 53 ♙a5 ♕g6 54 ♙a4 ♙c6  
55 ♕g3 ♙b6 56 ♕f4 ♙c6 ½-½

**A57 D.Vasiljevic–D.Bronstein**  
*Pancevo 1987*

1 d4 ♗f6 2 c4 d6 3 ♗f3 g6 4 ♗c3 ♙g7  
5 e4 ♙g4 6 ♙e2 0-0 7 ♙e3 ♗fd7 8  
♗g1 ♙xe2 9 ♗gxe2 e5 10 0-0 ♗c6 11  
f3 f5 12 d5 ♗e7 13 ♗c1 f4 14 ♙f2 g5  
15 ♗d3 ♗f6 16 c5 ♗g6 17 cxd6 cxd6  
18 ♙c1 ♙f7 19 a4 h5 20 h3 ♙h6 21 ♙e1  
g4 22 hxg4 hxg4 23 ♕f1 ♙g5 24 ♕e2  
♙h4 25 ♗b3 ♙xf2 26 ♗xf2 ♗h4 27  
♙g1 ♙c8 28 ♗b4 ♙fc7 29 fxg4 ♙c4 30

♖b3 ♜c7 31 g5 ♘h5 32 ♘d3 ♘g3+ 33  
♙d2 ♜h7 34 ♘f2 ♚d4+ 35 ♘d3

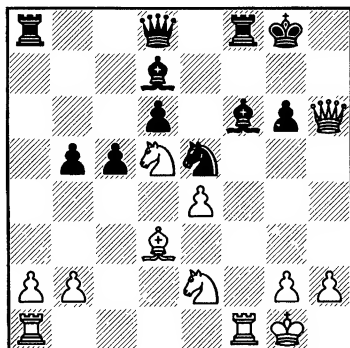


35...♘f3+ 36 ♙c2 ♘xg1 37 ♚xg1  
♘xe4 0-1

#### A58 E.Stuart–K.Neat

*Durham Co. Team Tournament 1987*

1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♘c3 ♙g7 4 e4 d6 5  
♙g5 h6 6 ♙h4 0-0 7 f4 c5 8 d5 ♜a5  
(8...b5!) 9 ♜d2 e6 10 dxe6 ♙xe6 11  
♙d3 ♘c6 12 ♘ge2 a6 13 0-0 b5 14  
cxb5 axb5 15 f5 ♙d7 16 ♙xf6 ♙xf6 17  
♙xh6 ♘e5 18 ♘d5 ♜d8 19 fxg6 fxg6



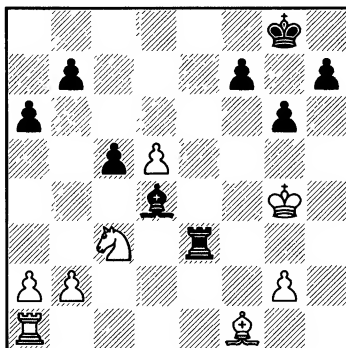
20 ♚xf6 ♚xf6 21 ♘ef4 ♙c6 22 ♘h5  
♚f7 23 ♘df6+ ♜xf6 24 ♘xf6+ ♚xf6 25  
♚f1 ♚xf1+ 26 ♙xf1 ♙xe4 27 ♜h4 ♙f5  
28 ♜e7 ♘f7 29 a3 c4 30 ♜b7 ♚d8 31  
♙xb5 d5 32 a4 ♙e4 33 a5 ♘d6 34 ♜b6  
♚d7 35 a6 ♘c8 36 ♜e6+ 1-0

#### A59 Deep Thought II–D.Bronstein

1992

A game against a computer program,  
for which each side had 20 minutes.

1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♘c3 ♙g7 4 e4 d6  
5 f4 0-0 6 ♘f3 c5 7 d5 e6 8 ♙e2 exd5 9  
cxd5 ♚e8 10 e5 dxe5 11 fxex5 ♘g4 12  
♙g5 ♜b6 13 0-0 ♘xe5 14 ♘xe5 ♚xe5  
15 ♜d2 ♙f5 16 ♙c4 ♘d7 17 ♚ac1  
♚ae8 18 ♙f4 a6 19 ♙xe5 ♘xe5 20  
♚fe1 ♜d8 21 ♙f1 ♜h4 22 ♚a1 ♚d8 23  
h3 ♘g4 24 hxg4 ♙d4+ 25 ♚e3 ♙xg4  
26 ♜f2 ♜xf2+ 27 ♜xf2 ♚e8 28 ♙g3  
♚xe3+ 29 ♙xg4

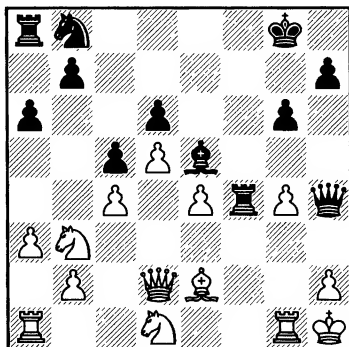
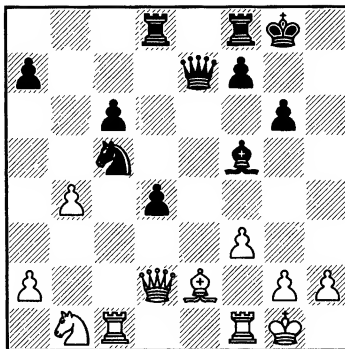


29...♙f5+ (29...♙e5!) 30 ♙f4 ♙f7 31 d6  
♙e6 32 ♚d1 h6 33 ♙c4+ ♙xd6 34 ♙f7  
g5+ 35 ♜xf5 b5 36 ♘e4+ ♙e7 37 ♙d5  
♚e2 38 b4 ♚xg2 39 bxc5 ♙e3 40 ♚e1  
♙d4 41 ♘g5+ ♙d7 42 c6+ ♙d6 43  
♙xg2 hxg5 44 ♚d1 1-0



**A60 M.Henriksen–D.Bronstein**  
Gausdal 1994

1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♘c3 ♙g7 4 e4 d6 5 ♘f3 0-0 6 ♙e2 e5 7 ♙e3 ♘g4 8 ♙g5 ♚e8 9 d5 f5 10 ♘d2 ♘f6 11 f3 c5 12 0-0 ♘h5 13 a3 ♙f6 14 ♙e3 ♙h4 15 g3 f4 16 gxf4 exf4 17 ♙f2 ♙f6 18 ♚c2 ♚e5 19 ♘h1 ♚g5 20 ♚g1 ♘g3+ 21 ♙xg3 fxg3 22 ♚xg3 ♚h6 23 ♘b5 ♙e5 24 ♚g2 ♚f7 25 ♘b3 a6 26 ♘c3 ♚f4 27 ♚d2 ♚h4 28 ♘d1 ♙h3 29 ♚g1 ♙g4 30 fxg4



30... ♚xh2+ 31 ♘xh2 ♚f2+ 32 ♘h3 ♚h2# 0-1

**A61 L.Pachman–D.Bronstein**  
Donner Memorial, Amsterdam 1994

1 d4 d6 2 c4 g6 3 ♘c3 ♙g7 4 e4 ♘f6 5 f3 e5 6 ♘ge2 0-0 7 ♙g5 exd4 8 ♘xd4 ♘c6 9 ♘c2 h6 10 ♙e3 ♙e6 11 ♚d2 ♘e5 12 b3 c6 13 ♙e2 d5 14 exd5 cxd5 15 c5 ♘c6 16 ♘d4 ♘d7 17 0-0 ♚e7 18 ♘xc6 bxc6 19 ♚ac1 ♚ad8 20 ♙xh6 ♙xh6 21 ♚xh6 ♘xc5 22 ♚d2 ♙f5 23 ♘b1 d4 24 b4

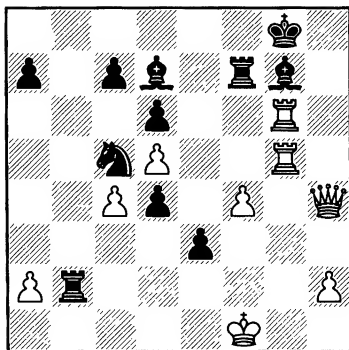
24... d3 25 ♙d1 ♘a6 26 a3 c5 27 b5 ♘c7 28 a4 ♙e6 29 ♚e3 ♚d4 30 ♙b3 ♚fd8 31 ♚fd1 ♚f8 32 ♘d2 ♙d5 33 ♙xd5 ♘xd5 34 ♚g5 ♘f4 35 ♚c4 ♚d5 36 ♚f6 ♚e8 37 ♚xd4 ♚e3+ 38 ♘h1 ♚xd4 39 ♘e4 d2 40 ♚h4 ♘h5 41 h3 c4 0-1

**A62 C.Smith–D.Bronstein**  
Simultaneous, Pittington 1995

A repetition of the well-known queen sacrifice against Spassky, almost 40 years later, although in a rather less important competition.

1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♘c3 ♙g7 4 e4 d6 5 f3 0-0 6 ♙e3 e5 7 d5 ♘h5 8 ♚d2 ♚h4+ 9 g3 ♘xg3 10 ♚f2 ♘xf1 11 ♚xh4 ♘xe3 12 ♘e2 ♘c2 13 ♘b5 ♘a6 14 ♚c1 ♘d4+ 15 ♘xd4 exd4 16 ♘h3 ♙d7 17 ♚hg1 b5 18 b3 bxc4 19 bxc4 ♘c5 20 ♘f4 f5 21 ♘xg6 hxg6 22 ♚xg6 ♚f7 23 ♚cg1 ♚b8 24 ♚lg5 ♚b2+ 25 ♘f1 fxe4 26 f4 e3

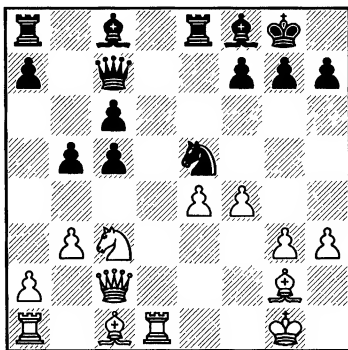
Here White missed an opportunity to force a draw by perpetual check by 27 ♚xg7+.



27 ♖h5 ♜xf4+ 28 ♜xf4 e2+ 0-1

**A63 G.Schebler–D.Bronstein**  
*Belgian Team Tournament 1997*

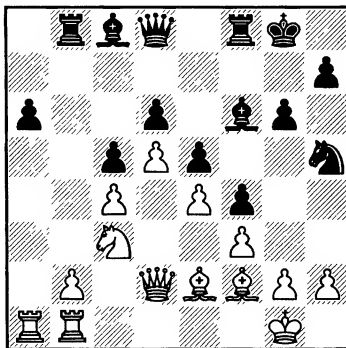
1 ♘f3 ♘f6 2 g3 d6 3 d4 ♘bd7 4 ♔g2  
e5 5 c4 c6 6 0-0 ♙e7 7 ♘c3 0-0 8 ♜c2  
♜c7 9 ♞d1 ♞e8 10 b3 ♙f8 11 e4 b5 12  
c5 dxc5 13 dxe5 ♘g4 14 h3 ♘ge5 15  
♘xe5 ♘xe5 16 f4



16...c4 17 fxe5 ♜xe5 18 ♙f4 ♜c5+ 19  
♙h2 cxb3 20 ♜xb3 ♙e6 21 ♜b2 g5 22  
♙d2 ♙g7 23 ♞ac1 ♞ad8 24 ♜c2 h6 25  
♙e1 b4 26 ♞xd8 ♞xd8 27 ♘a4 ♜xc2  
28 ♞xc2 b3 29 axb3 ♙xb3 30 ♞xc6  
♙xa4 31 ♞a6 ½-½

**A64 K.Neat–J.Walton**  
*Durham Co. Team Tournament 1998*

1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♘c3 ♙g7 4 e4 0-0 5  
♙e3 d6 6 f3 ♘c6 7 ♘ge2 a6 8 ♜d2  
♞b8 9 ♘c1 e5 10 d5 ♘d4 11 ♘b3  
♘xb3 12 axb3 c5 13 b4 b6 14 bxc5  
bxc5 15 ♙e2 ♘h5 16 0-0 f5 17 ♞fb1 f4  
18 ♙f2 ♙f6



19 b4 cxb4 20 ♘a4 ♙h4 21 ♙hx4  
♜hx4 22 ♞xb4 ♙d7 23 ♘b6 a5 24  
♞bb1 ♜d8 25 ♜xa5 ♜c7 26 c5 dxc5 27  
♘c4 ♞xb1+ 28 ♞xb1 ♜xa5 29 ♘xa5  
♞a8 30 ♘c4 1-0

# Solutions to the test positions

## Test 1 Is ...e7-e5 possible? (pages 57-59)

**1.1** 6...e5 is perfectly possible, and indeed is considered the best move. After 7 dxe5 dxe5 8 ♖xd8 ♗xd8 White is not able to win a pawn (9 ♗xe5 is met by 9...♗xe4, uncovering the King's Indian bishop, when Black regains the pawn with the better position) and he can answer 9 ♖g5 (threatening 10 ♗d5) with 9...♗e8 (Game A56).

**1.2** Here the immediate 6...e5? is bad: after 7 dxe5 dxe5 8 ♖xd8 ♗xd8 9 ♗d5 White wins material, as the knight at f6 is attacked, and ♗xc7 also threatened (Game A38). Black should either prepare ...e7-e5 by playing 6...♗bd7, or else switch instead to 6...c5.

**1.3** The immediate 9...e5 can be met by 10 ♖xg7 ♔xg7 11 d5, when the knight has to retreat and Black is badly cramped. Therefore he plays 9...♖xh6 10 ♖xh6 and only now 10...e7-e5, when after 11 d5 he has the possibility of 11...♗d4 (Game A55).

**1.4** White looks to have too many pieces covering e5, but 7...e5 is nevertheless possible, as 8 dxe5 is answered by 8...♗fd7 (a typical manoeuvre when there is a white bishop at b2), uncovering a pin by the King's Indian bishop and enabling Black to regain his pawn. Game 11 continued 9 e3 ♗c6 10 ♖b3 axb4 11 axb4 ♗xa1+ 12 ♖xa1 ♗cxe5 with a good game for Black.

**1.5** In contrast to position 1.4, here 8...e5 is a blunder which simply loses a pawn after 9 dxe5 ♗g4 (if 9...♗e8 White can simply play 10 ♖d2, when because of the pin on the d-file Black cannot regain his pawn: 10...dxe5 11 ♗xe5, and 11...♗xe5 is not possible) 10 ♖xd6 (Game A53).

**1.6** 8...e5 is quite opportune. After 9 c3 Black unpinned his queen with the typical (in this line) move 9...♖e8, when he was already threatening 10...e4 (Game 8).

**1.7** 5...0-0 is the usual move, but 5...e5 is quite playable (Games 28, 39 and 47). As in similar positions, Black need not fear the exchange of queens after 6 dxe5 dxe5 7 ♖xd8+ ♔xd8.

**1.8** In fact Black has not yet prepared his king's shelter, but **3...e5** is perfectly possible. This move order, which is seldom seen nowadays, was widely used some fifty years ago in the earlier days of the King's Indian Defence, as it enables Black to avoid some variations which were then considered dangerous for him, and which can arise after the move order **1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♗c3 ♙g7 4 e4 d6**, such as the Sämisch Variation (**5 f3**) and the Four Pawns Attack (**5 f4**). Black is not afraid of the ending after **4 dxe5 dxe5 5 ♖xd8+ ♔xd8**, as his king will find a secure shelter at **c7** or **e7**, and meanwhile his strong pawn at **e5** gives him control of the central dark squares (Games 13 and A32).

## **Test 2 Find the typical manoeuvre (pages 59-63)**

**2.1** There is now an outpost for Black's knight at **c5**, and he plays **9...a7-a5**, in order to safeguard it (Game 24).

**2.2** Black needs to make the traditional King's Indian advance of his f-pawn, but **10...♗h5** is unsatisfactory, as he will be unable to recapture on **f5** with his g-pawn. He therefore plays **10...♗f6-d7** and follows up with **11...f5** next move (Game 25).

**2.3** It is time for Black to switch his sights to the kingside with **25...♗f6-h5**, aiming for the outpost at **f4**. White cannot capture the knight there with his dark-square bishop, as after **...e5xf4** the hitherto inactive bishop at **g7** would become murderously strong (Game 34).

**2.4** It is hard to understand White's manoeuvre **♗e2-c1-b3**, other than as a product of fashion. If he did not want to close the centre by **9 d5**, then would not **9 g3, ♙g2** and **0-0** have been simpler? Black takes advantage of the opponent's retarded development by **9...e5xd4 10 ♙xd4 c6**, striving to open the centre as quickly as possible with **...d6-d5** (Game A34).

**2.5** Now is the time to make use of the queen's bishop, and its entry into the fray by **28...♗c8-h3** decides matters within a few moves (Game A60).

**2.6** Black plays **11...h7-h6**, preventing **12 ♗g5**, and follows up with **...♗g4** and **...e7-e5** (Game 6).

**2.7** With **22...♟f6xg4** 23 ♟xg4 f5 Black releases the pent-up energy of his pieces, and the white king quickly succumbs (Game 36).

**2.8** Passive play by Black in the King's Indian is usually fatal in the long run. Here he activates his game with **16...f7-f5**, not fearing the opening of the g-file (Game 46).

**2.9** Taking advantage of White's last move (10 ♞d1 was possible, and if 10...♟xc4 11 ♟cb5), Black plays **10...c7-c5**, gaining an advantage in the centre after the forcing sequence 11 ♟db5 a6 12 ♟a3 ♙f5 13 ♞d2 d5 (Game A22).

**2.10** Taking advantage of White's faulty move order, Black seizes the initiative with **8...♟f6-g4**, so that if 9 fxg4 exd4, when he regains his piece and the white pawns are broken (Game A54).

**2.11** Black is not concerned about the attack on his d6 pawn. With **19...♟f6-d7** he prepares to attack White's queenside by ...♟c5 (Game 17). He will answer 20 ♞xd6 with 20...♞b6, when the white b-pawn falls, and the c-pawn is left without support.

**2.12** To release the energy of his well-developed pieces, Black plays **15...d6-d5**. He is ready to answer 16 g5 with 16...d4, and if 17 gxf6 ♞xf6 18 ♟ce2 d3, making a decisive breakthrough (Game A4).

**2.13** Black ignores the threat to his d-pawn and plays **15...♞d8-a5** (Game 20). The point is that after 16 ♞xd6 ♟e5 17 b3 he has 17...♙xh3, when 18 ♙xh3 allows 18...♟f3+, with the possible sequel 19 ♟f1 ♟xe1 20 ♟xe1 axb3 21 axb3 ♟xe4 22 ♞d3 ♞a1+ 23 ♟d1 ♞a2 24 ♞c1 ♟xf2 25 ♟xf2 ♞xe2+ and Black wins.

**2.14** The best way to ease a cramped position is normally by exchanging pieces. Here Black does this with **13...♟f6-h7** followed by ...♟g5 (Game A21). A similar manoeuvre by White (true, with more offensive aims) is often seen in the Ruy Lopez.

**2.15** With the white king still uncastled, Black hurries to prepare a break in the centre with **12...c7-c6** followed by ...d6-d5. He does fear 13 ♙xh6, which can be met by the typical tactical stroke 13...♟xe4 and 14...♞h4+ (Game A61).

**2.16** After **12...c7-c5** 13 dxc6 bxc6 14 ♖xd4 exd4 15 ♗xd4 White conquers the d4 square, but only at a price – his pieces are uncoordinated, and Black exploits this by 15...♗xb2, with highly favourable complications (Game A55).

**2.17** With White's dark-square bishop committed to the kingside, this would have been a good moment for the typical sacrifice **8...b7-b5** 9 cxb5 a6 10 bxa6 ♗a5, with fine play for the pawn. Black's actual continuation 8...♗a5 9 ♗d2 e6 proved less successful (Game A58).

**2.18** White would desperately like to keep the kingside blocked (e.g. after 15...♗h7 16 h4), but Black forestalls him by **15...♗f6-g4** 16 fxg4 hxg4 (and if 17 ♗h4 ♗h6), when all his pieces pour into the action behind his mobile pawns (Game 37).

## Postscript

On the occasion of David Bronstein's 75th birthday in February 1999, Garry Kasparov published a tribute on his web site in which he described him as 'the most enigmatic figure in the chess world', and mentioned that in the 1970s and even the 1980s he used to follow with interest Bronstein's games, in each of which some new and surprising idea could be found. This striving for originality, as opposed to mere competitive results, has been David's distinguishing feature throughout his career, yet despite this he has an enviable record of success, for details of which the reader is referred to *The Sorcerer's Apprentice* by David Bronstein and Tom Fürstenberg (Cadogan 1995).

## Bibliography

Apart from numerous Russian periodicals, particular use has been made of the following publications:

*One-Hundred-and-One of my Best Games of Chess* by F.D.Yates (Printing-Craft 1934)

*A Treasury of British Chess Masterpieces* by Fred Reinfeld (Chatto & Windus 1950)

*Mezhdunarodny Turnir Grossmeisterov* by David Bronstein (Fizkultura i Sport 1956)

*Grossmeister Boleslavsky* by A.S.Suetin (Fizkultura i Sport 1981)

*David Bronstein: Chess Improviser* by B.S.Vainstein (Pergamon 1983)

*The Sorcerer's Apprentice* by David Bronstein and Tom Fürstenberg (Cadogan 1995)

# Index of other players

(numbers refer to pages)

Abrahams 138  
Alekhine 11  
Aloni 166  
Antoshin 193

Balashov  
Baturinsky 176  
Batuyev 71  
Belavenets 65  
Bisguier 168  
Blau 105  
Boleslavsky 14, 177, 178, 179(2),  
190  
Bondarevsky 76  
Botvinnik 130, 147

Cafferty 197  
Chekhover 73  
Cherepkov 161

Dake 183  
Deep Thought II 199  
Dvoretzky 196

Englisch 6  
Evans 193

Fine 14  
Flohr 176, 177  
Fuderer 185

Geller 178  
Gligoric 181  
Goldenov 174  
Golombek 120

Hartston 159  
Haygarth 192  
Henriksen 200  
Hoad 190

Kapengut 124  
Keres 182  
Kluger 192  
Koblents 174  
Kolarov 75  
Kolbus 136  
Korchnoi 187, 191  
Kotov 82, 118, 175, 178  
Kots 192  
Kottnauer 114  
Krogius 189  
Kupreichik 170

Larsen 194  
Larusson 197  
Lilienthal 128  
Lisitsyn 112  
Littlewood, N. 198  
Lundin 177  
Lutikov 133, 189

Makogonov 164  
Marovic 195  
Mikenas 194  
Moiseyev 78

Najdorf 99, 181, 182  
Neat 190, 191, 192, 197(2), 198(2),  
199, 201  
Nowak 79



- Opočenský 176
- Pachman 91, 200  
Panno 87, 152, 186  
Pein 172  
Petrosian 143, 180, 185  
Petursson 198  
Pilnik 184, 186  
Platonov 195
- Ravinsky 69, 140  
Reshevsky 102  
Rytov 196
- Sajtar 86  
Sakharov 107  
Santasiere 83  
Schebler 201  
Shamkovich 156  
Slomson 191  
Smith 200  
Solntsev 175  
Spassky 122, 185  
Ståhlberg 141  
Stoltz 180
- Stuart 199  
Szabo 178, 184, 195
- Taimanov 181  
Tarasov 188  
Tarrasch 6  
Terpugov 180  
Thorsson 126  
Tolush 67, 135
- Udovcic 188
- Vaganian 89, 109  
Vajda 98  
Vasiljevic 198  
Vasyukov 187
- Walton 201  
Wexler 154  
Winter 95
- Yates 11
- Zita 94, 188

# BRONSTEIN

## on the King's Indian

This book demonstrates that the King's Indian is not a difficult opening to play or master, showing that it leads to rich and interesting positions in which both sides can enjoy a complicated struggle. The emphasis is on understanding the typical moves and manoeuvres and the overall 'spirit' of the defence, not on memorizing reams of theory.

The book also contains fifty of Russian grandmaster **David Bronstein's** favourite games that he has played with the King's Indian, not all with Black, and not all ending in wins, but games that demonstrate the wide variety of ideas and positions that can arise in this exciting defence.

**David Bronstein** was one of the two creators of the King's Indian Defence and is also the co-author of the highly acclaimed *The Sorcerer's Apprentice*.

**EVERYMAN CHESS**

[www.everyman.uk.com](http://www.everyman.uk.com)

Published in the UK by Everyman Publishers Plc

Distributed in the US by the Globe Pequot Press

ISBN 1-85744-265-2



9 781857 442656